**TỔNG ÔN CÁC CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH**

**LƯU HÀNH NỘI BỘ**

**CONTENTS**

**MODULE 1 : PHONETICS**

**MODULE 2 : STRESS**

**MODULE 3 : TAG QUESTIONS**

**MODULE 4 : PASSIVE VOICE**

**MODULE 5 : PREPOSITIONS**

**MODULE 6 : COMPARISONS**

**MODULE 7 : THE ORDER OF THE ADJECTIVE**

**MODULE 8 : TENSES(ADVERBIAL OF TIME)**

**MODULE 9 : SUBJECTS AND VERB AGREEMENT**

**MODULE 10 : CONJUNCTIONS**

**MODULE 11 : HAVING + PAST PARTICIPLE**

**MODULE 12 : WORD FORMATIONS**

**MODULE 13 : EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY**

**MODULE 14 : MODAL VERB**

**MODULE 15 : INVERSION**

**MODULE 16 : GERUND AND INFINITIVE**

**MODULE 17 : CONDITIONAL SENTENCES**

**MODULE 18 : TYPES OF CLAUSES**

**MODULE 19 : VOCABULARY**

**MODULE 20 : REPORTED SPEECH**

**MODULE 21 : SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**

**MODULE 22 : ARTICLES**

**MODULE 23 : PHRASAL VERBS**

**MODULE 24 : COLLOCATIONS**

**MODULE 25 : IDIOMS**

**MODULE 26 : COMMUNICATION SKILLS**

**MODULE 27 : CLOSEST/OPPOSITE MEANING**

**MODULE 28 : READING**

**MODULE 29 : FIND OUT MISTAKE**

**MODULE 30 : SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION**

**MODULE 31 : SENTENCE COMBINATION**

**MODULE 32 : PRACTICE TESTS**

**MODULE 1 : PHONETICS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

1. **Phiên âm Tiếng anh**
   1. **Nguyên âm Vowels (u, e, o, a, i)**
      1. ***Nguyên âm ngắn - Short vowels***

* / ə/: ago, mother, together - /i/: hit, bit, sit
* / ʌ /: study, shut, must - / ɒ /: got job, hospital
* /u/: put, should, foot – -/e/: bed, send, tent, spend
* / æ /: cat, chat, man
  + 1. ***Nguyên âm dài - Long vowels***
* / iː/ meet, beat, heat -/u:/: school, food, moon
* /a:/: father, star, car - / ɔː/: sport, more, store

-/ ɜː /: bird, shirt, early

* + 1. ***Nguyên âm đôi- Diphthongs***
* /ai/: buy, skỵ, hi, shy - / ɔɪ /: boy, enjoy, toy -
* /ei/: day, baby, stay - /ou /: no, go, so
* /au/: now, sound, cow - / ʊə /: poor, sure, tour
* / eə /: air, care, share - / ɪə /: near, tear, cheer
  1. **Phụ âm - Consonants**
* /b/: bag, baby - /p/: pupil, pay, stop
* /d/: dog, daddy, dead - /k/: kiss, key
* /m/: mother, map, come - /j/: yes, yellow
* /n/: many, none, news - /s/: see, summer
* /l/: love, lucky, travel - /z/: zoo, visit
* /r/: river, restaurant - /h/: hat, honey
* /t/: tea, teach - / dʒ /: village, jam, generous
* /g /: get, game, go - / θ /: thin, thick, something, birth
* /f/: fall, laugh, fiction - / ð /: mother, with, this
* /v/: visit, van - / ʃ /: she, sugar
* /w/: wet, why - / ʒn /: vision
* / tʃ /: children, chicken, watch - / ŋ /: thank, sing

1. **Cách phát âm của đuôi -s**

"-s” được phát âm là:

+ /s/: khi âm tận cùng trước nó là /p/, /k/, /f/, /θ/, /t/.

+ /iz/: khi trước -s là: ch, sh, ss, x, ge.

+ /z/: khi âm tận cùng trước nó là nguyên âm và các phụ âm còn lại.

**Ví dụ**: A. listens / ˈlɪsnz / B. reviews / rɪˈvjuːz /

C. protects / prəˈtekts / D. enjoys / ɪnˈdʒɔɪz /

Phần được gạch chân ở câu C được phát âm là /s/ còn lại được phát âm là /z/.

 **Đáp án là C**

1. **Cách phát âm của đuôi -ed “- ed" được phát âm là:**

+ /t/: khi âm tận cùng trước -ed là /s/,/t*f*/, /*f*/, /k/, /p/, /f/ thì phát âm là /t/.

+ /id/: khi trước -ed là /t/ và /d/.

+ /d/: khi âm tận cùng trước -ed là nguyên âm và các phụ âm còn lại.

**Ví dụ:**

A. toured /tur**d**/ B. jumped / dʒʌmp**t** /

C. solved / sɒlv**d** / D. rained / reɪn**d** /

Câu B "-ed" được phát ấm là /t/, các đáp án còn lại -ed được phát âm là /d/

 Đáp án là B

**\*Các trường hợp đặc biệt của đuôi -ed**

**Một số từ kết thúc bằng -ed được dùng làm tính từ/danh từ, đuôi -ed được phát âm là /id/:**

1. aged / eɪdʒid /(a): cao tuổi, lớn tuổi

aged / eɪdʒd /(Vpast): trở nên già, làm cho già cỗi

1. blessed /blesid/ (a): thần thánh, thiêng liêng
2. crooked / krʊkid/(a): cong, oằn, vặn vẹo
3. dogged / dɒɡdi /(a): gan góc, gan lì, bền bỉ
4. naked /neikid/(a): trơ trụi, trần truồng
5. learned / lɜːnid /(a): có học thức, thông thái, uyên bác learned / lɜːnd /(Vpast): học
6. ragged / ræɡid /(a): rách tả toi, bù xù
7. wicked /wikid/(a): tinh quái, ranh mãnh, nguy hại
8. wretched / ˈretʃɪd /(a): khốn khổ, bần cùng, tồi tệ
9. beloved /bɪˈlʌvɪd /(a): yêu thương
10. cursed / kɜːst /(a): tức giận, khó chịu
11. rugged / ˈrʌɡɪd /(a): xù xì, gồ ghề
12. sacred / ˈseɪkrɪd /(a): thiêng liêng, trân trọng
13. legged / ˈleɡɪd /(a): có chân
14. hatred / ˈheɪtrɪd /(a): lòng hận thù

crabbed / kræbid /(a): càu nhàu, gắt gỏng

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Exercises 1 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.***

* **Phát âm đuôi –s/es**

1. A. nations B. speakers C. languages D. minds
2. A. proofs B. looks C. lends D. stops
3. A. dates B. bags C. photographs D. speaks
4. A. parents B. brothers C. weekends D. feelings
5. A. chores B. dishes C. houses D. coaches
6. A. works B. shops C. shifts D. plays
7. A. coughs B. sings C. stops D. sleeps
8. A. signs B. profits C. becomes D. survives
9. A. proofs B. books C. points D. days
10. A. phones B. streets C. books D. makes
11. A. proofs B. regions C. lifts D. rocks
12. A. involves B. believes C. suggests D. steals
13. A. remembers B. cooks C. walls D. pyramids
14. A. miles B. words C. accidents D. names
15. A. sports B. plays C. chores D. minds
16. A. walks B. steps C. shuts D. plays
17. A. wishes B. practices C. introduces D. leaves
18. A. grasses B. stretches C. comprises D. potatoes
19. A. desks B. maps C. plants D. chairs
20. A. pens B. books C. phones D. tables
21. A. dips B. deserts C. books D. camels
22. A. knees B. peas C. trees D. niece
23. A. cups B. stamps C. books D. pens
24. A. houses B. faces C. hates D. places
25. A. miles B. attends C. drifts D. glows
26. A. mends B. develops C. values D. equals
27. A. repeats B. classmates C. amuses D. attacks
28. A. humans B. dreams C. concerts D. songs
29. A. manages B. laughs C. photographs D. makes
30. A. dishes B. oranges C. experiences D. chores
31. A. helps B. laughs C. cooks D. finds
32. A. neighbors B. friends C. relatives D. photographs
33. A. snacks B. follows C. titles D. writers
34. A. streets B. phones C. books D. makes
35. A. cities B. satellites C. series D. workers
36. A. develops B. takes C. laughs D. volumes
37. A. fills B. adds C. stirs D. lets
38. A. wants B. books C. stops D. sends
39. A. book**s** B. dog**s** C. cat**s** D. map**s**
40. A. biscuits B. magazines C. newspapers D. vegetables

* **Phát âm đuôi -ed**

1. A. lifted B. lasted C. happened D. decided
2. A. believed B. prepared C. involved D. liked
3. A. coughed B. phoned C. booked D. stopped
4. A. talked B. looked C. naked D. worked
5. A. developed B. ignored C. laughed D. washed
6. A. phoned B. stated C. mended D. old-aged
7. A. clapped B. attracted C. lifted D. needed
8. A. involved B. believed C. praised D. locked
9. A. remembered B. cooked C. raised D. cleaned
10. A. smiled B. regarded C. suggested D. naked
11. A. collected B. changed C. formed D. viewed
12. A. walked B. entertained C. reached D. looked
13. A. watched B. stopped C. pushed D. improved
14. A. admired B. looked C. missed D. hoped
15. A. proved B. changed C. pointed D. played
16. A. helped B. laughed C. cooked D. intended
17. A. smoked B. followed C. titled D. implied
18. A. failed B. reached C. absorbed D. solved
19. A. invited B. attended C. celebrated D. displayed
20. A. smiled B. denied C. divorced D. agreed
21. A. planned B. developed C. valued D. recognized
22. A. approved B. answered C. passed D. uttered
23. A. doubted B. wedded C. connected D. passed
24. A. managed B. laughed C. captured D. signed
25. A. washed B. exchanged C. experienced D. mixed
26. A. filled B. added C. started D. intended
27. A. removed B. washed C. hoped D. missed
28. A. looked B. laughed C. moved D. stepped
29. A. wanted B. parked C. stopped D. watched
30. A. laughed B. passed C. suggested D. placed
31. A. reversed B. choked C. played D. sentenced
32. A. minded B. hated C. exchanged D. old-aged
33. A. proved B. looked C. stopped D. coughed
34. A. dated B. changed C. struggled D. agreed
35. A. scaled B. stared C. phoned D. hundred
36. A. behaved B. washed C. clicked D. approached
37. A. worked B. shopped C. missed D. displayed
38. A. wanted B. booked C. stopped D. laughed
39. A. booked B. watched C. jogged D. developed
40. A. kneeled B. bowed C. implied D. compressed
41. A. bottled B. explained C. trapped D. betrayed
42. A. laughed B. stamped C. booked D. contented
43. A. coughed B. cooked C. melted D. mixed
44. A. signed B. profited C. attracted D. naked
45. A. walked B. hundred C. fixed D. coughed
46. A. watched B. practiced C. introduced D. cleaned
47. A. passed B. stretched C. comprised D. washed
48. A. tested B. clapped C. planted D. demanded
49. A. intended B. engaged C. phoned D. enabled
50. A. married B. sniffed C. booked D. coughed

* **Phát âm nguyên âm/phụ âm**

1. A. **u**nlike B. **u**niversity C. **u**nit D. **u**nion
2. A. si**s**ter B. clo**s**e C. hou**s**es D. hou**s**e
3. A. fa**th**er B. any**th**ing C. ano**th**er D. al**th**ough
4. A. f**ee**ling B. w**ee**kend C. r**ea**ding D. r**ea**dy
5. A. sec**ure** B. fut**ure** C. mat**ure** D. cult**ure**
6. A. b**a**nquet B. s**a**crifice C. **a**mbulance D. husb**a**nd
7. A. pol**i**te B. **i**dea C. pol**i**ce D. obl**i**ge
8. A. f**a**mily B. f**a**ther C. h**a**ppy D. fr**a**nkly
9. A. h**o**spital B. c**o**nfidence C. bi**o**logist D. h**o**me
10. A. n**i**ght B. ch**i**ldren C. sh**i**ft D. qu**i**t
11. A. m**o**ther B. br**o**ther C. alth**ou**gh D. en**ou**gh
12. A. prep**are** B. c**a**ring C. rep**air** D. f**ar**ther
13. A. l**ea**ve B. w**ee**k C. l**i**ve D. pol**i**ce
14. A. poll**u**te B. b**u**sy C. sol**u**tion D. concl**u**sion
15. A. **ch**ores B. **ch**ildren C. mis**ch**ievous D. **sc**hool
16. A. sacrif**i**ce B. determ**i**ne C. **i**nvolve D. d**i**fferent
17. A. att**i**tude B. w**i**sdom C. determ**i**ne D. unw**i**se
18. A. o**f** B. lea**f** C. **f**amily D. con**f**ide
19. A. h**a**nd B. dem**a**nd C. h**a**ppy D. h**a**t
20. A. h**ou**se B. th**ou**sand C. y**ou**ng D. m**ou**th
21. A. **e**qual B. arr**e**st C. r**e**ject D. env**e**lope
22. A. c**u**lture B. **u**nder C. cond**u**ct D. b**u**shes
23. A. **ch**ange B. tea**ch**er C. s**ch**ool D. ea**ch**
24. A. g**oo**d B. gr**oo**m C. sch**oo**l D. r**oo**f
25. A. thi**n** B. thi**n**k C. ma**n**y D. u**n**der
26. A. h**ow** B. sh**ow**er C. n**ow** D. bel**ow**
27. A. gr**ea**t B. f**ea**ture C. l**ea**f D. l**ea**d
28. A. s**y**mbol B. ph**y**sical C. appl**y** D. ceremon**y**
29. A. w**e**dding B. **e**xchange C. gu**e**st D. anc**e**stor
30. A. **g**uest B. **g**rateful C. **g**room D. **g**eneration
31. A. w**or**k B. supp**or**tive C. n**ur**se D. f**ur**ther
32. A. h**ou**se B. ar**ou**nd C. c**ou**sin D. ann**ou**nce
33. A. br**ea**kfast B. r**ea**dy C. spr**ea**d D. h**ea**d
34. A. m**o**st B. c**o**st C. p**o**st D. h**o**st
35. A. w**o**man B. p**u**sh C. p**u**ll D. w**o**men
36. A. close-**k**nit B. well-**k**nown C. quic**k**ly D. **k**neel
37. A. hand**s** B. parent**s** C. tak**es** D. hop**es**
38. A. pr**i**zes B. s**i**nce C. spir**i**t D. con**i**cal
39. A. br**i**be B. ch**i**ld C. ch**i**ldren D. w**i**fe
40. A. s**o**me B. w**o**men C. l**o**ve D. m**o**ney

***Exercises 2 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.***

1. **A.** valentine **B.** imagine **C.** discipline **D.** determine
2. **A.** crop **B.** common **C.** household **D.** bodily
3. **A.** merchant **B.** sergeant **C.** mermaid **D.** commercial
4. **A.** obstacle **B.** obscure **C.** obsession **D.** oblivious
5. **A.** failed **B.** reached **C.** absorbed **D.** solved
6. **A.** develops **B.** takes **C.** laughs **D.** volumes
7. **A.** species **B.** invent **C.** medicine **D.** tennis
8. **A.** advanced **B.** established **C.** preferred **D.** stopped
9. **A.** exact **B.** examine **C.** eleven **D.** elephant
10. **A.** final **B.** writer **C.** ivory **D.** window
11. **A.** passed **B.** managed **C.** cleared **D.** threatened
12. **A.** ejects **B.** defends **C.** advocates **D.** breaths
13. **A.** produced **B.** believed **C.** stopped **D.** laughed
14. **A.** alien **B.** alloy **C.** alley **D.** anthem
15. **A.** affected **B.** looked **C.** decreased **D.** washed
16. **A.** missed **B.** worked **C.** realized **D.** watched
17. **A.** need **B.** speech **C.** see **D.** career
18. **A.** loved **B.** appeared **C.** agreed **D.** coughed
19. **A.** pagoda **B.** integral **C.** against **D.** aquatic
20. **A.** imagines **B.** bikes **C.** cultures **D.** involves
21. **A.** office **B.** practice **C.** service **D.** device
22. **A.** finished **B.** cooked **C.** attended **D.** laughed
23. **A.** number **B.** future **C.** furious **D.** amuse
24. **A.** concerned **B.** candied **C.** travelled **D.** dried
25. **A.** speaks **B.** speeds **C.** graphs **D.** beliefs
26. **A.** dune **B.** hummock **C.** shrub **D.** buffalo
27. **A.** increased **B.** pleased **C.** replaced **D.** fixed
28. **A.** looks **B.** knows **C.** helps **D.** sits
29. **A.** linked **B.** declared **C.** finished **D.** developed
30. **A.** heat **B.** beat **C.** meant **D.** easy
31. **A.** sports **B.** thanks **C.** games **D.** enthusiasts
32. **A.** sacrificed **B.** trusted **C.** recorded **D.** acted
33. **A.** cooks **B.** loves **C.** joins **D.** spends
34. **A.** interviewed **B.** performed **C.** finished **D.** delivered
35. **A.** misses **B.** goes **C.** leaves **D.** potatoes
36. **A.** removed **B.** approved **C.** reminded **D.** relieved
37. **A.** young **B.** plough **C.** couple **D.** cousin
38. **A.** confine **B.** conceal **C.** convention **D.** concentrate
39. **A.** isolated **B.** climate **C.** island **D.** automobile
40. **A.** river **B.** rival **C.** native **D.** driven
41. **A.** heavy **B.** head **C.** weather **D.** heat
42. **A.** processed **B.** infested **C.** balanced **D.** reached
43. **A.** food **B.** shoot **C.** book **D.** boot
44. **A.** amount **B.** country **C.** counter **D.** around
45. **A.** apologize **B.** agree **C.** algebra **D.** aggressive
46. **A.** likes **B.** tightens **C.** heaps **D.** coughs
47. **A.** building **B.** suitable **C.** suit **D.** recruitment
48. **A.** create **B.** creature **C.** easy **D.** increase
49. **A.** needed **B.** played **C.** rained **D.** followed
50. **A.** ploughs **B.** photographs **C.** gas **D.** laughs
51. **A.** broad **B.** load **C.** road **D.** boat
52. **A.** acronym **B.** agency **C.** became **D.** aviation
53. **A.** account **B.** amount **C.** mourning **D.** trout
54. **A.** sound **B.** touchy **C.** outdated **D.** account
55. **A.** fungus **B.** rubbish **C.** function **D.** furious
56. **A.** contain **B.** entertain **C.** certain **D.** campaign
57. **A.** measure **B.** pleasure **C.** threat **D.** treat
58. **A.** south **B.** southern **C.** scout **D.** drought
59. **A.** dome **B.** comb **C.** home **D.** tomb
60. **A.** accountant  **B.** country **C.** count **D.** fountain
61. **A.** clubs **B.** books **C.** hats **D.** stamps
62. **A.** advance **B.** ancient **C.** cancer **D.** annual
63. **A.** canoeing **B.** penalty **C.** rival **D.** tsunami
64. **A.** increase **B.** meant **C.** flea **D.** lease
65. **A.** goalie **B.** archive **C.** signal **D.** advertisement
66. **A.** bury **B.** hurt **C.** turn **D.** excursion
67. **A.** book **B.** foot **C.** brook **D.** booth
68. **A.** punctual **B.** rubbish **C.** thunder **D.** furious
69. **A.** sound **B.** touch **C.** down **D.** account
70. **A.** clerk **B.** reserve **C.** deserve **D.** herb
71. **A.** spark **B.** share **C.** park **D.** smart
72. **A.** hasty **B.** nasty **C.** wastage **D.** tasty
73. **A.** neigh **B.** height **C.** weigh **D.** vein
74. **A.** butter **B.** gum **C.** butcher **D.** summer
75. **A.** hall **B.** salt **C.** drawn **D.** roll
76. **A.** lost **B.** post **C.** loan **D.** pole
77. **A.** adopted **B.** appealed **C.** dedicated **D.** wounded
78. **A.** mile **B.** militant **C.** smile **D.** kind
79. **A.** peace **B.** great **C.** treat **D.** meat
80. **A.** sailor **B.** tailor **C.** naivety **D.** painter
81. **A.** character **B.** flatter **C.** equally **D.** attraction
82. **A.** peace **B.** wear **C.** weak **D.** sea
83. **A.** zoo **B.** goose **C.** tooth **D.** good
84. **A.** skill **B.** fine **C.** dinner **D.** since
85. **A.** hook **B.** floor **C.** book **D.** look
86. **A.** dedicate **B.** eliminate **C.** educate **D.** certificate
87. **A.** seems **B.** plays **C.** visits **D.** travels
88. **A.** stool **B.** bamboo **C.** good **D.** loose
89. **A.** sculpture **B.** result **C.** justice **D.** figure
90. **A.** searched **B.** practiced **C.** subscribed **D.** increased
91. **A.** adverb **B.** advent **C.** advertise **D.** advance
92. **A.** allow **B.** tomorrow **C.** slowly **D.** below
93. **A.** included **B.** wanted **C.** noticed **D.** decided
94. **A.** bushes **B.** wishes **C.** researches **D.** headaches
95. **A.** tool **B.** spoon **C.** foot **D.** noon
96. **A.** dressed **B.** dropped **C.** matched **D.** joined
97. **A.** walk **B.** call **C.** take **D.** talk
98. **A.** passed **B.** opened **C.** washed **D.** worked
99. **A.** dream **B.** wear **C.** treat **D.** Mean

**100. A.** attacks **B.** medals **C.** concerns **D.** Fingers

**MODULE 2 : STRESS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

|  |
| --- |
| * **QUY TẮC ĐÁNH DẤU TRỌNG ÂM** |
| **1.  Động từ có 2 âm tiết -> trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai**  **- Example :** be’gin, be’come, for’get, en’joy, dis’cover, re’lax, de’ny, re’veal,… **- Ngoại lệ :** ‘answer, ‘enter, ‘happen, ‘offer, ‘open… |
| **2. Danh từ có 2 âm tiết -> trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất**  **- Example :** ‘children, ‘hobby, ‘habit, ‘labour, ‘trouble, ‘standard… **- Ngoại lệ :** ad’vice, ma’chine, mis’take… |
| **3. Tính từ có 2 âm tiết -> trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhât** **- Example :** ‘basic, ‘busy, ‘handsome, ‘lucky, ‘pretty, ‘silly… **- Ngoại lệ :** a’lone, a’mazed, … |
| **4.  Động từ ghép -> trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai** **- Example :** be’come, under’stand |
| **5. Trọng âm rơi vào chính các vần sau: sist, cur, vert, test, tain, tract, vent, self** **- Example :** e’vent, sub’tract, pro’test, in’sist, main’tain, my’self, him’self |
| **6. Các từ kết thúc bằng các đuôi : how, what, where, …. thì trọng âm chính nhấn vào vần 1** **- Example :** ‘anywhere ‘somehow ‘somewhere …. |
| **7. Các từ 2 âm tiết bắt đầu bằng A thì trọng âm nhấn vào âm tiết thứ 2 :** **- Example :** A’bed, a’bout, a’bove ,a’back, a’gain, a’lone, a’chieve ,a’like  **- Example :** A’live, a’go, a’sleep ,a’broad ,a’side ,a’buse ,a’fraid |
| **8. Các từ tận cùng bằng các đuôi :**  **– ety, – ity, – ion ,- sion, – cial,- ically, – ious, -eous, – ian, – ior, – iar, iasm – ience, – iency, – ient, – ier, – ic, – ics, -ial, -ical, -ible, -uous, -ics\*, ium, – logy, – sophy,- graphy – ular, – ulum ….**  **=> Thì trọng âm nhấn vào âm tiết ngay tru­ớc nó**  **- Example :** de’cision ,dic’tation, libra’rian, ex’perience, ‘premier, so’ciety, arti’ficial ,su’perior….. **- Ngoại trừ :** ‘cathonic , ‘lunatic (õm lịch) , ‘arabic (ả rập) , ‘politics (chính trị học) a’rithmetic (số học) |
| **9. Các từ kết thúc bằng :– ate, – cy\*, -ty, -phy, -gy**  **=> Nếu 2 vần thì trọng âm nhấn vào từ thứ 1.**  **=> Nếu 3 vần hoặc trên 3 vần thì trọng âm nhấn vào vần thứ 3 từ cuồi lên** **- Example :** ‘Senate, Com’municate, ‘regulate, ‘playmate, cong’ratulate ,‘concentrate, ‘activate……  **- Ngoại trừ:** ‘Accuracy’ |
| **10. Các từ tận cùng bằng đuôi :**  **-ade, – ee, – ese, – eer, – ette, – oo, -oon , – ain (chỉ động từ)**  **-esque,- isque, -aire ,-mental, -ever, – self**  **=> Thì trọng âm nhấn ở chính các đuôi này**  **- Example:**Lemo’nade,  Chi’nese,  deg’ree,   Vietna’mese ….  **- Ngoại trừ:**‘coffee (cà phờ), com’mitee (ủy ban)… |
| **11. Các từ chỉ số l­uợng nhấn trọng âm ở từ cuối kết thúc bằng đuôi – teen .**  **=> Ng­ược lại sẽ nhấn trọng âm ở từ đầu tiên nếu kết thúc bằng đuôi – y**: **- Example :** Thir’teen four’teen………… // ‘twenty , ‘thirty , ‘fifty ….. |
| **12. Các tiền tố (prefix) và hậu tố không bao giờ mang trọng âm , mà thu­ờng nhấn mạnh ở từ gốc**  **– Tiền tố không làm thay đổi trọng âm chính của từ**   |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | | **Tiền tố** | **Từ gốc** | **Biến đổi** | | Un- | im’portant | unim’portant | | Im- | ‘perfect | im’perfect | | In- | Com’plete | incom’plete | | Ir- | Re’spective | irre’spective | | Dis- | Con’nect | discon’nect | | Non- | ‘smokers | non’smokers | | En/ex- | ‘courage | en’courage | | Re- | a’rrange | rea’rrange | | Over- | ‘populated | over’populated | | Under- | de’veloped | underde’veloped | |
| **13. Hậu tố không làm thay đổi trọng âm của từ gốc**   |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | | **Hậu tố** | **Từ gốc** | **Biến đổi** | | -ful | ‘beauty | ‘beautiful | | -less | ‘thought | ‘thoughtless | | -abl | en’joy | en’joyable | | -al | tra’dition | tra’ditional | | -ous | ‘danger | ‘dangerous | | -ly | di’rect | di’rectly | | -er/-or/-ant | work / act | ‘worker / ‘actor | | -ng/-ive | begin | be’ginning | | -ise/-ize | memory | ‘memorize | | -en | wide | ‘widen | | -ment | employ | em’ployment | | -ness | happy | ‘happiness | | -ship | friend | ‘friendship | | -hood | Child | Childhood | |
| **14. Từ có 3 âm tiết:**  a. Động từ:  - Trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 nếu âm tiết thứ 3 có nguyên âm ngắn và kết thúc bằng 1 phụ âm  **- Example :** encounter /iŋ’kauntə/ determine /di’t3:min/  - Trọng âm sẽ rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất nếu âm tiết thứ 3 là nguyên âm dài hay nguyên âm đôi hay kết thúc bằng 2 phụ âm trở lên.  **- Example :** exercise / ‘eksəsaiz/, compromise/ [‘kɔmprəmaiz]  **- Ngoại lệ:** entertain /entə’tein/ compre’hend ……..  b. Danh từ:  - Nếu âm tiết cuối (thứ 3) có nguyên âm ngắn hay nguyên âm đôi **“əu”**  - Nếu âm tiết thứ 2 chứa nguyên âm dài hay nguyên âm đôi hay kết thúc bằng 2 phụ âm trở lên thì nhấn âm tiết thứ 2 **- Example :** potato /pə`teitəu/ diaster / di`za:stə/  - Nếu âm tiết thứ 3 chứa nguyên âm ngắn và âm tiết thứ 2 chứa nguyên âm ngắn và âm tiết thứ 2 kết thúc bằng 1 phụ âm thì nhấn âm tiết thứ 1 **- Example :** emperor / `empərə/ cinema / `sinəmə/ `contrary `factory………  - Nếu âm tiết thứ 3 chứa nguyên âm dài hoặc nguyên âm đôi hoặc kết thúc bằng 2 phụ âm trở lên thì nhấn âm tiết 1 **- Example :** `architect………………………………………. **- Chú ý :** tính từ 3 âm tiết tương tự như danh từ. |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Exercises 1 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on you answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.***

1. A. produce B. product C. actress D. dentist
2. A. pollute B. supply C. provide D. healthy
3. A. compare B. single C. include D. consult
4. A. prepare B. section C. problem D. reason
5. A. admit B. account C. conquer D. decree
6. A. address B. involve C. respect D. access
7. A. language B. involve C. foreign D. succeed
8. A. poison B. timber C. immense D. contour
9. A. private B. regard C. approach D. permit
10. A. release B. cancer C. human D. surgeon
11. A. focus B. notice C. absorb D. interest
12. A. gather B. protect C. suggest D. reform
13. A. legal B. custom C. reverse D. travel
14. A. special B. feeling C. secure D. caring
15. A. possible B. annoying C. together D. attempting
16. A. interesting B. personal C. relation D. hospital
17. A. confidence B. decision C. important D. another
18. A. hurry B. rushes C. secret D. collect
19. A. member B. repair C. frankly D. closely
20. A. reversed B. prepared C. crowded D. discussed
21. A. daughter B. although C. attempt D. prepare
22. A. photograph B. expensive C. anyway D. holiday
23. A. grandfather B. progressive C. supportive D. recently
24. A. different B. family C. importance D. motorbike
25. A. about B. study C. middle D. busy
26. A. mischievous B. obedient C. solution D. supportive
27. A. join B. frankly C. attempt D. pressure
28. A. begin B. happen C. become D. release
29. A. combine B. weaken C. occur D. emit
30. A. carriage B. custom C. decree D. success
31. A. without B. doctor C. pasture D. cover
32. A. decide B. expect C. extra D. believe
33. A. extreme B. able C. poison D. drainage
34. A. goodbye B. except C. themselves D. gesture
35. A. nature B. future C. picture D. manure
36. A. fellow B. follow C. yellow D. allow
37. A. intend B. district C. traffic D. center
38. A. produce B. product C. nation D. chemist
39. A. spoken B. people C. master D. regard
40. A. friendly B. guidance C. expect D. wonder
41. A. vapor B. carry C. garbage D. exhaust
42. A. welfare B. resource C. surgeon D. timber
43. A. conserve B. conscious C. preserve D. prevent
44. A. magic B. weaken C. happen D. begin
45. A. enrich B. enter C. enlarge D. enclose
46. A. costume B. learning C. engine D. device
47. A. biologist B. generally C. obedient D. mischievousness
48. A. support B. obey C. busy D. caring
49. A. solution B. confidence C. supportive D. develop
50. A. pressure B. willing C. household D. ensure
51. A. project B. garbage C. active D. enjoy
52. A. hospital B. afternoon C. suitable D. family
53. A. begin B. visit C. consist D. include
54. A. cancer B. treatment C. tissue D. disease
55. A. begin B. happen C. become D. decree
56. A. decree B. discard C. dispose D. delete
57. A. without B. tractor C. future D. actor
58. A. decree B. carriage C. conquer D. follow
59. A. forest B. supply C. garbage D. oxide
60. A. translate B. transform C. transact D. tragedy
61. A. technique B. treatment C. guidance D. police
62. A. compare B. single C. include D. consult
63. A. throaty B. throughout C. without D. although
64. A. despite B. within C. beside D. gender
65. A. sooner B. caller C. behalf D. caring
66. A. verbal B. signal C. instance D. agree
67. A. attract B. away C. waving D. attend
68. A. verbal B. pollute C. choices D. table
69. A. again B. journey C. succeed D. digest
70. A. keenness B. science C. demand D. physics

***Exercises 2 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on you answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.***

1. **A.** politician **B.** genetics **C.** artificial **D.** controversial
2. **A.** sympathy  **B.** poverty **C.** equipment **D.** character
3. **A.** intend  **B.** install **C.** follow **D.** decide
4. **A.** apartment  **B.** benefit **C.** argument **D.** vacancy
5. **A.** explain **B.** involve **C.** borrow **D.** discuss
6. **A.** behave **B.** relax **C.** enter **D.** allow
7. **A.** disaster **B.** origin **C.** charity **D.** agency
8. **A.** president **B.** opponent **C.** assistant **D.** companion
9. **A.** obtain **B.** perform **C.** affect **D.** happen
10. **A.** inform **B.** explore **C.** prevent **D.** cancel
11. **A.** attitude **B.** manager **C.** invention **D.** company
12. **A.** respect **B.** marry **C.** depend **D.** predict
13. **A.** fantastic **B.** powerful **C.** sensitive **D.** personal
14. **A.** travel **B.** return **C.** connect **D.** deny
15. **A.** apply **B.** persuade **C.** reduce **D.** offer
16. **A.** preservatives **B.** congratulate **C.** preferential **D.** development
17. **A.** president **B.** physicist **C.** inventor **D.** property
18. **A.** economy **B.** unemployment **C.** communicate **D.** particular
19. **A.** elephant **B.** dinosaur **C.** buffalo **D.** mosquito
20. **A.** scientific **B.** intensity **C.** disappearance **D.** expectation
21. **A.** conference **B.** lecturer **C.** researcher **D.** reference
22. **A.** intentional **B.** optimistic **C.** environment **D.** participant
23. **A.** explain **B.** happen **C.** decide **D.** combine
24. **A.** represent **B.** intensive **C.** domestic **D.** employment
25. **A.** minister **B.** dependent **C.** encourage **D.** agreement
26. **A.** equip **B.** listen **C.** answer **D.** enter
27. **A.** involve **B.** provide **C.** install **D.** comment
28. **A.** hospital **B.** inflation **C.** policy **D.** constantly
29. **A.** garment **B.** comment **C.** cement **D.** even
30. **A.** different **B.** achievement **C.** educate **D.** primary
31. **A.** sorrow **B.** schooling **C.** passion **D.** subtract
32. **A.** certainty **B.** activity **C.** organize **D.** compliment
33. **A.** publish **B.** replace **C.** involve **D.** escape
34. **A.** police **B.** system **C.** woman **D.** novel
35. **A.** attract **B.** amaze **C.** offer **D.** require
36. **A.** delicate **B.** promotion **C.** volcanic **D.** resources
37. **A.** figure **B.** honest **C.** polite **D.** happy
38. **A.** engage **B.** import **C.** conserve **D.** maintain
39. **A.** original **B.** responsible **C.** reasonable **D.** comparison
40. **A.** person **B.** hotel **C.** signal **D.** instance
41. **A.** situation **B.** appropriate **C.** informality **D.** entertainment
42. **A.** different **B.** bamboo **C.** rainfall **D.** wildlife
43. **A.** gorilla **B.** interesting **C.** September **D.** opponent
44. **A.** promote **B.** precede **C.** picture **D.** pollute
45. **A.** exciting **B.** impolite **C.** attention **D.** attractive
46. **A.** curious **B.** receive **C.** unique **D.** achieve
47. **A.** comprehend **B.** entertain **C.** develop **D.** introduce
48. **A.** consider **B.** concentrate **C.** interest **D.** sacrifice
49. **A.** pollutant **B.** graduate **C.** enjoyable **D.** suspicious
50. **A.** generous **B.** endangered **C.** horrible **D.** wonderful
51. **A.** history **B.** village **C.** surprise **D.** physics
52. **A.** deafness **B.** arrange **C.** absorb **D.** exhaust
53. **A.** pressure **B.** sensible **C.** treatment **D.** canal
54. **A.** publish **B.** predict **C.** reply **D.** refuse
55. **A.** machine **B.** export **C.** chemist **D.** proceed
56. **A.** applicant **B.** preference **C.** sufficient **D.** appointment
57. **A.** interview **B.** concentrate **C.** comfortable **D.** technology
58. **A.** example **B.** happiness **C.** advantage **D.** disaster
59. **A.** explain **B.** involve **C.** swallow **D.** control
60. **A.** character **B.** guitarist **C.** astronaut **D.** bachelor
61. **A.** surgeon **B.** conquest **C.** profit **D.** canal
62. **A.** supply **B.** consist **C.** happen **D.** delay
63. **A.** broaden **B.** persuade **C.** reduce **D.** explain
64. **A.** solidarity **B.** effectively **C.** documentary **D.** dedication
65. **A.** royal **B.** unique **C.** remote **D.** extreme
66. **A.** enroll **B.** promote **C.** require **D.** danger
67. **A.** optimistic **B.** diversity **C.** environment **D.** assimilate
68. **A.** affectionate **B.** kindergarten **C.** respectable **D.** occasional
69. **A.** certificate  **B.** compulsory **C.** remember **D.** information
70. **A.** treasure  **B.** appoint **C.** advance **D.** diverse
71. **A.** conceal  **B.** contain **C.** conserve **D.** conquer
72. **A.** forgettable **B.** philosophy **C.** humanism **D.** objectively
73. **A.** centralize **B.** candidate **C.** applicant **D.** motivation
74. **A.** compass **B.** campus **C.** comfort **D.** command
75. **A.** engineer **B.** Vietnamese **C.** entertain **D.** employee
76. **A.** encounter **B.** agency **C.** influence **D.** memory
77. **A.** personify **B.** generate **C.** affection **D.** encourage
78. **A.** contain **B.** achieve **C.** improve **D.** enter
79. **A.** company **B.** instrument **C.** business **D.** adventure
80. **A.** suffer **B.** differ **C.** prefer **D.** offer
81. **A.** contact **B.** concert **C.** constant **D.** concern
82. **A.** recipe **B.** candidate **C.** instrument **D.** commitment
83. **A.** inflation **B.** maximum **C.** applicant **D.** character
84. **A.** compulsory **B.** biography **C.** curriculum **D.** admirable
85. **A.** struggle **B.** anxious **C.** confide **D.** comfort
86. **A.** offer **B.** canoe **C.** country **D.** standard
87. **A.** pollution **B.** computer **C.** currency **D.** allowance
88. **A.** financial **B.** fortunate **C.** marvelous **D.** physical
89. **A.** prepare **B.** survive **C.** finish **D.** appeal
90. **A.** bamboo **B.** forget **C.** deserve **D.** channel
91. **A.** endanger **B.** furniture **C.** determine **D.** departure
92. **A.** teacher **B.** lesson **C.** action **D.** police
93. **A.** important **B.** happiness **C.** employment **D.** relation
94. **A.** possible **B.** cultural **C.** confident **D.** supportive
95. **A.** office **B.** nature **C.** result **D.** farmer
96. **A.** difficult **B.** popular **C.** effective **D.** national
97. **A.** answer **B.** reply **C.** singer **D.** future
98. **A.** medical **B.** essential **C.** dangerous **D.** regular
99. **A.** doctor **B.** student **C.** advice **D.** Parent
100. **A.** advice **B.** justice **C.** circus **D.** product

**MODULE 3 : TAG QUESTIONS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

Câu hỏi đuôi (tag question) là dạng câu hỏi rất hay được sử dụng trong tiếng Anh, đặc biệt là tiếng Anh giao tiếp. Câu hỏi đuôi là cấu hỏi ngắn ở cuối câu trần thuật. Câu hỏi này được dùng khi người nói muốn xác minh thông tin là đúng hay không hoặc khi khuyến khích một sự hồi đáp từ phía người nghe.

**Ví dụ:She is learning English now, isn't she? (Cô ấy đang học tiếng Anh bây giờ phải không?)**

**Công thức chung: S + V +…………………….,trợ động từ + S( ĐẠI TỪ )**

-Nếu câu nói trước dấu phẩy là khẳng định thì câu hỏi đuôi là phủ định và ngược lại.

**Dưới đây là bảng tóm tắc cách thành lập câu hỏi đuôi.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Statement** | **Tag questions** |
| I am……… | aren’t I ? |
| I am not……… | am I ? |
| **Động từ khiếm khuyết**  S + can/could/should/will……… | Can’t/couldn’t/shouldn’t/won’t………+ S ? |
| **Động từ thường**  S + V1……………..,  S + Vs/es…………..,  S + V2/ed…………, | **Sử dụng trợ động từ: Do/does/did**  Don’t + S?  Doesn’t + S?  Didn’t + S? |
| S + have/has/had + V3/ed……………, | Haven’t/hasn’t/hadn’t + S ? |
| S + is/are/was/were………………, | Isn’t/aren’t/wasn’t/weren’t + S? |
| S + used to + V………, | Didn’t + S ? |
| S +’d better/had better + V…………, | Hadn’t + S? |
| S +’d rather/would rather/would like + V…………, | Would + S? |
| There + is/are/was/were……………., | Isn’t/aren’t/wasn’t/weren’t + S? |
| Let’s + V………, | Shall we+? |
| Chủ từ là : **No one/nobody/anyone/anybody/**  **everyone/everybody/someone/somebody** | ……………..+ they ? |
| Chủ từ là: **nothing/anything/something/**  **Everything…………..** | ………………+ it? |
| Chủ từ là **this/that…………..** | ………………+ it? |
| Chủ từ là **these/those……….** | ……………..+ they ? |
| Trong câu có các từ phủ định:**no/none/without**  **Neither/hardly/seldom/rarely/little/never/few.** | Câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định **không có N’T** |
| S + ought to………, | Shouldn’t + S? |
| **Câu mệnh lệnh** | **Will you?** |

**=> cấu trúc:" I + think/believe/suppose/…." + mệnh đề phụ thì ta dùng động từ trong mệnh đề phụ để xác định động từ cho câu hỏi đuôi.**

Ex: I think she will meet him, won't she?

**Cũng mẫu cấu trúc này nhưng nếu chủ từ không phải là "I" thì dùng động từ chính trong câu (think/believe/suppose/...) để xác định động từ cho câu hỏi đuôi.**

Ex: She thinks he will come, dosen’t she?

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

1. Everybody looks tired, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t it B. don’t they C. does it D. do they

1. I’m a bad man, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. am not I B. isn’t I C. aren’t I D. am I

1. I think she is a dentist, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. don’t I B. isn’t she C. do I D. is she

1. I don’t think you are an engineer, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do I B. aren’t you C. are you D. don’t I

1. Let’s turn off the lights before going out, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. shall we B. will you C. shan’t we D. won’t you

1. Don’t be late, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. are you B. shall we C. do you D. will you

1. You don’t know him,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ?

A. do you B. don’t you C. are you D. aren’t you

1. Lan speaks Chinese very well, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. does she B. doesn’t she C. is she D. was she

1. John has worked hard, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. does he B. did he C. has he D. hasn’t he

1. They invited him to the party, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do they B. don’t they C. did they D. didn’t they

1. They are leaving here tomorrow\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do they B. are they C. aren’t they D. did they

1. I’m a bit late, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. am not I B. aren’t you C. are you D. aren’t I
2. No one is indifferent to praise, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. is one B. isn’t one C. is he D. are they
3. Somebody has left these socks on the bathroom floor, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. have they B. haven’t they C. has he D. hasn’t he
4. James owns a restaurant, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. does he B. is he C. doesn’t he D. didn’t he
5. You aren’t too busy to talk, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. are you B. have you C. aren’t D. do you
6. The cases of COVID 19 outside China have increased 13 fold,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. hasn’t they B. haven’t they C. will they D. don’t they

1. What you have said is wrong,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. isn’t it B. haven’t you C. is it D. have you

1. COVID 19 can be characterized as a pandemic, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. can it B. can’t it C. isn’t it D. can’t they

1. The coronavirus had already overwhelmed China, South Korea, Iran and Italy,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. hadn’t it B. hasn’t it C. didn’t it D. wasn’t it

1. Health authorities have activated their most serious response level,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. haven’t it B. hadn’t they C. have it D. haven’t they

1. Your mother is cooking in the kitchen,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. isn’t she B. doesn’t she C. won’t she D. is she

1. Chinese officials quickly shut down Wuhan market,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t it B. didn’t they C. hadn’t they D. do they

1. There are no easy ways to succeed,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. are there B. aren’t there C. aren’t they D. are they

1. No one is a better cook than my sister, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. aren’t they B. is he C. are they D. is it

1. They’ll buy a new apartment, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. will they B. won’t they C. don’t they D. will not they

1. This house is not safe, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. isn’t this B. isn’t it C. is it D. is this

1. Ba rarely goes out at night, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t he B. is he C. isn’t he D. does he

1. Someone wants a drink, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t it B. don’t they C. do they D. doesn’t he

1. What you have just said is not true, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. is it B. isn’t it C. haven’t you D. has it

1. Lucy has been studying English for 4 years, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. has she B. is she C. hasn’t she D. isn’t she

1. It seems that you are telling me a lie, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t it B. does it C. aren’t you D. are you

1. You need take a rest, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. don’t you B. needn’t you C. need you D. A&B

1. Let me take care of you, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. may I B. will I C. shall we D. don’t I

1. Nobody phoned, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do they B. didn’t they C. will she D. did they

1. I should keep silent, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. shouldn’t I B. don’t I C. should I D. do I

1. He mightn’t get there in time, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. might he B. may he C. mightn’t he D. mayn’t he

1. Everything is fine, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. aren’t they B. isn’t it C. are they D. is it

1. I wish to study English, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. don’t I B. do I C. may I D. mayn’t I

1. What a nice dress, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. is it B. isn’t it C. doesn’t it D. does it

1. One can be one’s master, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. can’t you B. can’t one C. can she D. A&B

1. You’d better stay at home, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. hadn’t you B. had you C. don’t you D. do you

1. You’d rather learn English, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. hadn’t you B. would you C. had you D. wouldn’t you

1. You don’t believe Peter can do it, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do you B. can’t he C. can he D. don’t you

1. These are 3 oranges you bought yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. aren’t they B. are they C. are these D. aren’t these

1. He seldom helps her, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t he B. does he C. did he D. didn’t he

1. They never go to the library with US, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do they B. did they C. don’t they D. didn’t they

1. Mary and Peter don’t like English, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do they B. do Mary and Peter C. are they D. aren’t they

1. I am not a liar, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. am I B. aren’t I C. do I D. don’t I

1. The ticket to London doesn’t cost a lot, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. does it B. isn’t it C. is it D. doesn’t it

1. They must study hard, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. mustn’t they B. need they C. must they D. needn’t they

1. You mustn’t come late, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. need you B. must you C. needn’t you D. mustn’t you

1. She wishes to go to Singapore, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. may she B. doesn’t she C. does she D. mayn’t she

1. Let’s go for a walk, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. shall we B. will you C. shan’t we D. won’t you

1. You must have left your purse at home, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. don’t he B. haven’t you C. doesn’t he D. did they

1. Susan doesn't like oysters, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. did she B. does she C. doesn’t she D. she does

1. We should call Rita, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

a. should we b. shouldn't we c. shall we d. should not we

1. Monkeys can's sing, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

a. can they b. can’t they c. can it d. can't it

1. These books aren't yours, \_\_\_\_?

a. are these b. aren't these c. are they d. aren’t they

1. They are your friends, \_\_\_\_\_?

a. is that b. isn’t that c. are they d. aren’t they

1. No one died in the accident, \_\_\_\_\_? (British English)

a. didn’t they b. did he c. didn't he d. did they?

1. I'm right, \_\_\_\_\_?

a. aren't I b. amn't I c. isn't I d. not I am

1. They never came to class late, and

a. neither did we b. so did we c. we did either d. neither we did

1. She must have been very happy when you told her the news, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. need she B. mustn’t she C. isn’t she D. hasn’t she

1. You must be tired now, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. needn’t you B. aren’t you C. mustn’t you D. haven’t you

1. You’ve never been to Italy, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. have you B. were you C. haven’t you D. weren’t you

1. This picture is yours, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. is it B. isn’t it C. is this D. isn’t this

1. He ought to be home by seven o’clock, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. shouldn’t he B. mayn’t he C. needn’t he D. mustn’t he

1. No one is better cook than his mother, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. is she B. isn’t she C. are they D. aren’t they

1. Do it right now, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. will you B. shall you C. do you D. don’t you

1. There are no easy ways to learn a foreign language, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. are they B. are there C. aren’t they D. aren’t there

1. He seldom goes to the library, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t he B. is he C. does he D. isn’t he

1. Let’s go for a long walk, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
   A. will we B. shall we C .don’t you D. do you
2. I think he will join us, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. doesn’t he B. won’t he C. will he D. don’t I

1. The film is good, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. is it B. are they C. isn’t it D. aren’t they

1. You are going to the party, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. is you B. are you C. aren’t you D. were you

1. He can speak English, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ?

A. can he B. can’t he C. can’t him D. could he

1. The ticket to London doesn’t cost a lot, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. do they B. does it C. is it D. isn’t it
2. You don’t need me any more, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. do I B. don’t I C. do you D. don’t you
3. Nobody knows who invited the wheel, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. do they B. don’t they C. does it D. doesn’t it
4. Harry was working in Bristol then, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. was Harry B. wasn’t he C. was he D. didn’t he
5. You’ll be home before midnight, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. will you B .won’t you C. are you D. won’t you be
6. David is bringing some wine, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. is he B. isn’t he C. is David D. isn’t David
7. Don’t leave anything behind, \_\_\_\_\_\_?  
    A. do you B. don’t you C. will you D. shall we
8. Nobody likes the play, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. do they B. don’t they C. didn’t they D. did they

1. The children can read English, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. can’t they B. can they C. they can D. they can’t

1. Your grandfather was a millionaire, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. was he B. is he C. wasn’t he D. isn’t he

1. Your brother’s here, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. is he B. are he C. isn’t he D. aren’t he

1. That was Ann on the phone, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. was it B. was that C. wasn’t that D. wasn’t it

1. Tom didn't see her, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. did Tom B. did he C. do Tom D. does he

1. Mary wasn't angry, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. was she B. is she C. wasn’t she D. was Mary

1. My wife had never been to Hue, and \_\_\_\_\_I.

a. never have b. so did we c. we did either d. neither we did

1. They are studying pronunciation with Mr. Brown, \_\_\_\_\_?

a. are they b. aren’t they c. do they d. don’t they

1. She should have obeyed her parents, \_\_\_\_\_ she?

a. should b. should have c. shouldn't have d. shouldn't

1. My father doesn’t speak Chinese, and\_\_\_\_\_

a. my mother does neither b. my mother doesn't too

c. neither does my mother d. so doesn’t my mother

1. The air-hostess knows the time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_

a. does she b. isn’t it c. doesn’t she d. did she'

1. This is the second time she has been here, \_\_\_\_\_?

a. has she b. hasn't she c. isn’t this d. isn't it

1. They must do as they are told, \_\_\_\_\_

a. so must I b. I must either c. I do too d. I am too

1. don’t like strong coffee' 'No, \_\_\_\_\_"

a. I don't too b. either don't I c. me either d. neither don't I

1. He hardly does homework , \_\_\_\_\_?

a. has he b. doesn’t he c. does he d. hasn't she

**MODULE 4 : PASSIVE VOICE**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

1. **STRUCTURE (CẤU TRÚC)**
2. **Cách chuyển**

Chủ động (Active): **Subject + Verb + Object**

Bị động (Positive): **Subject + Verb + by Object**

**(tobe + V-ed/ V3)**

Ex:They planted a tree in the garden.

* A tree was planted in the garden (by them).

1. **Các bước chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động**

* Bước 1: Xác định tân ngữ trong câu chủ động, chuyển thành chủ ngữ câu bị động.
* Bước 2: Xác định thì (tense) trong câu chủ động rồi chuyển động từ về thể bị động theo công thức (tobe + V-ed/ V3).
* Bước 3: Chuyển đổi chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động thành tân ngữ thêm “by” phía trước.

1. **Bảng quy đổi các thì ở thể bị động**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Thì** | **Chủ động (A)** | **Bị động (P)** |
| Hiện tại đơn | S + V-inf/ s/ es + O | S + am/ is/ are + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |
| Hiện tại tiếp diễn | S + am/ is/ are + V-ing + O | S + am/ is/ are + being + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |
| Hiện tại hoàn thành | S + have/ has + V-ed/ V3+ O | S + have/ has + been + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |
| Quá khứ đơn | S + V-ed/ V2 + O | S + was/ were + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |
| Quá khứ tiếp diễn | S + was/ were + V-ing + O | S + was/ were + being + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |
| Quá khứ hoàn thành | S + had + V-ed/ V3 + O | S + had + been + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |
| Tương lai đơn | S + will + V-inf + O | S + will + be + V-ed/ V3 +  (by O) |
| Tương lai gần | S + am/ is/ are going to + V-inf + O | S + am/ is/ are going to + be + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |
| Động từ khuyết thiếu | S + ĐTKT + V-inf + O | S + ĐTKT + be + V-ed/ V3 + (by O) |

1. **Lưu ý**

* Không dùng "By + tân ngữ" nếu chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động có tính mơ hồ, chung chung (people, something, someone, they, etc)

Ex: Someone stole my motorbike last night.

* My motorbike was stolen last night.
* Nếu S trong câu chủ động là: I, you, we, they, he, she => có thể bỏ đi trong câu bị động nếu ta không muốn đề cập tới chủ thể gây ra hành động.

Ex: My father waters this flower every morning.

* This flower is watered (by my father) every morning.
* Nếu là người hoặc vật trực tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng “by”, nhưng gián tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng “with”.

Ex: The bird was shot by the hunter.

The bird was shot with a gun.

* Trong câu chủ động nếu có trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian và trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn khi chuyển sang câu bị động sẽ có dạng:

**trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn + by + trạng từ chỉ thời gian**

Ex: Hoa is making a cake in the kitchen now.

* A cake is being made in the kitchen by Hoa now.

1. **THE SPECIAL CASES (NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐẶC BIỆT)**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI HAVE/HAS/HAD** | | |
| **S + have + O ( người) + V1** | **S + have + O ( Vật ) + V3/ed** | |
|  |  | |
| **BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI GET/GOT** | | |
| **S + get + O ( người) + To\_V** | **S + get + O ( Vật ) + V3/ed** | |
| **BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI NEED** | | |
| **S người + need + To-V** | **S vật + need + V-ing / To be V3.ed** | |
| **BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ CHỈ Ý KIẾN** | | |
| **It + is /was + V3/ed + that + S + V…..**  **S2 + be + V3/ed + To-V ( 2 V cùng thì )**  **S2 + be + V3/ed + To have V3/ ed ( 2 V khác thì )** | | |
| **BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI V-ING / TO - V** | | |
| To V => To be + V3/ ed .  Ex : I don’t want to be laughed at. | | V-ing => Being + V­3/ ed  Ex : We dislike being cheated. |
| **BỊ ĐỘNG HAI TÂN NGỮ** | | |
| **S + V + O1 + O2**  **Ex**: The student gave me a book  **BĐ**: (C1) S + be + V3/ed + O2 + ( by + O) => **I** was given a book by the student.  **BĐ:** (C2) S + be + V3/ed + to/for + O1 + (by + O) => **A book** was given to me by the student  - Các động từ thường đi với giới từ **“to”:** give, hand, lend, offer, send, show, pay, promise, read, throw, wish, owe.  - Các động từ thường đi với giới từ **“for”:** buy, do, get, leave, make, order, save, spare.  **Ghi chú** :- Động từ **Be** phải được chia cùng thì với câu chủ động hoặc cùng dạng với **Vchính**. | | |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

1. I…………..with you on that subject.

A. am agree B. am agreed C. agreeing D. agree

1. Many American automobiles…………..in Detroit, Michigan.

A. manufacture B. have manufactured

C. are manufactured D. are manufacturing

1. Let’s go ahead and do it now. Nothing……………by waiting.

A. accomplishes B. accomplished

C. has accomplished D. will be accomplished

1. “When……………?” - “In 1928.”

A. penicillin was invented B. did penicillin invented

C. was penicillin invented D. did penicillin invent

1. In recent years, the government has imposed pollution controls on automobile manufacturers. Both domestic and imported automobiles must…………….anti-pollution devices.

A. equip with B. be equipped with C. equip by D. be equipped by

1. The first draft resolution……………yesterday; it …………… long before the beginning of the meeting.

A. has not been discussed - had been withdrawn

B. was not discussed - has been withdrawn

C. was not discussed - had been withdrawn

D. had not been discussed - was withdrawn

1. He is not in town; he……………on a special mission.

A. is sending B. will be sent C. has sent D. has been sent

1. Don’t come into the compartment; the berth ……………now.

A. is being fixed B. has been fixed C. is fixed D. is being fixing

1. A new underground line……………now. They say one of its stations……………in my street.

A. is constructed - will be built

B. is being constructed - has been built

C. is being constructed - will be built

D. will be constructed - to be built

1. He wants to know when the final decision ……………. The activities of the committee and their delays already……………about.

A. has been taken - have spoken B. will be taken - have been spoken

C. will be taken - will be spoken D. is taken - have been spoken

1. It was three o’clock. We……………to hurry up because we .

A. were told - were being waited B. had been told - were waited

C. were told - were waiting D. told - were being waited

1. Do you believe that such a problem can……………?

A. solve B. be solving C. is solved D. be solved

1. It must……………without delay.

A. be done B. have been done C. do D. be doing

1. On September 9, 1850, California……………to the United States as the thirty-first state.

A. has been admitted B. was admitted C. was admitted D. admitted

1. When I came, an experiment……………in the lab.

A. was being holding B. has been held

C. was being held D. has held

1. I still cannot believe it! My bicycle…………… some minutes ago.

A. was stolen B. was stealing C. stolen D. stole

1. The current constitutional problem is……………by the top legal minds in the country.

A. studying B. being studying C. being studied D. been studied

1. Something funny……………in class yesterday.

A. happened B. was happened C. happens D. is happened

1. The child’s arm was swollen because he……………by a bee.

A. stung B. had stung C. had been stung D. had being stung

1. Today many serious childhood diseases……………by early immunization.

A. are preventing B. can prevent C. prevent D. can be prevented

1. Sally gave such a good speech that I couldn’t resist……………loudly when she finished.

A. applauding B. being applauded C. to applaud D. to be applauded

1. Not all the necessary things …………… for our trip that’s why the departure……………

A. will have been bought - has been postponed

B. have been bought - has been postponed

C. has been bought - had been postponed

D. had been bought - has been postponed

1. If you want to develop inner tranquility, you have to stop……………by every little thing that happens.

A. bothering B. being bothered C. to bother D. to be bothered

1. Richard really didn’t mind …………… by the party to celebrate his fortieth birthday although he told his friends that they shouldn’t have done it.
2. A. surprising B. being surprised C. to surprise D. to be surprised Ann hoped …………… to join the private club. She could make important business contacts there.

A. inviting B. being invited C. to invite D. to be invited

1. Are you sure you told me? I don’t recall……………about it.

A. having told B. having been told C. to have told D. to have been told

1. David appears……………some weight. Has he been ill?

A. having lost B. having been lost C. to have lost D. to have been lost

1. Tom made a serious mistake at work, but his boss didn’t fire him. He’s lucky ……………a second chance.

A. having given B. having been given

C. to have given D. to have been given

1. Dr. Nguyen is a brilliant and dedicated scientist who had expected to be selected as the director of the institute. She was very surprised not……………the position.

A. having offered B. having been offered

C. to have offered D. to have been offered

1. By the time their baby arrives, the Johnsons hope……………painting and decorating the new nursery.

A. having finished B. having been finished

C. to have finished D. to have been finished

1. The money……………to him two months ago, but it……………back yet.

A. was lent - had not been given B. has been lent - was not given

C. was lent - has not given D. was lent - has not been given

1. The new students hope……………in many of the school’s social activities.

A. including B. being included C. to include D. to be included

1. The owner of the building’s supply store doesn’t mind……………his customers discounts when they buy in large quantities.

A. giving B. being given C. to give D. to be given

1. Jack got into trouble when he refused……………his briefcase for the customs officer.

A. opening B. being opened C. to open D. to be opened

1. Fortunately, the hospital’s new air-conditioning system……………when the first heat wave of the summer arrived.

A. had installed B. installed

C. had been installed D. had been installing

1. The City Parks Department is putting in several miles of new trails because so many people have said that they enjoy……………on them.

A. walking B. being walked C. to walk D. to be walked

1. You’d better save some money for a rainy day. You can’t count on……………by your parents every time you get into financial difficulty.

A. rescuing B. being rescued C. to rescue D. to be rescued

1. The man died because medical help was not summoned. A doctor should……………immediately.

A. have called B. be called C. called D. have been called

1. I don’t remember……………of the decision to change the company policy on vacations. When was it decided?

A. telling B. being told C. to tell D. to be told

1. Ms Clark expects……………about any revisions in her manuscript before it is printed.

A. consulting B. being consulted C. to consult D. to be consulted

1. Her fiance is said\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_from Harvard University five years ago.

A. having graduated B. to have graduated

C. being graduated D. to be graduated

1. As a small boy, he used to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_alone in the house for an hour or two.

A. being left B. leaving C. be left D. leave

1. Ann hoped\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to join the private club. She could make important business contact here.

A. being invited B. to invite C. to be invited D. inviting

1. Everyone likes\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_when they have got some success.

A. to be congratulated B. being congratulated

C. to be congratulating D. to congratulate

1. Her watch needs \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. repairing B. to be repaired C. repaired D. A and B

1. I'll get Minh\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_this for you.

A. do B. done C. did D. to do

1. It is suggested that all the strict rules\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by employees.

A. obey B. are obeyed C. be obeyed D. should obey

1. We had the roof of our house\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_yesterday.

A. repaired B. repair C. repairing D. to repair

1. The photos \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in a London studio last week.

A. were taken B. have taken C. was taken D. have been taken

1. When the boy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the car he was badly injured.

A. is hit by B. was hit by C. hit D. was hitting

1. I'll have the boys\_\_\_\_\_\_ the chairs.

a. paint b. to paint c. painted d. painting

1. Have these flowers\_\_\_\_\_\_ to her office, please.

a. taken b. taking c. take d. to take

1. Lisa had the roof\_\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

a. repair b. repaired c. to repair d. repairing

1. The students got the librarian\_\_\_\_\_\_ books for them.

a. buy b. to buy c. bought d. buying

1. He had a portrait \_\_\_\_\_ as a birthday present for his daughter.

A. painting B. paint C. painted D. to be painted

1. Her watch needs \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. repairing B. to be repaired C. repaired D. A and B

1. His car needs \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. be fixed B. fixing C. to be fixing D. fixed

1. We got our mail \_\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.

A. been delivered B. delivered C. delivering D. to deliver

1. Your house needs \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.  
    A. redecorated B. redecorating C. being redecorated D. to redecorate
2. I’ll get Minh \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this for you.

A. do B. done C. did D. to do

1. That book \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by a famous author.

A. wrote B. was written C. is writing D. has written

1. Food\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ direct to the market by trucks.

A. delivered B. deliver C. can be delivered D. delivers

1. The house has\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ after the fire.

A. to rebuild B. to be rebuilt C. to be rebuild D. rebuilt

1. All the homework\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at home.

A. should do B. should done C. should be done D. should be doing

1. The application form\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the university before May 31st.

A. must send B. sent C. must be send D. must be sent

1. Traffic rules\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ strictly.

A. followed B. must followed C. must be followed D. must follow

1. Today, many serious childhood diseases\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by early immunization.

A. are preventing B. can prevent C. prevent D. can be prevented

1. We're late. The film\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by the time we get to the cinema.

A. will already start B. will be already started

C. will already have started D. will be starting

1. I still can not believe it. My bicycle \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ some minutes ago.

A. was stolen B. was stealing C. stolen D. stole

1. Many U.S automobiles \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in Detroit, Michigan.

A. manufacture B. have manufactured

C. are manufactured D. are manufacturing

1. Dynamite \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by Alfred Bernard Nobel.

A. have been invented B. invented

C. was invented D. was being invented

1. It\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that the strike will end soon.

A. is expected B. expected C. are expected D. was expected

1. My shirt \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by my sister on my last birthday.

A. gave B. was given C. had been given D. was being given

1. The castle\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in the 16th century.

A. built B. has built C. was built D. had built

1. A lot of pesticide residue can\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ unwashed produce.

A. find B. found C. be finding D. be found

1. This tree \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by our grandfather over 40 years ago.

A. grew B. has grown C. is grown D. was grown

1. The story I’ve just read\_\_\_\_\_\_Agatha Christie.

A. was written B. was written by C. was written from D. wrote by

1. Gold\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in California in the 19th century.

A. was discovered B. has been discovered C. was discover D. they discover

1. Beethoven’s Fifth Symphony \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ next weekend

A. is going to be performed B. has been performed

C. will be performing D. will have perform

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ yet?

A. Have the letters been typed B. Have been the letters typed

C. Have the letters typed D. Had the letters typed

1. The windows \_\_\_\_\_\_\_yesterday.

A. were cleaned B. was cleaned C. cleaned D. had cleaned

1. The house \_\_\_\_six decades ago.

A. was built B. was building C. will be built D. was to be built

1. It is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that many people are homeless after the floods.

A. was reported B. reports C. reported D. reporting

1. He was said \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this building.

A. designing B. to have designed C. to design D. designed

1. Some film stars\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ difficult to work with.

A. are said be B. are said to be C. say to be D. said to be

1. It \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that learning English is easy.

A. are said B. said C. is said D. is sayed

1. John ........a respectful and obedient student.

a. said to be b. is said c. is said being d. is said to be

1. It ..........it is parents’ responsibility to take good care of their children.

a. commonly says that b. commonly to be said that

c. is commonly said that d. is commonly saying

1. More than ten victims ......... missing in the storm last week

a. are reported to be b. are reported to have been

c. are reporting to have been d. are reporting to be

1. It .......... that learning a foreign language ............ a lot of time.

a. says/ is take b. is saying / has been taken

c. is said/ takes d. was said/ was taken

1. The longest fish in the contest was eighteen inches long".

"It\_\_\_\_\_ by Thelma Rivers".

a. was catching b. caught c. was caught d. catch

1. "I heard you decided to take up tennis".

"Yes, I have\_\_\_\_\_ every day".

a. been played b. been playing c. playing d. play

1. "Are we about to have dinner?".

"Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_ in the dinning room".

a. is serving b. serves c. is being served d. served

1. "Why is Stanley in jail?" "He\_\_\_\_\_ of robbery".

a. has been convicted b. has been convicting

c. has convicted d. convicted

1. "Where are Jack and Jan?" "They\_\_\_\_\_ the boxes you asked for into the house".

a. have been bringing b. bringing c. have been brought d. to bring

1. "Where's the old chicken coop?"

"It\_\_\_\_\_ by a windstorm last year".

a. destroy b. is destroyed c. was destroyed d. destroyed

1. "We're still looking for Thomas".

"Hasn't he\_\_\_\_\_ yet?".

a. been found b. to find c. found d. being found

1. "Whatever happened t that fortune - teller?"

"I don't know. She \_\_\_\_\_ around her in a long time".

a. hasn't seen b. didn't see c. hasn't been seeing d. hasn't been seen

1. "Diana is a wonderful ballet dancer".

"She\_\_\_\_\_ since she was four".

a. has been dancing b. has been danced c. is dancing d. was danced

1. "What a beautiful dress you're wearing!"

"Thank you. It\_\_\_\_\_ especially for me by a French tailor".

a. is made b. has made c. made d. was made

**MODULE 5 : PREPOSITIONS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**1.Định nghĩa giới từ là gì ? (Difinition)**

- Giới từ là từ hay cụm từ thường được dùng với danh từ, tính từ, đại từ để chỉ mối liên hệ giữa các từ này với các thành phần khác trong câu.

- Giới từ có vị trí đứng riêng của mình trong câu, sau đây là vị trí của một số giới từ cơ bản trong tiếng Anh:

**a. Trước danh từ**

Ví dụ:+ at the cinema: ở rạp chiếu phim

+ in 2000: vào năm 2000

**b. Sau động từ**

Có thể liền sau động từ, có thể bị một từ khác xen giữa động từ và giới từ.

Ví dụ:+ I arrived at the airport on time. (Tôi đến sân bay đúng giờ.)

+ Please turn the radio down! (Làm ơn vặn nhỏ đài chút!)

**c. Sau tính từ**

Ví dụ:+ Viet Nam is rich in natural resources. (Việt Nam giàu tài nguyên thiên nhiên.)

+ He is very friendly with me. (Anh ấy rất thân thiện với tôi.)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **MỘT SỐ GIỚI TỪ CƠ BẢN** | | |
| **Giới từ** | **Cách dùng** | **Ví dụ** |
| in | tháng | in May; in March |
| năm | in 2004; in 2018 |
| mùa | in summer; in winter |
| buổi trong ngày | in the morning; in the afternoon; in the evening |
| khoảng thời gian | in a minute; in three days |
| at | buổi trong ngày | at night; at noon |
| thời gian trong ngày | at 7 o’clock; at midnight |
| dịp lễ | at Christmas; at Easter |
| cụm từ cố định | at the same time |
| on | dịp lễ đặc biệt | on Good Friday; on Easter Sunday; on my birthday |
| buổi của 1 ngày đặc biệt | on the morning of March the 1 st |
| after | (sau khi) muộn hơn cái gì đó | after breakfast |
| ago | (cách đây bao lâu) điều gì đã xảy ra lâu rồi | 2 years ago |
| before | (trước khi) sớm hơn cái gì đó | before Christmas |
| between | (Ở giữa) thời gian chia làm | between Monday and Thursday |
| by | không muộn hơn một mốc thời gian nào đó. | by Sunday |
| during | (Trong suốt) trong khoảng thời gian  nào đó | during the holidays |
| for | khoảng thời gian | for three weeks |
| from... to  from... till/unil | từ... đến ... | from Monday to Wednesday from Monday till Wednesday |
| pat | giờ hon | 23 minutes past 6 (6: 23) |
| since | mốc thời gian | since Monday |
| till/until | (cho tới khi) không muộn hổn một mốc cố định nào đó. | till tomorrow until tomorrow |
| to | giờ kém | 23 minutes to 6 (5:37) |
| up to | không nhiều hổn một khoảng thời gian nào đó | up to 6 hours a day |
| within | (trong vòng) trong khoảng thời gian nào đó | within a day |
| **CÁC CỤM GIƠI TỪ THƯỜNG XUẤT HIỆN TRONG KỲ THI** | | |
| ABOUT | - To be sorry about st  - To be curious about st  - To be careful about st  - To be careless about st  - To be confused about st  - To be doubtful about st  - To be excited about st  - To be enthusiastic about st  - To be sad about st  - To be serious about  - To be reluctant about st (or to) st  - To be uneasy about st  - To be worried about st | + lấy làm tiếc, hối tiếc về cái gì  + tò mò về cái gì  + cẩn thận về cái gì  + bất cẩn về cái gì  + nhầm lẫn về cái gì  + hoài nghi về cái gì  + hứng thú về cái gì  + nhiệt tình, hào hứng về cái gì  + buồn về cái gì  + nghiêm túc về  + ngần ngại, miễn cưỡng với cái gì  + không thoải mái  + lo lắng về cái gì |
| AT | - To be amazed at st  - To be amused at st  - To be angry at sb  - To be annoyed at sb  - To be bad at st  - To be brilliant at  - To be good/clever at st  - To be efficient at st  - To be expert at st  - To be mad at sb  - To be present at  - To be skillful at st  - To be surprised at st  - To be quick at st | + kinh ngạc, sửng sốt vì cái gì  + thích thú với cái gì  + tức giận với ai  + bực mình với ai  + yếu kém về cái gì  + thông minh, có tài  + giỏi/sắc sảo về cái gì  + có năng lực về cái gì  + thành thạo về cái gì  + tức điên lên với ai  + có mặt  + khéo léo cái gì  + ngạc nhiên với  + nhạy bén về cái gì/nhanh chóng làm gì |
| FOR | - To be available for sth  - To be bad for  - To be good for  - To be convenient for  - To be difficult for  - To be dangerous for  - To be eager for  - To be eligible for  - To be late for  - To be liable for sth  - To leave for  - To be famous/well-known for  - To be fit for  - To be greedy for  - To be grateful for sth  - To be helpful/useful for  - To be necessary for  - To be perfect for  - To prepare for  - To be qualified for  - To be ready for sth  - To be responsible for sth  - To be suitable for  - To be sorry for  - To apologize for st/doing st  - To thank sb for st/doing st  - To be useful for | + có sẵn (cái gì)  + xấu cho  + tốt cho  + thuận lợi cho...  + khó...  + nguy hiểm...  + háo hức cho  + đủ tư cách cho  + trễ...  + có trách nhiệm về pháp lý  + rời khỏi đâu  + nổi tiếng  + thích hợp với  + tham lam...  + biết ơn về việc...  + có ích /có lợi  + cần thiết  + hoàn hảo  + chuẩn bị cho  + có phẩm chất  + sẵn sàng cho việc gì  + có trách nhiệm v’ê việc gì  + thích hợp  + xin lỗi /lấy làm tiếc cho  + xin lỗi vì cái gì/vì đã làm gì  + cảm ơn ai vì cái gì  + có ích, hữu dụng |
| FROM | - To borrow st from sb/st  - To demand st from sb  - To draw st from st  - To emerge from st  - To escape from  - To be free from  - To prevent st from  - To protect sb/st from  - To prohibit sb from doing st  - To separate st/sb from st/sb  - To suffer from  - To be away from st/sb  - To be different from st  - To be far from sb/st  - To be safe from st  - To save sb/st from  - To be resulting from st | + vay mượn của ai /cái gì  + đòi hỏi cái gì ở ai  + rút cái gì  + nhú lên cái gì  + thoát ra từ cái gì  + không bị, không phải  + ngăn cản ai cái gì  + bảo vệ ai /bảo về cái gì  + cấm ai làm việc gì  + tách cái gì ra khỏi cái gì  /tách ai ra khỏi ai  + chịu đựng đau khổ  + xa cách cái gì/ai  + khác về cái gì  + xa cách ai/cái gì  + an toàn trong cái gì  + cứu ai/cái gì khỏi  + do cái gì có kết quả |
| IN | - To be absorbed in  - To believe in st/sb  - To delight in st  - To be engaged in st  - To be experienced in st  - To include st in st  - To indulge in st  - To be interested in st /doing st  - To invest st in st  - To involved in st  - To persist in st  - To be deficient in st  - To be fortunate in st  - To be rich in st  - To be successful/succeed in | + say mê, say sưa  + tin tưởng cái gì/vào ai  + hồ hởi về cái gì  + tham dự, lao vào cuộc  + có kinh nghiệm về cái gì  + gộp cái gì vào cái gì  + chìm đắm trong cái gì  + quan tâm cái gì/việc gì  + đầu tư cái gì vào cái gì  + dính líu vào cái gì  + kiên trì trong cái gì  + thiếu hụt cái gì  + may mắn trong cái gì  + dồi dào, phong phú  + thành công |
| OF | - To be ashamed of  - To be afraid of  - To be ahead of  - To be aware of  - To be capable of  - To be confident of  - To be certain of  - To be doubtful of  - To be fond of  - To be full of  - To be hopeful of  - To be independent of  - To be proud of  - To be jealous of  - To be guilty of  - To be innocent of  - To remind sb of  - To be sick of  - To be scared of  - To be short of  - To be suspicious of  - To be joyful of  - To be typical of  - To be tired of  - To be terrified of | + xấu hổ về...  + sợ, e ngại...  + trước  + nhận thức  + có khả năng  + tự tin  + chắc chắn về  + nghi ngờ  + thích  + đầy  + hy vọng  + độc lập  + tự hào  + ganh tị với  + phạm tội về, có tội  + vô tội  + gợi cho ai nhớ tới  + chán nản về  + sợ hãi  + thiếu  + nghi ngờ về  + vui mừng về  + tiêu biểu, điển hình  + mệt mỏi  + khiếp sợ về |
| ON | - To be dependent/depend on st/sb  - To be keen on st  - To be based on st | + lệ thuộc vào cái gì /vào ai  + mê cái gì  + dựa trên, dựa vào |
| TO | - To be able to  - To be acceptable to  - To be accessible to  - To be accustomed to  - To be agreeable to  - To be addicted to  - To be available to sb  - To be clear to  - To be contrary to  - To be delightful to sb  - To be equal to  - To be exposed to  - To be familiar to sb  - To be favorable to  - To be grateful to sb  - To be harmful to sb/st  - To be Important to  - To be indifferent to  - To be identical to  - To be kind to sb  To be kind of sb  - To be likely to  - To be lucky to  - To be loyal to  - To be necessary to sth/sb  - To be next to  - To be open to  - To be opposed to  - To be pleasant to  - To be preferable to  - To be profitable to  - To be responsible to sb  - To be rude to  - To be similar to  - To be useful to sb  - To be willing to | + có thể  + có thể chấp nhận  + có thể kết nối, tiếp cận  + quen với  + có thể đồng ý  + đam mê  + sẵn cho ai  + rõ ràng  + trái lại, đối lập  + thú vị đối với ai  + tương đương với  + phơi bày, để lộ  + quen thuộc đối với ai  + tán thành, ủng hộ  + biết ơn ai  + có hại cho ai (cho cái gì]  + quan trọng  + bàn quang, thờ ơ  + giống hệt  + tốt với ai  + lòng tốt của ai  + có thể  + may mắn  + chung thủy với  + cần thiết cho việc gì/cho ai  + kế bên  + cởi mở  + phản đối  + hài lòng  + đáng thích hơn  + có lợi  + có trách nhiệm với ai  + thô lỗ, cộc cằn  + giống, tương tự  + có ích cho ai  + sẵn lòng |
| WITH | - To be acquainted with  - To be angry with sb  - To be busy with st  - To be bored with = to be fed up with  - To be consistent with st  - To be content with st  = to be satisfied with  - To be crowded with  - To be covered with  - To cope with  - To deal with  - To be disappointed with Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425)  - To be friendly to  - To be patient with st  - To be impressed with/by  - To be popular with  - To be wrong with | + quen biết, quen thân  + tức giận với ai  + bận với cái gì  + chán ngán, chán ngấy  + kiên trì chung thủy với cái gì  + hài lòng với  + đầy, đông đúc  + bao phủ với  + đương đầu với  + xử lí, giải quyết với  + thất vọng với  + thân thiện với  + kiên trì với cái gì  + có ấn tượng/xúc động với  + phổ biến quen thuộc  + có vấn đề |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

1. Jane doesn't spend much money\_\_\_\_\_\_ clothes.

a. over b. about c. at d. on

1. She always takes good care\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her children.

a. for b. in c. of d. with

1. A sign warned motorists\_\_\_\_\_\_ dangers.

a. of b. for c. about d. a and c

1. They translated the letter \_\_\_\_\_\_ French.

a. for b. with c. into d. about

1. I was disappointed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the grade I received on my last essay.

a. for b. about c. to d. a and b

1. The medical center is close \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ campus.

a. to b. for c. up d. with

1. We went there\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ car and stayed there for the whole day.

a. in b. on c. with d. by

1. We started our journey \_\_\_\_\_\_ foot.

a. with b. by c. on d. in

1. He always prevents me\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ doing my duty.

a. of b. from c. with d. against

1. I write letters \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ my right hand.

a. in b. by c. with d. at

1. John is fond\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_going to the dancing class.

A.in B. of C.with D.at

1. That is last year’sversion. It’s\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_date now.

A.into B. out of C. besides D.out

1. He was put\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_prison last year.

A.to B. from C. into D.at

1. The ASEAN Vision 2020 is aimed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_forging closer economic integration within the region.

A. to B. for C. of D. at

1. The population of ASEAN accounts\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_about 8.6% of the w

orld’s population.

A. of B. for C. in D. from

1. Joe is an orphan. He was brought\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by his aunt.

A. about B. up C. around D. on

1. In most football matches, referees often wear\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_black.

A. in B. for C. with D. on

1. I shall wait\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you at the station.

A.about B.by C. to D.for

1. I saw him\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_noon

A.for Bwith C. against D.at

1. The picture is\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the wall.

A.above B. at C. over D.on

1. She likes to go\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a picnic with her family.

A.for B. over C. into D.by

1. What doyou think\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_this sonata of Beethoven?

A.about B. to C.with D.from

1. I work hard\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_help, my parents.

A. so as to B. in order to C. In order that D. A and B

1. Aren’t you glad that you went to the party with us\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_all?

A.in B. after C. above D.with

1. I am quite familiar\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the food here.

A.with B. about C. to D.into

1. He aimed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the tiger.

A.for B. at C.with D.to

1. My father gave\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_smoking.

A.to B. in C. up D.for

1. We escaped\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that horrible room.

A.to B. out C. away D.from

1. This library card will give you free access\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the Internet eight hours a day.

A. on B. to C. from D. in

1. She had to hand in her notice\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_advance when she decided to leave the job.

A. with B. from C. in D. to

1. If you have anything important to do, do it straight away. Don’t put it\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. on B. off C. over D. up

1. Such relaxing days were few and far\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in her hectic life.

A. between B. off C. beyond D. out

1. She went\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_with a bad cold just before Christmas.

A. through B. over C. in for D. down

1. We couldn’t help laughing when he took\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his teacher so well.

A. up B. over C. off D. out

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_general, our students are very intelligent and really active.

A. In B. With C. By D. On

1. Don’t let time go\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_without doing anything about the situation.

A. out B. by C. off D. over

1. Muhammad All, the World great boxer, passed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on June 4th 2016.

A. through B. on C. down D. away

1. Gasis made\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_oil.

A.of B. from C.with D.to

1. He suffers\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_stomachache.

A.from B.with C. in D.by

1. Mike is\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Canada with his mother now.

A.with B. on C. to D.in

1. I have not finished my homework\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_now.

A.till B.since C. for D.at

1. She smiled\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_hom happy.

A.at B.with C. to D.about

1. I shall be ready\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a moment

A.for B. in C.with D.on

1. Facebook’s terms of use state that members must be\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_least 13 years old with valid email ID’s.

A. without B. of C. at D. on

1. At first he didn’t agree, but in the end we managed to bring him\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to our point of view.

A. over B. up C. back D. round

1. We are\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_no obligation to change goods which were not purchased here.

A. to B. at C. with D. under

1. We benefit greatly \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the medicines and other products that biodiversity provides.

A. from B. without C. for D. at

1. While studying, he was financially dependent\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his parents.

A. of B. to C. from D. on

1. The promoters called the concert\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_because the singer had a sore throat.

A. away B. up C. off D. with

1. All students must hand\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_their homework the day after it is assigned.

A. out B. on C. to D. in

1. She smiled .......... him.

a. at b.with c.to d. about

1. Your work is .......... the average.

a. under b. beneath c. down d. below

1. I shall be ready .......... a moment.

a. for b. in c.with d.on

1. Aren't you glad that you went to the party with us .......... all?

a.in b. after c. above d. with

1. We can't get everything we want from life; we must just make the best .......... it.

a.with b.of c.for d. by

1. Mrs. Marie told her little boy to put all his toys\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_before coming to dinner.

A. out B. off C. away D. in

1. I’m afraid I’m a little short\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_money this month, so I can’t lend you any.

A. of B. from C. with D. for

1. You should book\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_advance because the restaurant is very popular in the area.

A. on B. by C. with D. in

1. It was so noisy outside that she couldn’t concentrate\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_her work.

A. in B. at C. with D. on

1. The children are highly excited\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the coming summer holiday.

A. with B. to C. for D. about

1. The manager is directly responsible\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the efficient running of the office

A. about B. for C. at D. in

1. His choice of future career is quite similar\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_mine.

A. at B. with C. for D. to

1. She was very surprised\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the grade she received.

a. at b. on c. of d. about

1. We might need more food, depending\_\_\_\_ how many people turn up.

a. for b. on c. at d. wit

1. The war victims suffered terribly\_\_\_\_\_\_ cold and hunger.

a. with b. from c. through d. of

1. She is absent\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ class

a. at b. from c. to d. away

1. It is very nice\_\_\_\_\_\_ you to take so much trouble.

a. of b. to c. for d. from

1. You may write\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ pencil.

a. with b. by c. in d. on

1. He congratulated me\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ winning the competition.

a. of b. on c. at d. about

1. Remember me\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ your parents.

a. to b. for c. with d. about

1. Mr. Foster lives\_\_\_\_\_ 667E 76th street\_\_\_\_\_\_ New York.

a. in/in b. at/in c. on/in d. in/on

1. We reached\_\_\_\_\_\_ her house safe and sound.

a. at b. to

c. with d. no word is needed

1. A large number of inventions and discoveries have been made\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_accident.

A. in B. by C. at D. on

1. This part of the country is famous\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_its beautiful landscapes and fine cuisine.

A. about B. with C. of D. for

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_entering the hall, he found everyone waiting for him.

A. With B. On C. At D. During

1. I’m so tired that I can’t take\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_what you’ve saying

A. on B. out C. up D. in

1. The sign warns people\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the dangers of swimming in this river.

A. about B. from C. with D. to

1. Young people have become increasingly committed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_social activities.

A. of B. to C. in D. at

1. Bob has left home and is independent\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his parents

A. on B. of C. with D. in

1. Americans rarely shake hands to say goodbye except\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_business occasions

A. on B. during C. at D. for

1. I’ve learned to put\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_all the noise.

A. up with B. out C. on D. off

1. That song was popular\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_people from my father’s generation.

A. for B. on C. about D. with

1. The English language is rich\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_vocabulary.

A. at B. in C. on D. for

1. She was quick\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_understanding what we wanted her to do.

A. in B. about C. for D. at

1. .......... mistake, I took the wrong book from my desk this morning.

a. Through b. By c.With d. In

1. They chose him .......... their leader.

a. with b. for c.by d. into

1. I want you to arrange these .......... order by putting the largest first then the next, and so on…

a. on b. out of c. in d. from

1. The telescope will photograph distant galaxies,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_attempt to understand their past.

A. in B. for C. on D. with

1. The issue\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_question is more complex than we think.

A. in B. from C. on D. at

1. I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_was only absent\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the office for a few minutes!

A. for B. from C. in D. about

1. The old manager has just retired, so Tom takes\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his position.

A. in B. on C. up D. out

1. I’ve just spent two weeks looking\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_an aunt of mine who’s been ill.

A. at B. for C. out for D. after

1. Were you aware\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the regulations against smoking in the area?

A. in B. with C. of D. about

1. My uncle took\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_golf when he retired from work.

A. on B. after C. up D. over

1. The boy was always getting\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_trouble as a youth. Then, to everyone’s surprise,   
   he became a policeman.

A. into B. onto C. on D. with

1. My grandfather passed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_when I was only six years old. He had lung cancer.

A. out B. over C. away D. off

1. She started the course two months ago but dropped\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_after only a month.

A. in B. back C. out D. off

1. We are here to provide you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the best service possible.

A. of B. with C. to D. for

1. Go and get me a carton .......... cigarettes.

a. with b. of c.out of d. no

1. He is negligent .......... his duties.

a. with b.to c.for d.of

**MODULE 6 : COMPARISONS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

|  |
| --- |
| **EQUAL COMPARISON (SO SÁNH BẰNG)** |
| **1. Khẳng định:**   |  | | --- | | **S + tobe + as + adj + as + noun/ pronoun.**  **S + V + as + adv + as + noun/ pronoun.** |   Ex: Lan is as young as Hoa. / Mai dances as beautifully as Hue.  **2.Phủ định:**   |  | | --- | | **S + tobe + not + as/ so + adj + as + noun/ pronoun.**  **S + V + not + as/ so + adv + as + noun/ pronoun.** |   Ex: Lan isn’t as/ so young as Hoa. / Mai doesn’t dances as/ so beautifully as Hue.  **3.Cấu trúc “the same as”: giống nhau**   |  | | --- | | **S + tobe/ V + the same + (noun) + as + noun/ pronoun.** |   Ex: This book is the same as that one. / She has the same height as my sister. |
| **COMPARATIVE (SO SÁNH HƠN)** |
| **1.Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn**   |  | | --- | | **S + tobe + adj-er + than + noun/ pronoun.**  **S + V + adv-er + than + noun/ pronoun.** |   Ex: My house is smaller than her house.  She runs faster than me.  **Lưu ý về cách thêm “er” đối với tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn:**  + Đối với tính từ/ trạng từ kết thúc bằng chữ “e” thì ta chỉ thêm “r”.  Ex: large → larger.  + Đối với tính từ/ trạng từ kết thúc bằng 1 nguyên âm + 1 phụ âm thì ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm cuối.  Ex: big → bigger, hot → hotter.  + Đối với các tính từ kết thúc bằng “y” thì ta chuyển “y” thành “i” rồi thêm “er”.  Ex: noisy → noisier, friendly → friendlier.  + Đối với tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng kết thúc bằng “y, ow, er, et, el” thì ta vẫn chia các từ này theo công thức so sánh hơn đối với tính từ ngắn.  Ex: narrow → narrower, happy → happier, quiet → quieter, clever → cleverer.  + Các trạng từ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho so sánh hơn: much, far, a bit/ a little, a lot.  Ex: This chair is much smaller than that chair.  **2. Tính từ/ trạng từ dài**   |  | | --- | | **S + tobe + more + adj + than + noun/ pronoun.**  **S + V + more + adv + than + noun/ pronoun.** |   Ex: Jenny is more beautiful than me.  Tom talks more slowly than me. |
| **SUPERLATIVE (SO SÁNH NHẤT)** |
| **1.Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn**   |  | | --- | | **S + tobe + the + adj-est + noun/ pronoun .**  **S + V + the + adv-est + noun/ pronoun.** |   Ex: This is the longest river in the world.  I jump the highest in my class.  **2.Tính từ/ trạng từ dài**   |  | | --- | | **S + tobe + the most + adj + noun/ pronoun.**  **S + V + the most + adv + noun/ pronoun.** |   Ex: Jenny is the most beautiful in my class.  Tom eats the most slowly in my family.  **Bảng tính từ/ trạng từ so sánh bất quy tắc:**   |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | | Tính từ/ trạng từ | So sánh hơn | So sánh nhất | Nghĩa | | Good/ well | Better | The best | Tốt | | Bad/ badly | Worse | The worst | Tệ | | Little | Less | The least | Ít | | Much/ many | More | The most | Nhiều | | Far | Farther  urther | The farthest  The furthest | Xa  Thêm nữa/ hơn nữa | | Old | Older  Elder | The oldest  The eldest | Già  Anh (chị) trong nhà | |
| **DOUBLE COMPARITIVE (SO SÁNH KÉP)** |
| **1.Cùng 1 tính từ: (càng …ngày càng…)**   |  | | --- | | **a.Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn:**  **S + tobe + adj-er + and + adj-er.**  **S + V + adv-er + and + adv-er.**  Ex: It is getting hotter and hotter.  His voice became weaker and weaker.  **b.Tính từ/ trạng từ dài:**  **S + tobe + more and more + adj.**  **S + V + more and more + adv.**  Ex: The lessons are getting more and more difficult.  The storm became more and more violent. |   **2.Hai tính từ khác nhau: (càng …thì càng…)**   |  | | --- | | **The + comparative + S + tobe/ V, the + comparative + S + tobe/V.**  Ex: The taller she gets, the thinner she is.  The more beautiful she is, the more attractive she gets.  The more intelligent she is, the lazier she becomes.  **Lưu ý:**  Trong câu so sánh kép, nếu túc từ là một danh từ thì ta đặt danh từ ấy ngay sau tính từ so sánh.  Ex: The more English vocabulary we know, the better we speak | |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

**Trọng tâm rơi vào phần so sánh kép**

**“ The + comparative + S + tobe/ V, the + comparative + S + tobe/V.”**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

1. ……….. a person gets, ……….the chance they will develop a disease that harms the brain.

A. So old - greater than B. Too old - a lot greater

C. The older - the greater D. The oldest - the greatest

1. People are becoming…………….aware of healthy eating, exercise, and relaxation, and want to incorporate them into their daily lives.

A. hardly ever B. rather than C. more and more D. much as

1. The more she practises, …………….she becomes.

A. the greater confidence B. more confidently

C. the more confident D. the most confident

1. The more you talk about the situation, ……………..

A. it seems worse B. the worse it seems

C. the worse does it seem D. it seems the worse

1. The older you are, ……………..

A. the more you may become worried B. the more worried you may become

C. the more worry you may become D. you may become more worried

1. Sound comes in waves, and the higher the frequency, ……………..

A. higher is the pitch B. the pitch is higher

C. the higher the pitch D. pitch is higher

1. The more you have tried to edit the article, ……………..

A. it becomes better B. the more it has become

C. the better it becomes D. it has becomes better and better

1. Hubble’s law states that the greater the distance between any two galaxies, …………….is their relative speed of separation.

A. the greatest B. the greater C. greater than D. as great as

1. The better the weather is, ……………..

A. the beaches get the more crowded B. the beaches get the most crowded

C. the most crowded the beaches get D. the more crowded the beaches get

1. The country is rapidly losing its workers as……………..

A. people are emigrating more B. more and more people are emigrating

C. people emigrating are more and more D. more emigrating people are

1. …………….you study for these exams, …………….you will do.

A. The harder - the better B. The more - the much

C. The hardest - the best D. The more hard - the more good

1. The more waste paper we recycle, ……………..

A. the least trees we preserve B. the most trees we preserve

C. the fewer trees we preserve D. the more trees we preserve

1. New York is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Seattle.

A. larger than B. more large than C. as larger than D. more larger than

1. Our house is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ yours.

A. as big than B. as bigger as C. bigger than D. more big than

1. City life is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ country life.

A. as busier as B. busier than C. more busier than D. most busy as

1. Of the two, the round table is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the nicest B. a nice one C. nicer D. the nicer

1. I feel \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ better than I did yesterday.

A. a little B. more C. a few D. many

1. There is nothing \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ travelling abroad.

A. more interesting than B. more interesting as

C. as interesting than D. the most interesting than

1. He finds physics \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ other science subjects.

A. far more difficult than B. much difficulter than

C. too more difficult than D. more much difficult than

1. His car is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ mine.

A. more expensive and faster than B. faster and more expensive than

C. more faster and expensive than D. more expensive than and faster than

1. The cuisine of France is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. more famous than that of England B. famous than the cuisine of England

C. more famous than which of England D. as famous than that of England

1. Russian is a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ language to learn than English is.

A. difficult B. more difficult

C. most difficult D. more and more difficult

1. He has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his sister does.

A. as friends as B. more friends as C. many friends than D. more friends than

1. There are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. twice as much computers in our office as there was

B. as twice many computers in our office as they were

C. twice as many computers in our office than there used to be

D. twice as many computers in our office as there used to be

1. Silver is not \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ gold,

A. as much heavy as B. so heavy than

C. more heavier as D. so heavy as

1. I think cow is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of all animals.

A. most useful B. less useful C. the most useful D. the more useful

1. The new machines use \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the old ones.

A. less water and electricity more than B. less water and electricity than

C. less water and electricity D. as less water and electricity than

1. Try to do this test. It is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than the others.

A. less difficult B. less and less difficult

C. least difficult D. more and more difficult

1. Summer is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ season of the year.

A. hottest B. the hottest C. the hotter D. the more hottest

1. It is one of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ books I have ever had.

A. most useful B. the most useful

C. the most useful than D. the most useful as

1. Of all athletes, Alex is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the less qualified B. the less and less qualified

C. the more qualified D. the least qualified

1. Mary was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the two sisters.

A. the clever B. as clever as C. the cleverer D. the cleverest

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you get to the cinema, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ seat you have.

A. The sooner / the better B. The soon / the good

C. The soonest / the best D. Sooner / Better

1. The picnic was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I had expected.

A. more a hundred times fun than B. a hundred times fun more than

C. a hundred times more fun than D. more fun than a hundred times

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he drank, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he became.

A. More / more violent B. The most / the most violent

C. The more / the more violent D. The less / less violent

1. She is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her colleagues.

A. as intelligent than B. so more intelligent than

C. few more intelligent than D. a lot more intelligent than

1. After three months’ practice, Peter can run \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. fast and fast B. faster and faster

C. the more and more fast D. more and more fast

1. Her husband is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she is.

A. ten years older than B. as ten years old as

C. older ten years than D. so many ten years older

1. Rolls Royce is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ any other car.

A. much more expensive than B. as much expensive than

C. so much expensive as D. very more expensive than

1. They are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ they used to be.

A. less wealthy as B. as less wealthy as

C. less wealthy than D. less wealthy more than

1. Today women do not have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ they used to years ago.

A. as much children as B. as many children as

C. as children as D. more children as

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ money he makes, useless things he buys.

A. More / more B. The more / the more

C. More / the more D. The most / the most

1. Because of the heavy rain, the drivers drove \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. carefully and carefully B. more and more carefully

C. more than carefully D. most and most carefully

1. She is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the staff.

A. the most good B. the far better C. most the best D. by far the best

1. He is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ person I have ever met.

A. quite the most intelligent B. far more intelligent

C. far intelligent as D. as intelligent

1. We are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ involved in charity than they are.

A. most B. as C. as far D. far more

1. He is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his wife.

A. twice as heavy as B. as twice heavy as

C. as heavy as twice D. twice as heavy than

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he insisted he was innocent, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ they seemed to believe him.

A. The more / the less B. More / less

C. The most / the least D. Most / least

1. Kate is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her sister.

A. more nice and intelligent than B. nicer and less intelligent as

C. nicer and more intelligent than D. as nice and intelligent than

1. Among the students in my class, Peter is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. most active B. the most active C. the more active D. more active

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a person wears eyeglasses, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on them he tends to be.

A. Longer / more dependent B. The longest / the most dependent

C. The longer / more dependent D. The longer / the more dependent

1. In this summer there are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ there was last year.

A. so few visitors as B. as few visitors as

C. as few visitors than D. less few visitors as

1. We can satisfy our basic necessities \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ we could in the past.

A. as easily than B. easilier than C. more easily than D. less easily as

1. The organizers hope to raise \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for charity.

A. more as £6 million B. as much £6 million as

C. as much as £6 million D. as more as £6 million

1. It was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the shops than I expected.

A. far B. farer C. farther D. farthest

1. He was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ interested in science.

A. the little B. the least C. the less D. least

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ planet to see in the night sky is Venus.

A. The easy B. The easiest C. The more easy D. The easier

1. John’s grades are really bad. ~ Yes, but Tim are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. so worse B. badder C. worst D. worse

1. Which country is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_: Mexico or Costa Rica?

A. big B. the bigger C. bigger D. the biggest

1. Wyoming has even \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ North Dakota has.

A. more few residents than B. fewer residents than

C. fewer residents as D. residents fewer than

1. Why don’t you buy bananas when they are much……………..apples?

A. less expensive than B. not expensive than

C. expensive than D. lesser expensive than

1. Marine reptiles are among the few creatures that are known to have a possible life span greater than……………...

A. man B. the man’s C. the one of man’s D. that of man

1. This one is prettier, but it costs……………..as the other one.

A. twice as many B. as many C. twice as much D. so much

1. Terylene shirts are……………..to wear, but cotton shirts are much .

A. harder - most comfortable B. hardest - more comfortable

C. harder - more comfortable D. more hard - more comfortable

1. The larger the apartment, the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the rent is.

A. expensive B. more expensive

C. expensively D. most expensive

1. He spent a year in India and loves spicy food \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the food is, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he likes it.

A. The hottest / the most B. The hotter / the more

C. Hottest / most D. Hotter / more

1. Although several methods have been applied, the water seems to be \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. more than polluted B. so as polluted

C. more as polluted D. more and more polluted

1. The more she smiles , ................ she becomes.

A. more graceful B. the most graceful C. most graceful D. the more graceful

1. The harder you learn.............

A. The better is your English B. The better will be your English

C. The better becomes your English D. The better your English will be

1. .................. we read, .................. we know.

A. The most/ the most B. The more/ the more

C. Most/ most D. More/ more

1. ................. a car is ................. it is.

A. The more expensive/ the comfortabler B. The most expensive/ the most comfortable

C. The more expensive/ the more comfortable D. The less expensive/ the more comfortable

1. Of the three courses I did, this one is……………..interesting.

A. the hardest and more B. harder but more

C. the harder but more D. the hardest but most

1. Of the two films we watched yesterday, Titanic is……………...

A. the more interesting B. the most interesting

C. better interesting D. as interesting

1. This car is ……………..of the two models in the showroom.

A. more modern B. the most modern

C. the more modern D. one of the most modern

1. The tickets for the play werenh nearly as expensive……………..we thought.

A. so B. than C. that D. as

1. Why don’t we go on the coach? It is……………..cheaper than the train.

A. a bit quite B. quite bit C. quite a bit D. a quite bit

1. A quick look would reveal that France has twice……………..computers.

A. as many televisions as B. more televisions than

C. as many as televisions D. many as televisions as

1. The……………..source of power in 1970 was from natural gas with almost 25%.

A. most second important B. second most important

C. second important most D. most important second

1. Staying in a hotel costs ……………..renting a room in a dormitory for a week.

A. as much as twice B. twice as much as

C. twice more than D. twice as

1. Tom: “Which is more important? Luck or effort?”

Mary: “Luck is……………..effort.”

A. on the same importance B. of the same importance as

C. the same importance as D. as the same importance as

1. Tom: “Is your government salary good?”

Mary: “Yes, but I don’t make as much ……………..worked in private industry.”

A. as I would if I B. if I would have C. I would if D. as I

1. Please cut my hair……………..the style in this magazine.

A. the same length as B. the same length like

C. the same long like D. the same long as

1. This factory produced……………..motorbikes in 2014 as in the year 2012.

A. as twice as many B. twice as many

C. as twice many D. as many as twice

1. Potential dehydration is……………..that a land animal faces.

A. the often greatest hazard B. the greatest often hazard

C. often the greatest hazard D. often the hazard greatest

1. The curriculum at the public school is as good……………..of any private school.

A. or better than B. as or better than that

C. as or better that D. as or better than those

1. The richer you are,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. you may become more worried B. you more worried may become

C. the more worried you may become D. the more worry you may become

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_you study for these exams,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you will do.

A. The harder / the better B. The more / the much

C. The hardest / the best D. The more hard / the more good

1. The older you are,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the more you may become worried B. the more worried you may become

C. the more worry you may D. you may become more worried

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_in Stevenson's landscapes, the more vitality and character the painting seems to possess.

A. The brushwork is loose B. The looser brushwork

C. The loose brushwork is D. The looser the brushwork is

1. The more she practices, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she becomes.

A. the more confident B. the most confident

C. the greater confidence D. the more confidently

1. The more you work, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you can earn.

A. the less promotion B. the experience

C. the more money D. the most tired

1. ………………you start, ………………you will finish.

A. The soon/the more quickly C. The sooner/the quickly

B. The sooner/the quicker D. The sooner/the more quickly

1. The more he tried to explain, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ we got.

A. the much confused B. the many confusing

C. the more confusing D. the more confused

1. The more \_\_\_\_\_\_ and positive you look, the better you will feel.

A.confident B. confide C. confidently D. confidence

1. The faster Thanh walks, \_\_\_\_\_

A. more tired B. the more tired he gets

C. he gets tired D. he gets more tired

1. The faster we finish, ………………….

A. the sooner we can leave B. we can leave sooner and sooner

C. the sooner can we leave D. we can leave the sooner

1. The harder this student works, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he becomes.

A. the most understanding B. the more understanding

C. more understanding D. understandinger

1. She sings ……….. among the singers I have known.

A. the most beautiful                                              B. the more beautiful

C. the most beautifully                                           D. the more beautifully

1. She is ....... student in my class.

A. most hard-working                                             B. more hard-working

C. the most hard-working                                       D. as hard-working

1. The English test was ....... than I thought it would be.

A. the easier              B. more easy               C. easiest                   D. easier

**MODULE 7 : THE ORDER OF THE ADJECTIVE**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**QUY TẮC VỀ TRẬT TỰ CỦA TÍNH TỪ**

- Khi dùng từ hai tính từ trở lên để miêu tả cho một danh từ, nếu các tính từ cùng loại thì ta phân cách chúng bằng dấu phẩy, còn nếu khác loại thì ta xếp chúng cạnh nhau.

- Trật tự các tính từ được quy định theo thứ tự sau: **“Ông sáu ăn súp của ông mập phì.”**

**OSASCOMP**

**(QSASCOMP)**

**Opinion**

**(Quality)**

Useful (hữu ích), beautiful (đẹp), interesting (thú vị), lovely (đáng yêu), delicious (ngon miệng), handsome (đẹp trai), glorious (lộng lẫy), luxurious (sang trọng)

**Size**

big (to), small (nhỏ), large (lớn), huge (khổng lồ), tiny (bé xíu), long (dài), short (ngắn), tall (cao)...

old (già, cũ), young (trẻ), new (mới), brand-new (mới toanh), ancient (cổ đại), modern (hiện đại),...

**Age**

**Shape**

round (tròn), triangle (tam giác), cubic (hình hộp), heart-shaped (hình trái tim), flat (bằng phẳng), square (hình vuông)...

black (đen), red (đỏ), white (trắng), blue (xanh), yellow (vàng), cream (màu kem), violet (tím), purple (đỏ tía), navy blue (xanh hải quân.

**Color**

**Origin**

Vietnamese, English, Indian, Thai, German, American,...

Silk (lụa), gold (vàng), silver (bạc), wooden (gỗ), metal (kim loại), plastic (nhựa), leather (da), glass (thuỷ tinh), concrete (bê tông), ivory (ngà)...

**Material**

**Purpose**

sitting, sleeping, wedding, waiting...

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Op**inion | **S**ize | **A**ge | **Sh**ape | **C**olor | **O**rigin | **M**aterial | **P**urpose |
| nice, pretty, beautiful, ugly, good,excellent,... | small, thick, big, huge | young, new, old,... | square, round, oval, triangular.... | pink, white, brown, ... | Chinese  Vietnames  American | golden, wooden, paper,... |  |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. When I was going to school this morning, I saw a\_\_\_\_\_\_girl. She asked me how to get to Hoan Kiem Lake.

A. beautiful young blonde Russian B. beautiful young Russian blonde

C. blonde young beautiful Russian D. Russian young blonde beautiful

1. Indiana University, one of the largest ones in the nation, is located in a \_\_\_\_\_\_town.

A. small beautiful Midwestern B. beautiful Midwestern small

C. Midwestern beautiful small D. beautiful small Midwestern

1. Her father bought her\_\_\_\_\_\_when he went on holiday in Singapore

last week.

A. a beautiful silk yellow scarf B. a beautiful yellow silky scarf

C. a beautiful yellow scarf silk D. a beautiful yellow silk scarf

1. It is really a (n)\_\_\_\_\_\_which is suitable for my daughter.

A. undergraduate interesting economics course

B. economics course interesting undergraduate

C. interesting economics undergraduate course

D. interesting undergraduate economics course

1. I’d give anything to have a look at the\_\_\_\_\_\_world.

A. modem British wizard intriguing B. wizard British wizard intriguing

C. wizard intriguing wizard British D. intriguing modem British wizard

1. When my parents traveled to Singapore, they bought me a\_\_\_\_\_\_piano on my birthday.

A. precious grand ancient wooden B. wooden grand ancient precious

C. precious grand wooden ancient D. ancient grand precious wooden

1. Our house is located near a(n)\_\_\_\_\_\_school. I usually go on foot to school.

A. large prestigious international Catholic B. prestigious large international Catholic

C. Catholic prestigious large international D. prestigious catholic international large

1. My daughter likes playing with a(n)\_\_\_\_\_\_rope to get lean in the early morning.

A. old black leather skipping B. Leather black old skipping

C. Skipping black old leather D. Leather old black skipping

1. Peter’s wife gave him a(n)\_\_\_\_\_\_bike as a birthday present last week.

A. blue Japanese cheap B. cheap Japanese blue

C. Japanese cheap blue D. cheap blue Japanese

1. I remember she wore a\_\_\_\_\_\_dress to go out with her boyfriend last week.

A. cotton white Vietnamese B. Vietnamese white cotton

C. white Vietnamese cotton D. white cotton Vietnamese

1. “What is the groom wearing?” “He dresses in a\_\_\_\_\_\_.”

A. light suit summer B. light summer suit C. suit summer light D. summer suit light

1. “When are you going to get rid of those\_\_\_\_\_\_trousers?”- “Hmmm I don’t know but I like them a lot.”

A. short nylon dreadful French B. short dreadful French nylon

C. dreadful French nylon short D. dreadful short French nylon

1. There is a\_\_\_\_\_\_table which was given to me by my best friends on my house warming.

A. large beautiful round wooden B. beautiful large round wooden

C. beautiful round large wooden D. wooden large round beautiful

1. Andrew has a\_\_\_\_\_\_- rug on the floor in her bedroom.

A. sheepskin lovely long white B. long lovely white sheepskin

C. lovely long sheepskin white D. lovely long white sheepskin

1. They bought me a\_\_\_\_\_\_toy to congratulate me on achieving high scores in the last exam.

A. strange round orange plastic B. plastic orange round strange

C. strange plastic orange round D. strange round plastic orange

1. Charles was wearing a\_\_\_\_\_\_at the Peter’s party.

A. funny wide red silk tie B. red silk funny tie

C. tie red silk funny D. red funny tie silk

1. Jane lost the\_\_\_\_\_\_bicycle he bought last month and his parents were very angry with him because of his carelessness.

A. Japanese beautiful new blue B. blue Japanese beautiful new

C. beautiful new blue Japanese D. beautiful Japanese blue new

1. “Can I help you, sir?” - “I’m looking for a\_\_\_\_\_\_desk for my son.”

A. wooden round fashionable B. round fashionable wooden

C. wooden fashionable round D. fashionable round wooden

1. These\_\_\_\_\_\_boots belong to Nick who is a famous fashion designer in China.

A. riding leather red Spanish B. red Spanish rising leather

C. leather Spanish riding red D. red Spanish leather riding

1. There is a (n)\_\_\_\_\_\_basin.

A. sugar antique silver B. antique silver sugar

C. sugar silver antique D. antique sugar silver

1. He gave me a \_\_\_\_\_\_box to say sorry to me for what he had done.

A. small square jewelry metal B. small metal square jewelry

C. small square metal jewelry D. small jewelry square metal

1. She is going to marry a\_\_\_\_\_\_man next year and they’ll give birth to two children after getting married.

A. tall pretty English B. English tall pretty C. tall English pretty D. pretty tall English

1. In the live show, Son Tung gave me some\_\_\_\_\_\_cards, which made me so happy.

A. nice blue round B. round blue nice C. nice round blue D. blue nice round

1. His sister is not only a (n)\_\_\_\_\_\_singer but also a distinguished painter.

A. famous opera Italian B. opera famous Italian

C. famous Italian opera D. Italian famous opera

1. They collected a lot of\_\_\_\_\_\_stamps to exhibit at Tuan Chau festival.

A. postage Australia valuable B. valuable Australia postage

C. Australia valuable postage D. valuable postage Australia

1. Although he is a\_\_\_\_\_\_man, he is an expert at taking care of wild animals.

A. young Japanese silly B. silly young Japanese

C. young silly Japanese D. Japanese silly young

1. My husband extremely likes a\_\_\_\_\_\_boat and has a passion for owing one.

A. splendid old model B. model old splendid

C. splendid model old D. old model splendid

1. My mother puts a(n)\_\_\_\_\_\_seat in my house to relax at the weekend.

A. expensive wooden garden B. wooden expensive garden

C. garden wooden expensive D. wooden garden expensive

1. There are\_\_\_\_\_\_chairs in the class for students to sit on.

A. blue metal five B. five blue metal C. metal blue five D. five metal blue

1. It was a\_\_\_\_\_\_journey with my boyfriend before we get married.

A. boring long train B. long boring train C. boring train long D. long train boring

1. Please give me that\_\_\_\_\_\_bucket to take out the trash.

A. green new plastic B. plastic green new C. new green plastic D. green plastic new

1. That poor man used to live in a\_\_\_\_\_\_house with two dogs and a cat.

A. big brick old B. big old brick C. brick old big D. brick big old

1. She was wearing a\_\_\_\_\_\_dress to dine out with her family.

A. dirty old flannel B. old dirty flannel C. old flannel dirty D. dirty flannel old

1. Bring me the\_\_\_\_\_\_bowl on that table to mix with pork.

A. round salt black B. black round salt C. round black salt D. salt black round

1. Look at that\_\_\_\_\_\_ship! It is one of the biggest ships in the world.

A. huge wooden sailing B. wooden sailing huge

C. sailing huge wooden D. huge sailing wooden

1. Pass me the\_\_\_\_\_\_cups to have my sister clean them.

A. red big plastic B. big red plastic C. red plastic big D. plastic big blue

1. There’s a\_\_\_\_\_\_lamp in his room for him to read books every single day.

A. round small reading B. small reading round

C. reading round small D. small round reading

1. When she came home, she gave me a\_\_\_\_\_\_to apologize to me for going home late at night.

A. delicious small cupcake B. small delicious cupcake

C. cupcake delicious lovely D. delicious cupcake small

1. It is a(n)\_\_\_\_\_\_woman. I’m too lucky to work with her at the office.

A. English young intelligent B. young intelligent English

C. intelligent young English D. intelligent English young

1. He bought a\_\_\_\_\_\_house as a gift for his new wife.

A. big pink beautiful B. beautiful pink big C. big beautiful pink D. beautiful big pink

1. Yesterday, my husband gave me a(n)\_\_\_\_\_\_painting he bought when he went on a business trip.

A. French old interesting B. interesting old French

C. old interesting French D. French interesting old

1. We bought some\_\_\_\_\_\_glasses for our children who like collecting glasses.

A. German lovely old\_\_\_\_\_\_ B. old lovely German

C. German old lovely\_\_\_\_\_\_ D. lovely old German

1. Peter is the\_\_\_\_\_\_runner-up although he is not good at running.

A. oldest American idol B. American idol oldest

C. oldest idol American D. American oldest idol

1. She has her\_\_\_\_\_\_hair cut by her mother, who is very meticulous.

A. short black beautiful B. black long beautiful

C. beautiful short black D. short beautiful black

1. Visitors to the local museum are mostly attracted by\_\_\_\_\_\_rocking chair.

A. an old wooden European beautiful B. a beautiful old European wooden

C. an old beautiful wooden European D. a wooden old beautiful European

1. In the kitchen there is a\_\_\_\_\_\_table.

A. round large wooden beautiful B. large beautiful wooden round

C. wooden round large beautiful D. beautiful large round wooden

1. My friend bought\_\_\_\_\_\_from a shop on Tran Phu street.

A. a nice brown leather belt B. a brown nice leather belt

C. a leather brown nice belt D. a nice leather brown belt

1. She has just bought\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. a French old interesting painting B. an interesting old French painting

C. a French interesting old painting D. an old interesting painting French

1. I have a\_\_\_\_\_\_bag.

A. red Dior nice new leather big B. nice big new red Dior leather

C. big new red leather nice Dior D. nice new big red Dior leather

1. There is\_\_\_\_\_\_in my bed room.

A. an old square wooden table B. a square wooden old table

C. a square old wooden table D. an old wooden square table

1. Yesterday my mother bought\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. beautiful Italian some cotton hats B. Italian some beautiful cotton hats

C. some beautiful Italian cotton hats D. some hats beautiful Italian cotton

1. This is a picture of a\_\_\_\_\_\_bus.

A. red bright London B. bright red London

C. London bright red D. London red bright

1. Jane bought me\_\_\_\_\_\_handbag.

A. an ugly small old black plastic B. an ugly old small plastic

C. a small ugly black old plastic D. a black ugly plastic

1. Jane really loves the\_\_\_\_\_\_jewelry box that her parents gave her as a birthday present.

A. wooden brown nice B. nice wooden brown

C. brown wooden nice D. nice brown wooden

1. Paul has just sold his\_\_\_\_\_\_car and intends to buy a new one.

A. black old Japanese B. Japanese old black

C. old black Japanese D. old Japanese black

1. The only thing he bought on his trip to Italy was a\_\_\_\_\_\_watch.

A. nice Italian new B. nice new Italian C. new Italian nice D. new nice Italian

1. I met a\_\_\_\_\_\_girl at my friend's birthday party last Sunday.

A. pretty American tall B. tall pretty American

C. tall American pretty D. pretty tall American

1. The man driving a (n)\_\_\_\_\_\_is my father’s boss.

A. blue Japanese expensive B. expensive Japanese blue

C. Japanese expensive blue D. expensive blue Japanese

1. Lara goes to a (n)\_\_\_\_\_\_temple every week.

A. great big ancient Buddhist B. Buddhist great big ancient

C. ancient great big Buddhist D. big great ancient Buddhist

1. They take their ………………………..children to the park every day.

A. lovely African small young B. African small young lovely

C. small young lovely African D. young lovely African small

1. At first sight I met her. I was impressed with her……………………………….

A. big beautiful round black eyes B. beautiful black big round eyes

C. beautiful big round black eyes D. beautiful round big black eyes

1. This is a picture of a ……………………….bus.

A. red bright London B. bright red London

C. London bright red D. London red bright

1. Lara goes to a ………………………temple every week.

A. great big ancient Buddhist B. Buddhist great big ancient

C. ancient great big Buddhist D. big great ancient Buddhist

1. There are some ……………………..pictures in this newspaper.

A.white interesting computer-generated new

B.computer-generated white interesting new

C.interesting new white computer-generated

D.new interesting computer-generated white

1. She is doing extremely well in her …………………..graduate course.

A.intensive one -year English B. one -year English intensive

C. intensive English one-year D.English intensive one-year

1. During the winter I like having a ……………………….house.

A. pretty small red wooden B. wooden pretty small red

C. small pretty red wooden D. red wooden pretty small

1. I would like to have …………………….sports shoes to run in the park.

A. grey medium leather comfortable B. comfortable medium grey leather

C. comfortable leather grey medium D. medium leather comfortable grey

1. They say he's a ………………….student for his age.

A. tall mature brilliant B. mature brilliant tall

C. brilliant tall mature D. tall brilliant mature

1. The speaker is a……………………..professor.

A. old short Spanish kind B. kind short old Spanish

C. Spanish kind old short D. kind Spanish short old

1. My sister lives in a ……………….apartment.

A. nice wooden new B. new nice wooden

C. nice new wooden D. wooden nice new

1. My cousin bought a ………………….bowl.

A. blue ancient lovely small B. lovely blue small ancient

C. small blue ancient lovely D. lovely small ancient blue

1. They cook a …………………meal for their children.

A. delicious big traditional Vietnamese B. Vietnamese delicious big traditional

C. traditional delicious big Vietnamese D. big delicious traditional Vietnamese

1. They are trying to build a house.

A.four-bedroom elegant modern Italian B.modern elegant four-bedroom Italian

C.Italian elegant four-bedroom modern D.elegant four-bedroom modern Italian

1. His brother presented her a ………………………….clock.

A. oval nice Japanese digital B. nice oval digital Japanese

C. digital oval Japanese nice D. digital Japanese oval nice

1. The old man owns a ………………………..coffee table.

A. French beautiful round old B. beautiful French old round

C. old round beautiful French D. beautiful old round French

1. My father has a ……………………………box.

A. old small black Turkish B. small old Turkish black

C. small old black Turkish D. small Turkish old black

1. Jack’s father bought him a(n) ………………. bike as a birthday gift.

A. blue Japanese expensive B. expensive Japanese blue

C. Japanese expensive blue D. expensive blue Japanese

1. She is good at creating ……………………….paintings.

A. interesting Vietnamese new square B. square Vietnamese new interesting

C. Vietnamese interesting square new D. interesting square new Vietnamese

1. My mother would like to buy a ………………………….bag.

A. big plastic blue Russian B. big Russian blue plastic

C. big blue Russian plastic D. Russian plastic big blue

1. It is really an \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425)

A. undergraduate interesting economics course B. economics course interesting undergraduate

C. interesting economics undergraduate course D. interesting undergraduate economics course

**MODULE 8 : TENSES(ADVERBIAL OF TIME)**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**I . TÓM TẮT CÁCH DÙNG CÁC THÌ TRONG TIẾNG ANH.**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **Thành lập câu khẳng định.**   * **Động từ TO BE.**   (+): S + am/is/are……   * **Động từ thường.**   (+): S + Vs/es/V(nguyên mẫu)  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn.**   * **V(do/does)**   **(-):** S + do/does + not + V(bare)  **(?):** Do/does + S + V (bare)?   * **Be (am/ is/ are)**   **(-):** S + am/is/ are + not +…………  **(?):** Am/is/are + S +……………..….? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả hành động thường xuyên xảy ra.  - diễn tả thói quen.  - diễn tả thời gian biểu, lịch trình, thông báo.  - diễn tả sự thật, chân lí.  - diễn tả nghề nghiệp, sở thích, nguồn gốc, bình phẩm.  **Từ nhận biết**  - seldom/ rarely/ hardly  - sometimes/ occasionally  - often/ usually/ frequently  - always/ constantly  - ever  - never  - every |
| **THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **Thành lập câu khẳng định.**   * **Động từ TO BE.**   (+): S + was/were   * **Động từ thường.**   (+): S + V3/ed  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**   * **V(did)**   **(-):** S + did+ not+ V(bare)  **(?):** Did + S+V (bare) +?   * **Be (was/were)**   **(-):** S+ was/were + not +……  **(?):** Was/were + S+ ………….? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra và đã chấm dứt trong quá khứ, không còn liên quan tới hiện tại.  - diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.  - diễn tả hồi ức, kỉ niệm.  **Từ nhận biết**  - ago  - last  - yesterday  - in + một mốc thời gian trong quá khứ (in 2000...) |
| **THÌ TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + will + V(bare)**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S + will + not + V(bare)  **(?):** Will + S + V (bare)? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả những hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.  - diễn tả những dự đoán.  - diễn tả lời hứa.  **Từ nhận biết**  - tomorrow  - next  - soon  - in + một khoảng thời gian (in an hour...) |
| **THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S+ am/is/are + V-ing**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S + am/is/are + not + V-ing  **(?):** Am/ is/ are+ S + V-ing? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói.  - diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai (có kế hoạch từ trước).  - diễn tả sự thay đổi của thói quen.  - diễn ta sự ca thán, phàn nàn.  **Từ nhận biết**  - now  - at the moment  - at present  - right now  - look /hear (!) |
| **THÌ QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + was/were + Ving**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S+ was/ were + not + V-ing  **(?):** Was/ were + S+ V-ing? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.  - diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra thì có hành động khác xen vào, hành động nào xảy ra trước chia thì quá khử tiếp diễn, hành động nào xảy ra sau chia thì quá khứ đơn.  **Từ nhận biết**  - giờ + trạng từ quá khứ (at 3 pm yesterday...)  - at this/that time + trạng từ quá khứ ( at this time last week....) |
| **THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + will + be + Ving**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vẩn**  **(-):** S + will + not + be + Ving  **(?):** Will + S + be + Ving? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra vào một thời điểm cụ thể trong tương lai.  - diễn tả hành động sẽ đang xảy ra trong tương lai thì có hành động khác xen vào, hành động nào xảy ra trước chia thì tương lai tiếp diễn, hành động nào xảy ra sau chia thì hiện tại đơn.  **Từ nhận biết**  - giờ + trạng từ tương lai (at 3 pm tomorrow...)  - at this/that time + trạng từ tương lai  (at this time next week....) |
| **THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + have/ has + V(pp)**  **(Have: I/ số nhiều - Has: số ít)**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S+ have/ has + not + V(pp)  **(?):** Have/ Has + S + V(pp)? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng không rõ thời gian.  - diễn tả hành động lặp đi lặp lại nhiều lần trong quá khứ.  - diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng để lại dấu hiệu hoặc hậu quả ở hiện tại.  - diễn tả những trải nghiệm.  - diễn tả những hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng kéo dài tới hiện tại và vẫn còn có khả năng sẽ tiếp diễn trong tương lai.  **Từ nhận biết**  - for - since - ever  - never - so far - recently  - lately - before (đứng cuối câu)  - up to now/ up to present/ until now  - yet - just - already |
| **THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + had + V(pp)**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S + had + not + V(pp)  **(?):** Had + s + V(pp)? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả những hành động xảy ra và hoàn thành trước hành động khác trong quá khứ.  **Từ nhận biết**  - before/by the time (trước chia quá khứ hoàn thành, sau chia quá khứ đơn).  - after (trước chia quá khứ đơn, sau chia quá khứ hoàn thành).Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425) |
| **THÌ TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + will + have + V(pp)**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S + will + not + have + V(pp)  **(?):** Will + s + have + V (pp)? | **Cách dùng**  - diễn tả hành động sẽ được hoàn thành trước khi một hành động khác xảy đến. |
| **THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + have/has + been + Ving**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S + have/has + not + been + V-ing  **(?):** Have/has + s+ been + V-ing? | **Cách dùng**  - nhấn mạnh khoảng thời gian của một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ và tiếp tục tới hiện tại (có thể tiếp diễn trong tương lai).  **Từ nhận biết**  - all day/week....  - almost every day this week...  - in the past year... |
| **THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + had + been + Ving**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn**  **(-):** S + had + not + been + Ving  **(?):** Had + s+ been + Ving? | **Cách dùng**  - Nhấn mạnh khoảng thời gian của một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khử và kết thúc trước một hành động quá khứ khác.  **Từ nhận biết**  - until then  - prior to that time |
| **THÌ TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN** | |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng/Từ nhận biết** |
| **S + will + have + been + Ving**  **Thành lập phủ định và nghi vấn.**  **(-):** S + will + not + have + been + Ving  **(?):** Will + s+ have+ been + Ving? | **Cách dùng**  Nhấn mạnh khoảng thời gian của một hành động sẽ đang xảy ra trong tương lai và kết thúc trước một hành động tương lai khác. |

**II . SỰ PHỐI HỢP THÌ**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **WHEN** | diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **WHEN + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ đơn)**  Eg: When he saw me, he smiled, at me. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **WHEN + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai đơn)**  Eg: When I see him, I will remind him to call you. |
| diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra thì có hành động khác xen vào | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **WHEN + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ tiếp diễn)**  Eg: When I came to see her, she was cooking dinner. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **WHEN + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai tiếp diễn)** |
| Eg: When you come in, your boss will be waiting for you there. |
| diễn tả một hành động xảy ra xong trước một hành động khác | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **WHEN + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**  Eg: When I arrived at the airport, the plane had taken off |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **WHEN + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V(tương lai hoàn thành)**  Eg: When you return to the town, they will have finished building a new bridge. |
| **AS SOON AS** | diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **AS SOON AS + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ đơn)**  Eg: As soon as she saw a mouse, she shouted and ran away. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **AS SOON AS + S + V (hiện tại đơn/hiện tại hoàn thành), S + V (tương lai đơn)**  Eg: I will call you as soon as I have finished / finish the work. |
| **SINCE** | diễn tả nghĩa “từ khi’’ | **S + V (hiện tại hoàn thành) + SINCE + V (quá khứ đơn)**  Eg: We have known each other since we were at high school. |
| **BY + TIME** | diễn tả hành động kết thúc tính đến một điểm nào đó trong quá khứ/tương lai | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **BY + trạng từ của quá khứ + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**  Eg: By last month, we had worked for the company for 9 years. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **BY + trạng từ của tương lai + S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)**  Eg: By next month, we will have worked for the company for 9 years. |
| **AT THIS/ THAT TIME** | diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ/tương lai | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **AT THIS/THAT TIME + trạng từ của quá khứ + S + V (quá khứ tiếp diễn)**  Eg: At this time last week, we were preparing for Tet. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **AT THIS/THAT TIME + trạng từ của tương lai + S + V (tương lai tiếp diễn)**  Eg: At this time next week, we will be having a big party in the garden. |
| **BY THE TIME** | diễn tả nghĩa “vào lúc” | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **BY THE TIME + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**  Eg: By the time she got home, everyone had gone to bed. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **BY THE TIME + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)**  Eg: By the time she gets home, everyone will have gone to bed. |
| **AFTER** | diễn tả hành động xảy ra xong rồi mới tới hành động khác | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **AFTER + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành), S + V (quá khứ đơn)**  Eg: After she had done her homework, she went out for a walk. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **AFTER + S + V (hiện tại hoàn thành), S + V (hiện tại đơn)**  Eg: After she has done her homework, she goes out for a walk. |
| **BEFORE** | diễn tả hành động xảy ra xong trước khi có hành động khác tới | Trong QUÁ KHỨ:  **BEFORE + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)**  Eg: Before she went to bed, she had locked all the doors. |
| Trong TƯƠNG LAI:  **BEFORE + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)**  Eg: Hurry up or the film will have ended before we go to the movie. |
| **UNTIL/ TILL** | diễn tả nghĩa “cho tới khi” | **S + V (tương lai đơn)/ V(bare)/DON’T + V(bare) + UNTIL/TILL + S + V (hiện tại đơn/hiện tại hoàn thành)**  Eg: I will wait for you until it is possible.  Wait here until I come back. |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **TLĐ + until / when / as soon as + HTĐ** | *I will wait here until she comes back.* |
| **TLĐ + after + HTHT** | *He will go home after he has finished his work.* |
| **While / when / as + QKTD, QKĐ**  **QKĐ + while / when / as + QKTD** | *While I was going to school, I met my friend.*  *It started to rain while the boys were playing football.* |
| **QKTD + while + QKTD** | *Last night, I was doing my homework while my sister was playing games.* |
| **HTHT + since + QKĐ** | *I have worked here since I graduated.* |
| **TLHT + by / by the time + HTĐ** | *He will have left by the time you arrive.* |
| **QKHT + by the time / before + QKĐ** | *He had left by the time I came.* |
| **After + QKHT, QKĐ** | *After I had finished my homework, I went to bed.* |

1. Jane\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_law at Harvard for four years now.

A. is studying B. has been studying C. studies D. studied

1. This time tomorrow\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on the beach sunbathing and drinking freshly squeezed fruit juice!

A. I’ll have been lying B. I will lie

C. I will be lying D. I will have lain

1. We\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for three hours and we are very tired.

A. waited B. have been waiting C. wait D. had waited

1. She\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for hours. That’s why her eyes are red now.

A. cried B. has been crying C. was crying D. has cried

1. The host will read the questions \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. until the participants will be fully prepared B. after the participants had been fully prepared

C. after the participants are fully prepared D. before the participants was fully prepared

1. He will take the dog out for a walk \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. as soon as he finishes B. when I was finishing dinner

C. until I finished dinner D. shall have finished

1. By the year 2021, 6% of all US jobs by robots, report says.

A. will eliminate B. will have been eliminated

C. will be eliminating D. will have eliminated

1. She will take management training course \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. right after the epidemic has been controlled

B. as soon as the epidemic was controlled

C. when the epidemic had been controlled

D. until the epidemic will be controlled

1. He will take the dog out for a walk \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. as soon as he finishes B. when I was finishing dinner

C. until I finished dinner D. shall have finished

1. When I last saw him, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in London.

A. is living B. has been living C. was living D. lived

1. By the time he arrives here tomorrow, they\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for London.

A. would have left B. will have left C. will left D. are leaving

1. Mr. Pike\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_English at our school for 20 years before he retired last year.

A. had been teaching B. has been teaching

C. was teaching D. is teaching

1. They\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for Japan at 10.30 tomorrow.

A. will be leaving B. have left C. will have left D. will leave

1. When I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to the airport, I realized that I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_my passport at home.

A. got/had left B. got/left C. had got/had left D. got/was left

1. I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_was angry when you saw me because I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_with my sister.

A. have been arguing B. had been arguing C. argued D. would argue

1. Call me as soon as you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_your test results.

A. get B. will get C. will have got D. got

1. I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to Greece until Sally and I went there last summer.

A. have never been B. had never been C. was never being D. were never

1. I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ along the street when I suddenly heard footsteps behind me.

A. was walking B. am walking C. walk D. walked

1. He occasionally\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a headache in the morning.

A. has had B. has C. have D. is having

1. The boy fell while he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_down the stairs.

A. run B. running C. was running D.runs

1. I will come and see you before I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for America.

A. leave B. will leave C. have left D. left

1. When the first child was born, they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for three years.

A. have been married B. had been married

C. will be married D. will have been married

1. It\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a long time since we were apart. I did not recognize her.

A. is B. has been C. was D. had been

1. Many of the people who attended Mr. David’s funeral\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him for many years.

A. didn’t see B. wouldn’t see C. haven’t seen D. hadn’t seen

1. We were both very excited about the visit, as we\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_each other for\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ages.

A. never saw B. didn’t see C. hadn’t seen D. haven’t seen

1. In one year’s time, she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for this company for 15 years.

A. will be working B. will have been working

C. will work D. has worked

1. His health has improved a lot since he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_doing exercises regularly.

A. starts B. started C. has started D. had started

1. She hurt herself while she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_hide-and-seek with her friends.

A. is playing B. had played C. played D. was playing

1. What\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_at 9 o’clock last night? I phoned you but couldn’t get through to you.

A. did you do B. were you doing C. would you do D. had you done

1. It is raining heavily with rolls of thunder. We\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_such a terrible thunderstorm.

A. would never see B. had never seen C. have never seen D. never see

1. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ my old teacher last week.

A. visited B. visit C. am visiting D. have visited

1. My brother usually \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me for help when he has any difficulties with his homework.

A. ask B. asks C. asked D. has asked

1. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ all of my homework last night.

A. finish B. will finish C. have finished D. finished

1. Lan\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ learning English a few years ago.

A. starts B. will start C. started D. is starting

1. Only after she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_from a severe illness did she realize the importance of good health.

A. would recover B. has recovered

C. had recovered D. was recovering

1. Only after the bus\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for a few miles did Jane realize she was on the wrong route.

A. was running B. had run C. has run D. runs

1. The children\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to bed before their parents came home from work.

A. were all going B. had all gone C. had all been going D. have all gone

1. Paul noticed a job advertisement while he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_along the street.

A. was walking B. would walk C. walked D. had walked

1. I haven’t met him again since we\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_school ten years ago.

A. have left B. leave C. left D. had left

1. For the last 20 years, we\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_significant changes in the world of science and technology.

A. witness B. have witnessed C. witnessed D. are witnessing

1. My best friend Lan\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to England 10 years ago.

A. was moving B. moves C. moved D. has moved

1. Mr.Pike\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for this company for more than thirty years, and he intends to stay here until he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. worked/retires B. works/is retiring

C. has been working/retires D. is working/will retire

1. While I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_at the bus stop, three buses went by in the opposite direction.

A. was waiting B. waited C. had waited D. were waiting

1. By the end of last March, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_English for five years.

A. had been studied B. had been studying

C. will have been studying D. will have studied

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Alan for hours but he hasn’t answered his mobile. I hope nothing’s wrong.

A. I call B. I’ve been calling C. I’m calling D. called

1. We\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in silence when he suddenly\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me to help him.

A. walked - was asking B. were walking - asked

C. were walking - was asking D. walked - asked

1. By the time the software\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on sale next month, the company\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_$2 million on developing it.

A. went - had spent B. will go - has spent

C. has gone - will spend D. goes - will have spent

1. When Carol\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_last night, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_my favorite show on television.

A. called /was watching B. had called /watched

C. called /have watched D. was calling /watched

1. Linda took great photos of butterflies while she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in the forest.

A. was hiking B. is hiking C. hiked D. had hiked

1. When I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for my sister in front of the supermarket, a strange man came to talk with me.

A. was waiting B. waited C. had waited D. were waiting

1. Over the past 30 years, the average robot price\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by half in real terms, and even further relative to labor costs.

A. is fallen B. has fallen C. were fallen D. have fallen

1. When I came to visit her last night, she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a bath.

A. is having B. was having C. has had D. had had

1. John\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in the same house since he left school.

A. lived B. had lived C. was living D. has lived

1. Since Tom\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I have heard nothing from him.

A. had left B. left C. has left D. was left

1. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ dinner.

A. finish B. has finished C. will finish D. finished

1. John……………………..tennis once or twice a week.

A. is playing usually B. is usually playing C. usually plays D. plays usually

1. Tom……………………….his hand when he was cooking dinner.

A. burnt B. was burning C. has burnt D. had burnt

1. Everything is going well. We…………………………any problems so far.

A. didn't have B. don't have C. haven't had D. hadn't had

1. Jane………………………….just a few minutes ago.

A. left B. has left C. leaves D. had left

1. When I was a child, I used to……………………the violin.

A. was playing B. am playing C. played D. play

1. I'm busy at the moment. I…………………..on the computer.

A. work B. worked C. am working D. working

1. When I looked round the door, the baby………………….....quietly.

A. is sleeping B. slept C. was sleeping D. were sleeping

1. Robert……………………ill for three weeks. He is still in hospital.

A. had been B. has been C. is D. was

1. I'm very tired. I………………....over four hundred miles today.

A. drive B. am driving C. have been driving D. have driven

1. This isn't my first time to visit London…………………………... here before

A. I'm B. I'd been C. I was D. I've been

1. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she………………..the fire department.

A. was telephoning B. telephoned C. had telephoned D. has telephoned

1. Every time Parkas sees a movie made in India, he…………..... homesick.

A. will have left B. felt C. feels D. is feeling

1. Since I left Venezuela six years ago, I………………….... to visit friends and family several times.

A. return B. will have returned C. am returning D. have returned

1. After the race…………………., the celebration began.

A. had been won B. is won C. will be won D. has been won

1. While he was washing his car, Mr. Brown……………….a small dent in the rear fender.

A. has discovered B. was discovering C. is discovering D. discovered

1. The Earth………………..on the Sun for its heat and light.

A. is depended B. depends C. is depending D. has depended

1. At this time tomorrow………………………….over the Atlantic.

A. we're flying B. we'll be flying C. we'll fly D. we're to fly

1. When I entered the room, everyone…………………………. .

A. has been dancing B. was dancing! C. had danced D. danced

1. I was very tired because I…………………………all the day

A. have worked B. have been working

C. had worked D. had been working

1. How long……………………able to drive? - Since 1990.

A. could you B. have you been C. were you D. are you

1. She won't get married until she………………….25 years old

A. is B. will be C. had been D. was

1. At this time yesterday, we………………………a small party in the garden.

A. were having B. am having C. will be having D. had

1. When she ……………… the noise,she…………. down to the kitchen and……………. on the lights.

A. hears - goes – turns B. heard - went - turned

C. heard - was going - turned D. had heard - went - had turned

1. John and Ann.………………….. married last Saturday.‘B. heard - went - turned

A. get B. got C. is getting D. have got

1. Your English………………….wonderfully since last month.

A. improved B. was improved C. has improved D. has been improved

1. Please don't make so much noise. I ………………………… .

A. studying B. study C. am studying D. studied

1. It is raining now. It began raining two hours ago, so it………………….....for two hours

A. rains B. is raining C. has rained D. rained

1. After they their breakfast, they……………….... shopping yesterday.

A. have – go B. had had -go C. had - had gone D. had had - went

1. He to HCMC last year and I…………………….... him since then.

A. moved - didn't see B. moved - haven't seen

C. moves - haven't seen D. moved - hadn't seen

1. We……………….........what to do with the money yet.

A. not decide B. haven't decided C. didn't decide D. hadn't decided

1. John \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ tennis once or twice a week.

A. is playing usually B. is usually playing

C. usually plays D. plays usually

1. Tom \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his hand when he was cooking dinner.

A. burnt B. was burning C. has burnt D. had burnt

1. Jim is away on holiday. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to Spain.

A. is gone B. have been C. has been D. was

1. I'm busy at the moment. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on the computer.

A. work B. worked C. am working D. working

1. When I looked round the door, the baby \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ quietly.

A. is sleeping B. slept C. was sleeping D. were sleeping

1. Robert \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ill for three weeks. He is still in hospital.

A. had been B. has been C. is D. was

1. I'm very tired. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ over four hundred miles today.

A. drive B. am driving C. have drived D. have driven

1. What time \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to work this morning?

A. did you get B. are you getting C. have you got D. do you get

1. When I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this man, he was running away

A. see B. was seeing C. saw D. had seen

1. As soon as Martina saw the fire, she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the fire department.

A. was telephoning B. telephoned

C. had telephoned D. has telephoned

1. Every time Parkas sees a movie made in India, he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ homesick.

A. will have left B. felt C. feels D. is feeling

1. She will call you to confirm \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. until she received the parcel B. when she was receiving the parcel

C. the moment she receives the parcel D. after she had received the parcel

1. He will go out with his friends \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. as soon as he has completed his homework B. when he was completing his homework

C. until he complted his homework D. He shall have completed

1. I will give you the book about artificial intelligence \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. after I have finished it B. when I was finishing it

C. as soon as I had finished it D. until I finished it

1. He'll give you a call \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. after he will arrive B. as soon as he arrives

C. when is arriving D. as he is going to arrive

**MODULE 9**

**SỰ HOÀ HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ (SUBJECT-VERB AGREEMENT)**

**\* PHẦN I: Lí THUYẾT**

**Trong Tiếng Anh động từ phải phù hợp với chủ ngữ của nó. Cụ thể:**

• Chủ ngữ số ít (He, She, It,The boy, The camel,…) động từ chia số ít.

Ex: The car ***was*** new.

• Chủ ngữ số nhiều chia động từ số nhiều

Ex: The books ***were*** on the top shelf.

Ex: These women **wash** their clothes everyday.

**Nhưng chủ ngữ trong Tiếng Anh không phải lúc nào cũng dễ xác định theo số ít hoặc số nhiều vì vậy khi xác định chủ ngữ ta cần *Lưu ý các trường hợp sau:***

**1. Chủ ngữ là một danh động từ, động từ nguyên thể hay một mệnh đề: động từ chia theo ngôi thứ 3 số ít.**

Ex: Walking in the rain ***is*** not a good idea.

Ex: To learn a foreign language ***is*** necessary.

Ex: That you get high grades in the school ***is*** very important.

**2. Chủ ngữ là một nhóm từ thì phải tìm từ chính và chia động từ phù hợp với từ đó**

Ex: A **list** of new books ***has*** been posted in the library.

Ex: The **shops** along the mall ***are*** rather small.

**3. S1 + of/ as well as/ with/ together with/ in addition to/ along with/ accompanied by/ no less than +S2 => Động từ hòa hợp với S1.**

Ex: **The professor** *together with* his three students ***has been*** called to court.

Ex: **The mayor** *as well as his* councilmen ***refuses*** to endorse the bill.

Ex: **The students** *along with* their form teacher ***were*** at the beach yesterday.

**4. Chủ ngữ là đại từ bất định: one, everyone, no one, nobody, anyone, anybody, someone, somebody, everybody, anything, something, nothing, everything => Động từ chia số ít**

Ex: Nobody ***is*** at home now.

Ex: ***Is*** there anybody here?

Ex: Everything ***has been*** all right so far.

**5. Chủ ngữ kép:**

**a**• **S1+AND +S2 +…=> Động từ chia theo chủ ngữ ở số nhiều**.

Ex: England, Scotland and Wales ***form***  Great Britain.

Ex: EJohn and I ***are*** cousins.

Ex: The headmaster and the teacher ***are*** talking.

**\*But:** The secretary and accountant ***hasn't come*** yet. (Một người làm hai nhiệm vụ)

The great doctor and 'discoverer ***is*** no more.

Whisky and soda ***has always been*** his favourite drink.

(trong trường hợp 2 danh từ nối với nhau bằng AND nhưng chúng cùng chỉ 1 người, 1 bộ hoặc 1 món ăn. Đối với trường hợp cùng chỉ 1 người thì dấu hiệu nhận biết là danh từ thứ 2 không có THE, còn với bộ hoặc món ăn thì tùy vào ý của người nói).

Ex: - Fish and chips ***is*** a popular meal in Britain.

Ex - Fish and chips ***make*** a good meal (If we think of the items as "separate", we use plural verb)

**NOTE:** "Each" or "every" preceding singular subjects joined by "and" takes a singular verb,

Ex: Each boy and each girl ***is***to work independently.

**b**• **S1+ OR +S2 =>Động từ hòa hợp với S2:**

Ex: ***Has*** your mother or father ***given*** you permission to use the car?

**c** •**Either**+S1+ **or** + S2 🡪 V hòa hợp với **S2**:

**Neither**+ S1+**Nor** +S2🡪

Ex: Neither the students nor **their** teacher regrets the approach of summer

**•. EACH/EVERY/EITHER/NEITHER** + singular noun + singular verb

of + plural noun / pronoun

•. **ALL / BOTH / FEW /A FEW/ MANY / SEVERAL / SOME** + plural noun 🡪 PLURAL VERB

of + plural noun / pronoun

**•. ALL/ SOME /LITTLE/A LITTLE** +Non count noun 🡪 singular verb

of+ Non count noun

**6. Chủ ngữ là danh từ tập hợp dùng như 1 đơn vị =>V chia theo S số ít** (GROUP / JURY/ ARMY / FAMILY / CLASS /COMMITTEE / TEAM /ENEMY/ COUNCIL...)

Ex: The football team ***practises*** every day.

Ex: The herd of elk ***is*** in the meadow

Ex: The family ***arrives*** together at 8. 00.

**\*Danh từ tập hợp chỉ từng thành viên =>V chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: The football team ***buy*** their own uniforms.

Ex: John has just arrived and now the family ***are*** all here.

**\*Cỏc danh từ như: the police, the military, the people, cattle, poultry, clergy,… => V chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: The ***police are questioning*** him.

**\*\*\*. Danh từ tập hợp được hình thành bởi by "the + adjective" => V chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: The sick ***need*** medical care and tenderness.

Ex: The American people ***don't trust*** the news

**\*\*\*\*. Danh từ tập hợp như FURNITURE / LUGGAGE / INFORMATION / KNOWLEDGE / TRAFFIC / EQUIPMENT / SCENERY / MACHINERY... (không bao giờ có \_S với những danh từ này) => V chia theo S số ít.**

Ex: The furniture ***was*** more expensive than I thought.

Ex: Traffic ***is*** heavy.

Ex: The traffic ***has increased*** rapidly in the downtown areas.

**7. Chủ ngữ là nhóm danh từ chỉ số lượng (khoảng thời gian đo lường, trọng lượng, thể tích, số lượng) =>V chia theo S số ít.**

Ex: Twenty-two inches ***is*** a tiny waist measurement.

Ex: Fifty dollars ***seems*** a reasonable price

**\*Phân số/phần trăm + N (số ít) => V chia theo S số Ít.**  Ex: A quarter of the cake ***is*** gone.

**+ N(số nhiều) => Vchia theo S số nhiều.**  Ex: Half of the tables ***are*** occupied.

**\*The majority of + N (số Ít) => V chia theo S số Ít.**

**+ N (số nhiều) => Vchia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: The majority of the customers ***are*** happy.

**8. Tiêu đề sách báo, tên cơ quan, tổ chức đoàn thể, quốc gia, dù viết ở số nhiều -> động từ chia theo S số ít.**

Ex: Chaucer's Canterbury Tales ***includes*** many humorous characterizations.

Ex: The Malay States ***is*** now part of the Federation of Malaysia.

**9. Các danh từ chỉ bệnh tật, môn học, môn thể thao, tên nước, thủ đô:** news, means, series, billiards, mathematics, species, measles, mumps, rickets, mathematics, economics,, linguistics, physics, phonetics, athletics, politics, statistics, Algiers, Athens, Brussels, Marseilles, Naples, the Philippines, the United Nations, the United States, Wales.........) **=>** **động từ chia theo S số Ít.**

Ex: The morning news ***is*** on at 6 o'clock.

Ex: Measles ***is*** sometimes serious.

**10**. **Những danh từ sau đây luôn đi số nhiều** (glasses, scissors (keo), pants, shorts, jeans, tongs (cai kep), pliers (kim), tweezers (nhip), eye-glasses, ear-rings......) 🡪 **Động từ chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex: My trousers ***are*** torn .

Ex: These scissors ***are*** dull**.**

**But**:- **A pair of glasses** ***costs*** quite a lot these days.

**-** **This pair of scissors** ***is*** sharp.

**11. THE NUMBER OF +N(số nhiều)=> Động từ chia theo số ít.**

Ex:The number of road accidents ***is*** increasing.

**12. A NUMBER OF +N (số nhiều) => Động từ chia theo S số nhiều.**

Ex:A number of spectators ***were*** injured

**13**. No + singular noun + singular verb: Ex: No example ***is*** right in this case.

plural noun + plural verb: Ex: No examples ***are*** right in this case.

**14**. None of the + non-count noun + -singular verb

plural noun + plural verb Ex: - None of the counterfeit money **has** been found**.**

Ex: - None of the students **have** finished the exam yet.

**15**. It + be + noun / pronoun (in the subject form)

**Ex** - It ***is*** they who provide the modem medical aids.

**Ex**- Go and tell them it ***is*** I who did it.

**16**. There + be + noun: (động từ phụ thuộc vào danh từ).

Ex: There ***have not been*** many large-scale epidemics lately.

**\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

**A. Choose the best answers to the following questions.**

1. The Vietnamese people ----------- a heroic people.

A. is **B. are** C. was D. were

2. Miss White------------ her parents is going to pay a visit to the Great Wall.

A. and B both **C. as well as** D. or

3. The Vietnamese ----------hard-working and brave.

A. is **B. are** C. be D. being

4. A good deal of money ------------- spent on the books.

A. have B. has C. have been **D. has been**

5. The manager or his secretary ------------ to give you an interview.

**A. is** B. are C. were D. have

6. Mary is one of the girls who-------------often late for school.

A. is **B. are** C. comes D. get

7. Two hours -------------- not long enough for this rest.

A. have B. has **C. is** D. are

8. Ninety percent of the work -------------- been done.

**A. is** B. are C. has D. have

9. Those who ----------------- to go with me, please raise your hand.

**A. want** B. wants C. wanting D. are wanting

10. Salt and water ------------ to wash the wound

A. is used **B. are used** C. was used D. were used

11. The news ------------- bad last night.

A. were **B. was** C. has D. has been

12. Three-fifths of the police-------------in the school near the town.

A. has trained B. have trained C. has been trained **D. have been trained**

13. ------------ not only you but also he going to Japan?

A. Are **B. Is** C. Were D. Was

14. All the books on the shelf ----------------to me.

**A. belong** B. belongs C. belonging D. is belonging

15. The trousers you bought for me ------------ me.

**A. don’t fit**  B. doesn’t fit C. fits D. fit not

16. Mumps \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ usually caught by children.

A. are B. was **C. is**  D. were

17. The United States \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ between Canada and Mexico.

A. lying **B. lies** C. lain D. lie

18. Physics\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ us understand the natural laws.

**A. helps** B. help C. have helped D. helped

19. The police \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the robber.

A. were arrested B. has arrested **C. have arrested** D. was arresting

20. The cattle \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the field.

A. is grazing B. grazes C. has grazed **D. are grazing**

21. Either you or he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ wrong.

A. are B. were C. have been **D. is**

22. John as well as Mary \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ very kind.

A. were B. are **C. is** D. have been

23. The doctor with the nurses \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ exhausted after the operation.

A. were **B. was** C. have been D. are being

24. Five miles \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ not very far.

**A. is** B. are C. were D. have been

25. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ten years too long?

A. Are B. Is C. Are being D. Were

26. Neither his parents nor his teacher \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ satisfied with his result.

A. are being B. were **C. is** D. are

27. Each boy and each girl \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a book.

A. are having B. have had C. have **D. has**

28. Writing a lot of letters \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her tired.

**A. makes** B. make C. have made D. are making

29. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ everybody ready to start now?

A. Are being B. Is being **C. Is** D. Are

30. None of the butter in the fridge \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ good.

A. is being **B. is** C. have been D. are

31. None of the students \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the test yet.

**A. have finished** B. has finished C. finished D. is finishing

32. A pair of shoes \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ under the bed.

A. have been B. are C. are being **D. is**

33. 200 tons of water \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ last month.

**A. was used** B. had been used C. were used D. is used

34. In the hotel, the bread and butter \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast.

**A. is served** B. are served C. serves D. serve

35. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ were nice to me when I was in England.

A. The Brown’s B. Brown’s **C. The Browns** D. Browns

**B. Identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed in order to make the sentence correct.**

36. Neither his parents nor his teacher **are** satisfied with his result when he was at high school.

37. Daisy was the only one of those girls that **get** the scholarship.

38. Working **provide** people with personal satisfaction as well as money.

39. Either the doctor or the nurses **takes** care of changing the patients’

bandages.

40. Every student who majors in English **are** ready to participate in the

oratorical contest.

41. One **hundreds** eight thousand miles is the speed of light.

42. The guest of honour, along with his wife and children, **were** sitting at the first table when we had a party yesterday.

43. The audience **was** enjoying every minute of the performance.

44. All the books on the top shelf **belongs** to me.

45. Five thousand pounds **were** stolen from the bank.

46. Happiness and success **depends** on yourself.

47. The loss of her husband and two of her sons **were** too much for her.

49. Current research on AIDS, in spite of the best efforts of hundreds of scientists, **leave** serious questions unanswered.

50. Everyone **have** to plan a program that fits into the day’s schedule and that allows for good exercise and appropriate rest.

* **MODULE 10 : CONJUNCTIONS**
* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA**

Liên từ là từ dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ và mệnh đề với nhau.

Có 3 loại liên từ là: liên từ kết hợp, tương liên từ và liên từ phụ thuộc.

**II. LIÊN TỪ KẾT HỢP/ ĐẲNG LẬP**

|  |
| --- |
| **CHỨC NĂNG** |
| **- Liên từ kết hợp đẳng lập:** Là những từ hoặc cụm từ dùng để nối 2 từ, 2 cụm từ hay 2 mệnh đề trong câu hoặc 2 câu với nhau. |
| **ĐẶC ĐIỂM** |
| - Nối các từ hoặc cụm từ/ nhóm từ cùng loại, hoặc những mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau về mặt ngữ pháp (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ .)  **For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so (FANBOYS)**   * She is a good **and** loyal wife. * He is intelligent **but** very lazy. * She says she doesn't love me, **yet** I still love her. * We work hard, **or** we will fail the exam. * The shops were closed, **so** I didn't get any milk. * He will surely succeed, **for** he works hard. * That is not what I meant to say, **nor** should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt. |
| **NOTES**  - Sau **”nor”** bắt buộc là 1 động từ, nên nếu chủ ngữ của 2 mệnh đề khác nhau thì khi ghép lại, phải đưa động từ hoặc mượn trợ động từ đứng trước chủ ngữ của mệnh đề thứ 2.  He isn't rich, **nor do I** imagine that he ever will be. |

**III. LIÊN TỪ TƯƠNG QUAN**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **CHỨC NĂNG** | |
| - Sử dụng theo cặp để liên kết các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng tương đương. | |
| **MỘT SỐ CẶP LIÊN TỪ TƯƠNG QUAN THƯỜNG GẶP** | |
| **Both………....and…….…...**  (vừa ... vừa) | - Khi **“Both...and”** dùng để nối hai chủ ngữ, động từ chia số nhiều  **Both** my father **and** my mother **like** dogs. |
| **Either…..….. or……………**  (hoặc ... hoặc ...)  **Neither…......nor….……....** (không..mà cũng không ..)  **Not only….. but also.......** (không những ..mà còn..) | * **Quy luật chung**   **- Quy luật cân đối :** Về đầu/ mệnh đề đầu **”either, neither, both, not only”** dùng với loại từ nào thì trong vế sau/ mệnh đề sau **“or, nor, and, but also”** cũng phải dùng với loại từ đó.   * He likes eating **both** fish **and** meat. * She **neither** smokes **nor** drinks. * He is **not only** deaf **but also** dumb. * You can speak **either** slowly **or** fast.   **- Quy tắc gần nhất :** Nếu chủ ngữ khác nhau về số (nhiều hay ít) hay về ngôi (person) **thì động từ chia theo chủ ngữ gần nhất.**   * **Not only** he **but also** his friend **likes** fish. * **Either** he **or** his sisters **have** been there. |
| * **Lưu ý :** Not only ...but also = not only ...but...also = not only ... but...as well. * **Not only** children **but also** grown up people love Walt Disney cartoons. * **Not only** children **but** grown up people love Walt Disney cartoons **as well.** | |
| **Whether…...or………….…** | Have you made a decision about **whether** to go to the movies **or not**? |
| **If….…......then** (nếu ... thì) | **If** that is the case, **then** I'm not surprised about what's happening. |
| **Not …………………….... but** | I **don't** want to do anything **but** sleep. |
| **No sooner…... than……...**  **Hardly/ Barely**  **Scarcely……………..when**    (vừa mới....thì đã...) | **S + had + no sooner + VP2 + than + S + Vqk**  **S + had + hardly/ barely/ scarcely + VP2 + when/ before + Vqk**   * I had no sooner arrived home than the phone rang. * I had scarcely arrived home when the phone rang.   - Đảo ngữ với No sooner ...than, Hardly/ Scarcely/Barely...when...  **No sooner + had +S+VP2 + than + S + Vqk**  **Hardly/Barely/ Scarcely + had +S+VP2 + when/ before + S + Vqk**   * We had **no sooner** left out **than** they came in room**.**   **→ No sooner** had we left out **than** they came in room.   * I had **hardly** arrived home **when** the phone rang.   **→ Hardly** had I arrived home **when** the phone rang. |

**IV. LIÊN TỪ PHỤ THUỘC**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **CHỨC NĂNG** | |
| - Nối các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau – mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu. | |
| **MỘT SỐ LIÊN TỪ PHỤ THUỘC THƯỜNG GẶP** | |
| **Though, Although, Even though, Even if** | |
| **Though**  (mặc dù) | **- Though** : liên từ, thường đứng đầu câu hoặc giữa câu.  **Though** he is poor, he is happy  **=** Poor **though** he is, he is happy. (conjunction)  **- Though** trạng từ, và thường hay đứng cuối câu.   * I am busy today. We could meet tomorrow, **though**. (adverb) |
| **Although**  (mặc dù) | - Liên từ chỉ đứng đầu hay giữa câu, không bao giờ đứng cuối câu.  - Nghĩa **though** (thường dùng hơn)/**although** (trang trọng hơn) giống nhau   * **Although/ though** I don't like him, I admit that he's a good manager. |
| **Even though**  (cho dù) | - Có sắc thái ý nghĩa mạnh hơn **although**, nói về tính tất nhiên sẽ xảy ra dù với điều kiện gì đó. (express a fact)   * You keep making that stupid noise **even though** I've asked you to stop three times. |
| **Even if**  (thậm chí) | - Diễn tả 1 sự việc có khả năng xảy ra, nhưng dù có hay không, nó cũng không ảnh hưởng đến sự việc ở mệnh đề chính. (used in a supposition or hypothesis).   * **Even if** she studies hard, she won't pass the exam. |
| **No matter + who/what/which/where/when/how + S +V, clause.** (dù có... đi chăng nữa.. thì) | |
| **No matter how = however** (dù thế nào đi chăng nữa)  **No matter what = whatever** (dù gì đi chăng nữa)  **No matter where = wherever** (dù nơi nào đi chăng nữa)  **No matter when = whenever** (dù khi nào đi chăng nữa)  **No matter which = whichever** (dù điều gì đi chăng nữa)  **No matter who = whoever** (dù ai đi chăng nữa)   * **No matter who** telephones, say I'm out. * **No matter what** you say, I won't believe you. * **No matter where** we met, I call you friend. | |
| * **LƯU Ý** * Các cấu trúc này có thể đứng cuối câu mà không cần có mệnh đề theo sau: * I will always love you, **no matter what.** * **Cấu trúc: No matter how/ however + adj/ adv + S + V, clause.** (cho dù, dù)   No matter **how/ however** hard I try, I can't solve this problem.   * **Cấu trúc: Adj/ ady + as though + S+V, clause.** (mặc dù).   **Rich as** he is, he is unhappy. = **Rich though** he is, he is unhappy. | |
| **As, since, because, due to, owing to seeing that, now (that), in as much as... (Bởi vì)** | |
| **Due to + N** (thường dùng sau “be”).  **Owing to +N** (thường đứng đầu câu)   * The delay was **due to** the traffic jam. * **Owing to** the heavy traffic, they were late. * **Due to** the rise in oil prices, the inflation rate rose by 1.25%. | |
| **Because of/ on account of + N/V-ing**   * The man was detained **on account of** his strange behavior. | |
| **Because/ since/ as/ seeing that/ now (that) due to the fact that +S+V**   * **As/ Since/ because** you weren't there, I left a message. * **Seeing that** he's been sick, he's unlikely to come. | |
| **For/ in that /in as much as (trang trọng)**   * The film is unusual **in that** it features only 4 actors. * I believed her, **for** surely she would not lie to me. | |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. We’ve had a burglar alarm installed in our holiday cottage\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_we will feel happier about leaving it unoccupied for long periods.

A. for fear that B. so that C. now that D. provided that

1. He couldn’t ride his bike\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_there’s no air in one of the tyres.

A. since B. due to C. though D. despite

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his income of current job is relatively low, he finds it difficult to make ends meet.

A. Although B. As C. Because of D. In spite of

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.

A. Despite being tired B. Although to be tired

C. In spite being tired D. Despite tired

1. The children slept well, despite \_\_\_\_\_

A. it was noise B. the noise C. of the noise D. noisy

1. She left him \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she still loved him.

A. even if B. even though C. in spite of D. despite

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her lack of hard work, she was promoted.

A. In spite B. Even though C. in spite of D. despite of

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ they are brothers, they do not look like.

A. Although B. Even C. Despite D. In spite of

1. I’m learning English \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I want to get a better job.

A. or B. because C. therefore D. but

1. Please do that work \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_I told you yesterday.

A. like B. as C. same as D. similar to

1. This boy lied to you. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you don’t trust him anymore

A. so B. but C. and D. however.

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ Dad works hard all day; he always goes to bad late and gets up early.

A. However B. Despite C. Although D. No matter

1. That boy wasn’t busy. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he refused to help his mother.

A. so B. but C. and D. however.

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the rain, the baseball game was not cancelled.

A. In spite of B. Even though C. Although D. Despite

1. I got a job \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ my bad English.

A. if B. although C. in spite of D. because

1. I’m not going to the party ­\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I know that I should.

A. although B. because C. despite D. if

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I came to see her yesterday, she was reading a magazine.

A. When B. While C. Before D. After

1. Tom went to work despite \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. that he did not feel very well B. of the fact not feeling well

C. he did not feel very well D. not feeling very well

1. Though \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, they are good friends.

A. their sometimes quarrel B. to have a quarrel sometimes

C. they sometimes have a quarrel D. of having a quarrel sometimes

1. Despite \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, we arrived on time.

A. the traffic B. of the traffic

C there was heavy traffic D. of there was heavy traffic

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_it was very cold, she did not put on her coat.

A. In case B. But C. Even if D. Although

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ having the best qualifications among all the applicants, Justin was not offered the job.

A. Although B. While C. In spite of D. Despite of

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the internet is very popular, many older people do not know how to use it.

A. However B. Nevertheless C. Even though D. Despite

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he wasn’t feeling very well, David was determined to take part in the inter-university athletics meet.

A. Although B. While C. Where as D. yet

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Allan’s inexperience as a midfielder, he played well and scored a decisive goal in the final match.

A. Since B. Although C. Despite D. Because of

1. Her eyes are red and puffy\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_she has been crying a lot.

A. although B. since C. because of D. despite

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_had the restaurant opened\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_people were flocking to eat there.

A. Scarcely/ when B. No sooner/ when C. No sooner/ then D. Hardly/ that

1. Peter always takes a map with him\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_he loses his way.

A. if B. in case C. so that D. so

1. My parents lent me the money. , I couldn’t have afforded the trip.

A. However B. Otherwise C. Therefore D. Unless

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_there is not enough information on the effects of smoke in the atmosphere, doctors have proved that air pollution causes lung diseases.

A. In spite of B. Although C. Therefore D. However

1. Nam is motivated to study\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_he knows that a good education can improve his life.

A. because B. so C. so that D. therefore

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his physical disability, he managed to finish the course with good results.

A. Although B. Since C. Because of D. Despite

1. Students are encouraged to develop critical thinking\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_accepting opinions without questioning them.

A. in addition B. for instance C. instead of D. because of

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ most fairy tales have happy endings, the stories usually deal with very frightening situations - children abandoned in the forest, terrifying giants, cruel stepmothers.

A. Although B. Therefore C. Despite D. Because

1. My uncle tries to spend time playing with his children\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_he is very busy.

A. because of B. although C. despite D. moreover

1. From when they start in preschool, children spend more time watching television than participating in any other activity except sleeping. , this is not necessarily a bad thing.

A. Due to B. For example C. However D. Because

1. Many students work to earn money\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_their parents are rich

A. because of B. despite C. however D. although

1. The residents of the village are living a happy life\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_they lack modern facilities.

A. despite B. although C. therefore D. because of

1. Research shows that learners who adopt this approach will undoubtedly manage to broaden their language abilities considerably and,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, are more likely to achieve their objectives in the longer term.

A. because B. in contrast C. though D. as a result

1. We decided to take a late flight\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_we could spend more time with our family.

A. in order B. so that C. so as to D. in order to

1. I walked away as calmly as I could\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_they thought I was the thief.

A. although B. so that C. owing to D. in case

1. We decided to leave early \_\_\_\_\_\_\_the party was boring.

A. although B. despite C. because D. because of

1. Many people believe him\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he often tells a lie.

A. because B. in spite of C. although D. because of

1. Jane’s been unfaithful to Jim three times, but he still loves her\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_everything.

A. apart from B. in spite of C. in addition to D. because of

1. In Britain, most shops close at 6 pm,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in other countries they often open in the evening, too.

A. despite B. moreover C. nevertheless D. whereas

1. Parents shouldn’t use physical punishment. it negatively influences children’s development.

A. because of B. although C. because D. in spite of

1. Children are encouraged to read books \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ they are a wonderful source of knowledge.

A. because of B. in spite of C. because D. although

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.

A. In spite being tired B. Despite of tiredness

C. Although to be tired D. Despite being tired

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_busy she is, she manages to pick her children up after school every day.

A. However B. Although C. Despite D. Because

1. A newborn baby can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn tiger,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, can run within minutes of birth.

A. therefore B. even though C. otherwise D. however

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_she was very hard working; she hardly earned enough to feed her family.

A. In spite of B. Because C. Because of D. Although

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_her absence from class yesterday, she couldn’t understand the lesson.

A. Although B. In spite of C. Because of D. Because

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_her poorness, she feels happy.

A. Although B. Because C. If D. In spite of

1. We all feel sad \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the bad news

A. because B. because of C. though D. despite

1. John lost his job\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his laziness.

A. because of B. because C. in spite of D. though

1. I went to the club last Saturday\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the heavy rain.

A. because of B. because C. in spite of D. though

1. He has had this car\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ six months.

A. in B. since C. during D. for

1. We can't go to Julia's party \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ we're going away that weekend.

A. because B. because of C. although D. in spite of

1. \_\_\_\_ repeated assurances that the product is safe; many people have stopped buying it.

A. By B. Despite C. With D. For

1. She walked home by herself, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she knew that it was dangerous.

A. because B. although C. and D. but

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his injuries, he bears no animosity towards his attackers.

A. Because of B. But for C. In spite of D. Without

1. He got wet\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ he forgot his umbrella.

A. because of B. because C. but D. and

1. He stops working \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ heavy raining.

A. in spite of B. although C. despite D. because of

1. They have a lot of difficulties in their life \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ their poverty.

A. in spite of B. although C. because D. because of

1. Tom wakes his parents up\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ playing the guitar very softly.

A. because B. in spite of C. because of D. although

1. Nobody could hear her\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she spoke too quietly.

A. although B. because C. because of D. in spite of

1. I'll see you after the show and give you £20 for the tickets, or \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ much they cost.

A. whatever B. nevertheless C. besides D. however

1. Mai worked hard, \_\_\_\_\_\_ she passed her exam.

A. so B. although C. because D. though

1. \_\_\_\_\_ she was very tired, she helped her brother with his homework.

A. Because B. whether C. Although D. so

1. It’s raining hard, \_\_\_\_\_ we can’t go to the beach.

A. or B. but C. so D. though

1. It’s cheap, \_\_\_\_\_ I don’t like it.

A. and B. because C. so d. however

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ it was late, I decided to phone Brian.

A. Despite B. However C. In spite of D. Though

1. The little boy was hungry \_\_\_\_\_\_ he ate nothing.

A. although B. so C. but D. and

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ the car was cheap, it was in good condition.

A. Although B. Because C. As D. If

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow is a public holiday; all the shops will be shut all day.

A. As B. Just as C. Although D. When

1. She came in \_\_\_\_\_ turned on the radio.

A. so B. and C. or D. but

1. We didn’t go for a walk \_\_\_\_\_ it was very cold.

A. though B. because C. but D. so

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ I tried to persuade her, I didn’t succeed.

A. Because B. So C. Although D. However

1. Lan woke up late \_\_\_\_\_ she didn’t have time for breakfast

A. so B. since C. as d. though

1. I like fish \_\_\_\_ I don’t like catching them myself.

A. or B. but C. so D. and

1. He had an accident \_\_\_\_ he was careful.

A. even though B. because C. so D. since

1. \_\_\_\_\_ it was raining, I went swimming.

A. So B. Because C. However D. Although

1. Ann felt ill, \_\_\_\_ she insisted on going to work.

A. though B. so C. and D. but

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I felt tired, I went to bed early.

A. Although B. So C. As D. However

1. \_\_\_\_\_ he’s got an English name, he is German.

A. Although B. However C. Because D. Since

1. They decided not to go out for a meal \_\_\_\_\_ they were too tired.

A. so B. because C. but D. if

1. We were the better team \_\_\_\_ we lost the match.

A. so B. and C. but D. because

1. Keith decided to give up his job \_\_\_ I advised him not to

A. because B. however C. although D. since

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ we were in town, we often met him.

A. For B. Although C. So D. When

1. She didn’t get the job \_\_\_\_ she had all the necessary qualifications.

A. because B. although C. so D. but

1. Nam was absent from class yesterday \_\_\_\_ he felt sick.

A. so B. because C. although D. but

1. Tom has a computer, \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn’t use it.

A. or B. as C. because D. but

1. The boy can’t reach the shelf \_\_\_\_ he’s not tall enough.

A. because B. although C. even though D. and

1. The film was boring, \_\_\_\_ we went home.

A. so B. when C. but D. if

1. The girl bought the shoes \_\_\_\_\_ they are very expensive.

A. but B. if C. so D. although

1. He used to smoke a lot \_\_\_\_\_\_ now he doesn’t smoke any more.

A. still B. therefore C. but D. as

1. She couldn’t unlock it \_\_\_\_\_\_ she had the wrong key.

A. while B. but C. though D. because

1. \_\_\_\_ it rained, the boys played football.

A. Even B. Even though C. However D. In spite of

1. It was still painful, \_\_\_\_ I went to see a doctor.

A. so B. however C. but D. or

1. Julie failed the exam \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of working very hard.

A. despite B. in spite C. even if D. though

* **MODULE 11 : HAVING + PAST PARTICIPLE**
* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**1. Perfect gerund (Danh động từ hoàn thành)**

|  |
| --- |
| **Danh động từ hoàn thành được thành lập bởi : having + past participle.** |
| - Danh động từ hoàn thành được dùng thay cho hình thức hiện tại của danh động từ khi chúng ta đề cập đến một hành động trong quá khứ.  Ex : He was accused of deserting his ship  He was accused of having deserted his ship  She apologized for not having finished the project.   * **Lưu ý**: **Perfect gerund** giữ chức năng như danh động từ hoặc cụm danh từ   - Danh động từ hoàn thành thường được dùng sau **deny**.  Ex : He denied having been there. (Anh ta phủ nhận đã có mặt ở đấy.) |

**2.Perfect participle (Phân từ hoàn thành)**

|  |
| --- |
| **Phân từ hoàn thành được thành lập bởi having + past participle.** |
| **-** Phân từ hoàn thành có thể được dùng thay cho hiện tại phân từ trong câu có hai hành động ngắn xảy ra liên tiếp nhau của cùng một chủ từ (hành động trong mệnh đề phân từ hoàn tất trước khi hành động trong mệnh đề chính bắt đầu) hay nói cách khác khi một hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác hoặc nhấn mạnh sự hoàn thành của một hành động, chúng ta dùng **perfect participle** cho hành động đầu tiên  Ex : **Having tied/ Tying** one end of the rope to his bed, he threw the other end out of the window.  **Having taken off/ Taking off** his shoes, Ray walked into the house.  Finishing my homework, I went to bed=  **Having finished** my homework, I went to bed: Sau khi đã làm xong bài tập tôi đi ngủ.  + Câu thứ hai nhấn mạnh việc đi ngủ chỉ xảy ra sau khi đã làm xong bài tập.  I approve of helping the poor.  I approve of **having helped** the poor.  + Câu thứ hai diễn tả ý giúp đỡ người nghèo này đã xảy ra rồi  Tuy nhiên chúng ta thường dùng phân từ hoàn thành khi  Hành động trong mệnh đề chính là kết quả của sự kiện trong mệnh đề phân từ  Ex: **Having broken** her leg the last time she went, Brenda decided not to go on the school skiing trip this year or [ **After breaking** her leg…; **NOT** ~~Breaking her leg~~…]   * **Lưu ý** : chúng ta có thể dùng **After v-ing** thay cho **have + participle** trong cấu trúc trên   Ex: **Having broken** her leg the last time she went = **After breaking** her leg …  - Hành động đầu tiên kéo dài trong một khoảng thời gian.  Ex: **Having repaired** the car, Tom took it out for a road test. ([**NOT** ~~Repairing the ca~~r…]  - Việc dùng hiện tại phân từ có thể gây nhầm lẫn.  Ex: **Reading** the instructions, he snatched up the fire extinguisher.  → có thể làm cho người đọc hiểu rằng hai hành động này xảy ra đồng thời. Trường hợp này , chúng ta nên dùng phân từ hoàn thành.  Ex: **Having read** the instructions, he snatched up the fire extinguisher.  - Nếu một hành động xảy ra gần như cùng một lúc (ranh giới thời gian không rõ rệt), thay vì dùng **Perfect gerund** thì chúng ta có thể dùng **Present participle** cho hành động đầu tiên.  Ex: **Taking** a key out of his pocket, he opened the door |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. After he had finished his work, he went home.

A. After have finished his work, he went home.

B. Having finished his work, he went home.

C. After have finishing his work, he went home.

D. Have finished his work, he went home

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the desalination plant, the company could offer an effective solution to the problem of water scarcity.

A. Being built B. Having been built C. To build D. Having built

1. The public praised the local farmers for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ millions of trees of the surrounding hills.

A. being planting B. having planted C. plant D. being planted

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the university entrance examination, Susan phoned her family.

A. Taken B. To be taking C. Having taken D. Having been taken

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Ann by phone, James decided to email her.

A. Having failed to contact B. Having failed contacting

C. He failed to contect D. That he failed contacting

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ high school, Nam attended a university in the city centre.

A. Having finished B. To have finished

C. Having been finished D. To finish

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_classical dance for five years, Akiko finally felt ready\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in public.

A. Studying/ to be performed B. To study/ performed

C. Being studied/ having performed D. Having studied/ to perform

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.

A. Finding B. We found C. Found D. Having found

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_their work, the workers expected to be paid.

A. being finished B. to finish C. Having finished D. finishing

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you to the job, he felt calm.

A. Appointed B. Appoint C. Having appointed D. To appoint

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in dark colors, the room needed some bright lights.

A. Painting B. To have painted

C. Having been painted D. To have been painted

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_only three hours, I can hardly focus on my work.

a.Having slept b. was slept c. slept d. sleeping

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this movie last week, I still wanted to see it again.

a.Having seen b. had seen c. was seen d. seeing

1. Are you sure you told me? I don’t recall \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ about it.

a.Having told b. having been told c. to have told d. to have been told

1. Tome made a bad mistake at work, but his boss didn’t fire him. He is happy about \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a second chance.

a.Giving b. having been given

c. to have been given d. to give

1. When I called them, they didn’t answer. They pretended \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_already.

a.To sleep b. sleeping

c. having slept d. to have been sleeping

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the report to the manager, she decided to take a rest.

A. Having handed in B. Handed in C. To hand in D. Being handed in

1. They now regret \_\_\_\_\_\_ their son by providing too many material possessions.

A. having spoiled B. to have spoiled B. having been spoiled D. to have been spoiled

1. But after \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it over, I decided to laugh at myself and just join anyway.

a.Having thought b. I have thought c. thought d. to have thought

1. Mary said, “ I regret \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him earlier in my life.”

a.To meet b. not having met c. to have met d. at meeting

1. Martin denied \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the accused man on the day of the crime.

a.To see b. of having seen c. to have seen d. having seen

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ from the horseback, he was taken to hospital and had an operation.

a.When falling b. as he was fallen c. after having fallen d. to fall

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for twelve hours, I felt marvelous.

a. Having slept b. have slept

c. Having been slept d. have been slept

1. By the time their baby arrives, the Johnson hope \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ painting and decorating the new nursery.

a. having finished b. to have finished

c. having been finished d. to have been finished

1. She's angry about \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the farewell party last night.

a. not having invited b. not to have invited

c. not having been invited d. not to have been invited

1. "After her partner had uninstalled a program, he restarted the computer." has the closest meaning to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. After had uninstalled a program, her partner restarted the computer,

B. Had uninstalled a program, her partner restarted the computer.

C. Having uninstalled a program, her partner restarted the computer.

D. After uninstalled a program, her partner restarted the computer

1. Your receptionnist talked to me after \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with some other customers.

A. have dealt B. having dealt C. dealt D. having dealing

1. The police suspected that strange van driver of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and eaten many wild animals.

A. hunting B. hunted C. having hunted D. had hunted

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the bottles, Mike poured the drinks for everyone.

a.To open b. to have opened c. being opened d. having opened

1. Mr. Lee was upset by \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the truth.

a.Not having been told b. us not to tell him

c. He hadn’t been told d. being not told

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_all the papers already, Sarah put them back in the file.

A. To have photocopied b. to photocopy

C. Photocopying d. having photocopied

1. George mentioned \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in an accident as a child, but he never told us the details.

A. Having injured b. having been injured

C. To have injured d. to have been injured

1. Tom was accused \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_some top secret document.

a.To steal b. of having stolen c. for stealing d. to have stolen

1. We decided not to travel, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the terrible weather forecast.

a. having heard b. to have heard

c. having been heard d. to have been heard

1. I don't recall \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him at the conference.

a. having seen b. to have seen c. having been seen d. to have been seen

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in dark colors, the room needed some bright lights.

a. Having painted b. To have painted

c. Having been painted d. To have been painted

1. The stockbroker denied \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the secret business deal.

a. having informed b. to have informed

c. having been informed d. to have been informed

1. They now regret \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ their son by providing too many material possessions.

a. having spoiled b. to have spoiled

c. having been spoiled d. to have been spoiled

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the party, we could hardly refuse to go.

a. Having invited b. To have invited

c. Having been invited d. To have been invited

1. Tom made a bad mistake at work, but his boss didn't fire him. He's lucky \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a second chance.

a. having given b. to have given

c. having been given d. to have been given

1. Are you sure you told me? I don't recall \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_about it.

a. having told b. to have told c. having been told d. to have been told

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_UNESCO criteria for outstanding universal value to humanity, Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex was added to the World Heritage List in 2014.

A. Meeting B. Met C. To meet D. Having met

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the email - supposedly from Boyd's Bank - to be genuine, she was tricked into disclosing her credit card details.

A. Believe B. Being believed C. To believe D. Believing

1. On\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_he had won, he jumped for joy.

A. he was told B. having told C. being told D.get fined

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the distance was too far and the time was short, we decided to fly there instead of going there by train.

A. To discover B. Discovered C. To have discovered D. Discovering

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_every major judo title, Mark retired from international competition.

A. When he won B. Having won C. On winning D. Winning

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for 4 hours, they decided to stop to have lunch at a cheap restaurant.

A. Having been walked B. Having walked

C. Walking D. Walked

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ , Joe was annoyed to find that he had left his key at the coffee shop.

A. After returned to his office B. To have just returned to his office

C. Upon returning to his office D. Having been returned to his office

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the instruction, he snatched up the fire extinguisher.  
    A. Read B. Having read C.Being read D.Being done
2. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the instruction, he snatched up the fire extinguisher.  
    A. Read B. Having read C.Being read D.Being done

* **MODULE 12 : WORD FORMATIONS**
* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**1. Ví trí, chức năng và dấu hiệu nhận biết từ loại**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **DANH TỪ(NOUN)** | |
| **Vị trí của danh từ trong câu.** | |
| **1. Chủ ngữ của câu** (đầu cầu, đầu mệnh đề) | Maths is the subject I like best |
| **2.Sau tính từ** (good, beautiful..),  **Sau tính từ sở hữu** (my, your, his, her,..).  **Cụm danh từ:** a/ an the + (adv) + adj + N. | She is a good teacher.  His father works in hospital. |
| **3. Làm tân ngữ, sau động từ** | I like English.  We are students. |
| **4. Sau "enough"** (enough +N) | He didn't have enough money to buy that car. |
| **5. Sau các mạo từ** (a, an, the)  **Đại từ chỉ định** (this, that, these, those);  **Lượng từ** (each, no, any, a few, a little,..) | She is a teacher.  This book is an interesting book.  I have a little money to go to the movie. |
| **6. Sau giới từ**: in, on, of, with, under, at... | Thanh is good at literature. |
| **Dấu hiệu nhận biết danh từ** | |
| -ion (distribution), -ment (development), -er (teacher) , -or (actor), -ant (accountant), -age (marriage), -ship (friendship), -sm (enthusiasm), -ity (ability), -ness (happiness), -dom (freedom), -ist (terrorist), -ian (physician), -hood (childhood), -ance (importance), -ence (dependence), -ety (society), -ty (honesty) | |
| **TÍNH TỪ(ADJECTIVE)** | |
| **Vị trí của tính từ trong câu** | |
| **1. Trước danh từ:** (a/an/the) + (adv) + adj + N | My Tam is a famous singer. |
| **2. Sau động từ liên kết:** be/ seem/ appear/ feel/ taste/ look/ keep/get/ keep/ make (sb) + adj | Tom seems tired now  The homework keeps me busy all the time |
| **3. Sau "too":** S+ be/ seem/look..+ too +adj.. | Coffee seems too hot for me to drink. |
| **4. Trước “enough":** S + be + adj + enough.. | She is tall enough to play volleyball. |
| **5. Trong cấu trúc:** so + adj + that | The weather was so bad that we decided to stay  at home |
| **6. Dùng dưới các dạng so sánh** | Meat is more expensive than fish. |
| **7. Dùng trong câu cảm thán:**  How + adj +S+V!  What + (a/an) + adj +N! | How intelligent she is!  What a beautiful girl! |
| **Dấu hiệu nhận biết tính từ** | |
| **-ful** (helpful), **-less** (homeless), **-ly** (friendly), **-al** (national), **-ble** (acceptable), **-ive** (active), **-ous** (famous), **-ish** (selfish), **-y** (foggy), **-**like (childlike), **-ic** (scientific), **-ed** (bored), **-ing** (interesting), **-ary** (necessary), **-ant** (important), **-ent** (different) | |
| **TRẠNG TỪ** | |
| **Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu** | |
| **1. Trước động từ thường giữa trợ động từ và động từ thường (đặc biệt là các trạng từ chỉ tần suất:** always, usually,...) | They seldom get up early in the morning.  I have recently finished my homework.  I don't usually go to school late. |
| **2. Trước tính từ:** be/ feel/look.. + adv + adj | She is very nice.  He looks extremely unwell. |
| **3. Sau "too":** V(thường) + too + adv ! | The teacher speaks too quickly. |
| **4. Trước "enough":** V(thường) + adv + enough | The teacher speaks slowly enough for us to understand. |
| **5. Trong cấu trúc** : V(thường) + so + adv + that | Jack drove so fast that he caused an accident. |
| **6. Đứng cuối câu** (trạng từ thời gian) | I finished my essay last week. |
| **7. Thường đứng 1 mình ở đầu câu/ giữa câu** và cách các thành phần khác của câu bằng dấu “,” | Last summer I came back my home country.  Its raining hard. Tom, however, goes to school. |
| **Dấu hiệu nhận biết trạng từ:** | |
| **Adv = adj + ly** (beautifully, usefully, carefully, strongly, badly) | |
| **Ngoại lệ:** Một số từ có đuôi **“ly”** nhưng là tính từ: **daily**: hàng ngày, **early**: sớm; **elderly**: già, lớn tuổi; **friendly**: thân thiện, **likely**: có khả năng sẽ xảy ra; **costly** = đắt đỏ; **lively** = sinh động, **lonely** lẻ loi, lovely = đáng yêu, manly = nam tính; silly = ngớ ngẩn; ugly = xấu xí; unlikely: không có khả năng xảy ra; monthly: hàng tháng; weekly: hàng tuần, brotherly = như anh em; comely = duyên dáng; goodly = có duyên; homely =giản dị, lowly = hèn mọn, masterly = tài giỏi; scholarly uyên bác; shapely = dáng đẹp, timely = đúng lúc; unseemly = không phù hợp. | |
| **ĐỘNG TỪ** | |
| **Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu** | |
| **1. Thường đứng sau chủ ngữ** | Lam Anh plays volleyball everyday. |
| **2. Đứng sau trạng từ chỉ tần suất** | I usually get up late. |
| **Dấu hiệu nhận biết động từ** | |
| **-ate** (compensate), **-ain** (maintain); **-flect** (reflect), **-flict** (inflict); **-spect** (respect), **-scrib** (describe), -**ceive** (deceive), **-fy** (modify), **-isel-ize** (realize), **-ude** (include), **-ide** (devide), **dus** (evade), **-tend** (extend),... | |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. He won't be……………………..until he's upset everyone in the office.

A. contented B. contentioning C. contents D. contentedly

1. The nationalists are very eager to……………………… their customs and language.

A. conservation B. conserve C. conservationist D. conservative

1. Here, the ………………….high-income workers that invest the most in the riskiest funds, and they will not likely need the minimum pension guarantee.

A. well-educated B . education C. educational D. educate

1. These steps aren't……………..… proven to prevent DVT, but they're common sense.

A. science B. scientific C. scientist D. scientifically

1. She left a large sum of money in her will to…………………….a wildlife sanctuary.

A. found B. founded C. foundation D. founder

1. The report criticized boardroom fat cats who…………………..themselves huge pay increases.

A. awarded B. award C. awarding D. awardee

1. The settlers began to move inland and………………..the river valleys.

A. populous B. populate C. population D. popularly

1. The air was abuzz with military helicopters, airlifting ………………people and equipment.

A. injuries B. injuring C. injured D. injury

1. There's a growing………………that this country can no longer afford to be a nuclear power.

A. recognition B. recognize C. recognizing D. recognized

1. Opencast coal mining is among the most environmentally….....................activities carried out in Wales.

A. destroyed B. destructive C. destruction D. destroyer

1. Acting is …………………….. you've got to really push yourself if you want to succeed.

A. compete B. competition C. competitive D. competitors

1. Job insecurity seems to be increasing across most of Western Europe, the United States and other parts of the ……………..world.

A. development B. developer C. developing D. developed

1. The booklist at the end of the chapter contains some……………..reading on the subject.

A. introduce B. introduction C. introductory D. introduced

1. Until 1986 most companies would not even allow women to take the exams, but such blatant……………….. is now disappearing.

A.discriminates B.discrimination C. discriminating D. discriminated

1. She is very clever,…………………..but do you think she has the right personality for the job?

A. admit B. admitted C. admittedly D. admission

1. Five hundred troops were sent in, more as a……………………gesture than as a real threat.

A. symbolic B. symbolize C. symbol D. symbolizes

1. In her essay, she……………………….the whole era as a period of radical change.

A. character B. characteristic C. characterized D . characterizes

1. …………………..repetitive movements can cause inflammation of the joint.

A. Long B. Prolonged C. Prolongation D. Length

1. Students were asked which task represented the greatest……………………..challenge.

A. intelligent B. intellect C. intellectual D . intelligence

1. High levels of……………………… have been found in the groundwater, causing concerns about possible health risks to nearby neighborhoods.

A. contamination B. contaminated C. contaminants D. contaminates

1. Although they did not agree with the plan, they did not ………………..their opposition to it.

A. relate B . relationship C. relative D. related

1. It would be wrong to discriminate against a candidate because of their sexual………………..

(=the sex of the people they are sexually attracted to).

A. preferential B. preference C. preferable D. preferably

1. …………. for government posts are always thoroughly investigated before being admitted

A. Applicants B. Applicable C. Apply D. Applications

1. Estimates of the amount of money needed to decontaminate the heavily polluted chemical installations……………………….. .

A. variety B. various C. vary D. varied

1. The temple is still an example of well- ………………… traditional Vietnamese architecture.

A. preserved B. preservation C. preservative D. preserver

1. His…………………….with the project began when he was on (a) secondment from NASA to the European Space Agency.

A. involve B. involves C. involvement D. involved

1. People in Italy are more………………………..of children in public places than in Britain.

A. tolerate B. tolerant C. toleration D. tolerable

1. Her health is what matters…………………….. the cost of the treatment is of secondary

A. importance B. important C. importantly D. import

1. Many species of plants and animals are threatened with……………………atened with (=being destroyed so that they no longer exist).

A. extinctiveness B. extinctly C. extinct D. extinction

1. The……………….ability of the whale is thought to be highly developed.

A. communication B. communicative C. communicating D. communicable

1. The children squealed in…………………….when they saw all the presents under the

Christmas tree.

A. delight B. delighted C. delights D. delighting

1. Hyperactive children often have poor………………………..and require very little sleep.

A. concentrates B. concentration C. concentrated D. concentrative

1. The terrorists have chosen to play a…………………… game with the civilian population.

A. dead B. dying C. death D. deadly

1. She swallowed her…………………….., saying, "That's OK, it doesn't matter."

A. disappointed B. disappointingly C. disappointment D. disappoints

1. Differences over these issues narrowed during the………………………talks.

A. preparation B. prepare C. preparatory D. prepared

1. WTO members are committed to delivering a mutually………………..trade liberalization.

A. advantage B. disadvantage C. advantageously D. advantageous

1. Women's groups are concerned about the high levels of medical………… during childbirth.

A. intervening B. intervened C. intervenes D. intervention

1. An Olympic gold medal is the only thing that has evaded her in her ……………..……..career.

A. remarkably B. remarked C. remarkable D. remarks

1. How the massive stones were brought here from hundreds of miles away remains……… .

A. mystery B. a mystery C. a mysterious D. mysteries

1. An increasing number of tests are available for detecting foetal…………………… .

A. normalities B. abnormalities C. normal D. abnormal

1. The………….was a misrepresentation of the truth and bore little resemblance to actual events.

A. documents B. documentary C. documentarrily D. documented

1. She was accused of stalking the actress by repeatedly calling her and sending……. letters over the past few months.

A. threat B. threaten C. threatening D. threatened

1. Humans, he argues, are amoral and what guides them is not any sense of morality but an instinct for …………………….. .

A. survival B. survive C. survivor D. survived

1. You risk being judged ………………….by some listeners whenever you give a presentation.

A. adversity B. adversary C. adversely D. adverse

1. State officials are encouraging more farmers to become ………………… as organic growers.

A. certificate B. certify C. certificates D. certified

1. We have been appointed sole UK…………………. of a number of Hungarian wines.

A. distribute B. distribution C. distributing D. distributor

1. New legislation does little to solve the state's……….problems and puts other crucial services at risk.

A. transportation B. transport C. transportable D. transported

1. Fifty people have……………………….been injured in an explosion at the plastics factory

A. report B. reported C. reportedly D. reporter

1. It was thought that he'd committed the crime but there wasn't……………….. convict him.

A. sufficiency B. sufficiently C. suffice D. sufficient

1. The water's only knee-……………………, so we'll be able to get across the river easily.

A. depth B. deeply C. deep D. deepen

1. A / an \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ species is a population of an organism which is at risk of becoming extinct.

a. dangerous b. endanger c. endangered d. endangerment

1. Almost half of turtles and tortoises are known to be threatened with \_\_\_\_.

a. extinct b. extinction c. extinctive d. extinctly

1. They are going to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the pool to 1.8 meter.

a. deep b. depth c. deepen d. deeply

1. The referee had no hesitation in awarding the visiting team a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

a. penalty b. penalize c. penal d. penalization

1. The referee's \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is the most important in any sport competition.

a. decide b. decisive c. decision d. decider

1. Johnny used to be one of the most \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ athletes in my country.

a. succeed b. success c. successful d. successfully

1. The success of the 22nd SEA Games had a great contribution of many \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ volunteers.

a. support b. supporter c. supportive d. supportively

1. He was so \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that he could not even say a word.

a. nerve b. nerves c. nervous d. nervously

1. I am really \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the way he talks, but the way he behaves.

a. interest b. interested c. interesting d. interestingly

1. Thanks to labor-saving devices, women have more time to take part in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ activities.

a. society b. social c. socially d. socialize

1. Are there any …………………….between Vietnamese and American culture?

A. differences B. different C. differently D. differential

1. Some people are concerned with physical……………………. when choosing a wife or husband.

A. attractive B. attraction C. attractiveness D. attractively

1. What could be more ………………………….than a wedding on a tropical island?

A. romance B. romantic C. romanticize D. romanticism

1. In my hometown, many people still believe in………………………marriage.

A. contract B. contractual C. contracts D. contracting

1. Though their performance was not perfect yet, the students held the audience's ………….until the end.

A. attentive B. attention C. attentively D. attentional

1. Both Asian and Western students seem ……………about how to answer the questionnaire of the survey.

A. confusedly B. confused C. confusing D. confusion

1. She was …………………..unaware of the embarrassing situation due to her different cultural background.

A. complete B. completed C. completing D. completely

1. They started, as …………gatherings but they have become increasingly formalized in the last few years.

A. informal B. informally C. informalize D. informality

1. Children who are isolated and lonely seem to have poor language and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. communicate B. communication C. communicative D. communicator

1. There is a wide range of\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in the education system of the USA.

A. select B. selective C. selected D. selection

1. Despite his……………..., he succeeded in learning foreign language.

A.disables B. disabled C. disability D. disable

1. My sister has talent in………………….and she has won many prizes.

A. photographic B. photogenic C. photograph D. photography

1. I tried to know the………………………..of my new house as much as possible.

A. surround B. surrounded C. surrounds D. surroundings

1. The……………..... in the war should be taken care of.

A. injuring B. injure C. injures D. injured

1. Miss Hoa is very……………………...She goes to church every morning.

A. religious B. religiously C. religion D. region

1. Some designers have…………………….the Aodai by printing lines of poetry on it.

A. modernized B. modernize C. modern D. modernly

1. Our school has many well-………………… teachers.

A. qualified B. qualify C. quality D. qualification

1. I saw your school's……………….........in today's edition of the Viet Nam News.

A. advertiser B. advertisement C. advertising D. advertise

1. If you want to ...................................your English, we can help you.

A. improve B. improving C. improved D. improvement

1. The restaurant has excellent…………………....for serving some of the finest food.

A. repute B. reputed C. reputation D. reputable

* **MODULE 13 : EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY**
* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Cách dùng** | **MANY** | **MUCH** |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là  **“NHIỀU”** | - **MANY =** a large number of/a great many/ a majority of/ a wide variety of/ a wide range of  - Dùng với danh từ đếm được. | **MUCH =** a great deal of/a large amount of...  - Dùng với danh từ không đếm được. |
| MANY + MUCH = A lot of/lots of/plenty of/a (large) quantity of  (Dùng với cả danh từ cả đếm được và không đếm được). | |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là  **“MỘT ÍT”** | **A FEW** | **A LITTLE** |
| - Dùng với danh từ đếm được. | - Dùng với danh từ không đếm được. |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là **“HẦU NHƯ KHÔNG/ RẤT ÍT”** | **FEW** | **LITTLE** |
| - Dùng với danh từ đếm được. | - Dùng với danh từ không đếm được. |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là  **“MỘT VÀI”** | **SOME** | **ANY** |
| - Dùng trong câu khẳng định và trong câu nghi vấn khi mang ý mời/đề nghị. | - Dùng trong câu phủ định, nghi vấn và dùng trong câu khẳng định khi nó mang ý nghĩa là “bất cứ”. |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là **“TẤT CẢ”** | **ALL** | **BOTH** |
| - Dùng để chỉ từ ba ngườỉ/vật (tất cả) trở lên. | - Dùng để chỉ cả hai người/vật (cả hai). |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là  **“KHÔNG”** | **NONE** | **NEITHER/EITHER** |
| - Dùng để chỉ từ ba người/vật trở lên đều không. | - Dùng để chỉ cả hai người/vật đều không. Trong đó:  + Neither: dùng trong câu khẳng định.  + Either: dùng trong câu phủ định. |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là  **“HẦU HẾT”** | **MOST** | **MOST OF** |
| **- Most + N = most of + the/tính từ sở hữu + N**  **Lưu ý:**  **MOSTLY** (chủ yếu là): dùng như một trạng từ  **ALMOST** (gần như): dùng như một trạng từ bổ trợ cho động từ, tính từ, danh từ. | |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là  **“MỖl/MỌI”** | **EACH** | **EVERY** |
| **EACH/EVERY:** dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít | |
|  | - Dùng với danh từ số nhiều khi có số lượng cụ thể. |
| Diễn đạt ý nghĩa là  **“CÁI KHÁC/NGƯỜI KHÁC”** | **OTHER** | **ANOTHER** |
| - **Other +** danh từ không đếm được.  - **Other +** danh từ số nhiều  - **Other + ones**  - **Others** được sử dụng như đại từ.  **Lưu ý:**  **Phân biệt “other” và “others”:**  - Theo sau “other” thường là một danh từ hoặc đại từ.  - Mặt khác “others”, bản thân nó là một đại từ và theo sau nó không có bất kì một danh từ nào cả.  **Sự khác nhau giữa THE OTHER - THE OTHERS:**  - The other: cái còn lại trong hai cái, hoặc người còn lại trong hai người,...  - The others: những cái còn lại hoặc những người còn lại trong một nhóm có nhiều thứ hoặc nhiều người. | **- Another +** danh từ số ít  **- Another +** one  **- Another +** số đếm + danh từ số nhiều  **- Another** được sử dụng như đại từ |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. I have \_\_\_\_\_\_money, not enough to buy groceries.

A. a lot of B. little C. any D. many

1. I have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_money, enough to buy a ticket.

A. a lot of B. little C. many D. a little

1. She has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_books, not enough for references.

A. few B. a few C. many D. little

1. She has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_books, enough to read.

A. many B. few C. a few D. a little

1. There \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ traffic on the street at rush hours.

A. are too many B.is too much C. are too alot D. are too little

1. He bought \_\_\_\_\_\_\_furniture for her new apartment which she has bought recently.

A. many B. few C. much D. a few

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the people I work with are very friendly.

A. some B. some of C. a little of D. a few

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_these money is mine.

A. some B. a few of C. many D. none of

1. We didn’t spend \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_money

A. many B. some C. much D. a few

1. There are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_people there.

A. too many B. too a little C. too much D.too little

1. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_people in this neighbourhood.

A. much B. a little C. many D.little

1. We must be quick. There is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_time left.

A. much B. many C.a lot of D. little

1. Let’s go and have a drink we have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_time left.

A. much B. a little C.a lot of D. little

1. There are four books on the table .\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_has a different colour.

A. Every B. Each C.Many D. Some

1. He has two bookstores. One is in Thac Mo. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_is in Phuoc Binh

A. other B. the others C.another D. the other

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_restaurant is expensive.

A. some B. either C.neither D. any

1. Did you take \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ photographs when you were on holiday.

A. some B. either C.much D. many

1. We ‘ll hurry We haven’t got \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_time left.

A. some B. many C. much D. any

1. We didn’t buy \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_flowers yesterday.

A. some B. many C. much D. any

1. There \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at the door.

A. is somebody B. is anybody C. is everybody D. isn’t nobody

1. She went out without\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_money.

A. any B. many C. much D. some

1. There are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in the hall.

A. somebody B. anybody C. everybody D. some people

1. I’m not hungry. I don’t want \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to eat.

A. everything B. anything C. something D. nothing

1. She didn’t take \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_money with her.

A. any B. many C. much D. A and C are right

1. Has \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_body seen my bags?

A. somebody B. any person C. anybody D. some people

1. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_sugar please.

A. any B. some C. much D. little

1. Let me know if you need \_\_\_\_\_\_help.

A. any B. many C. some D. A and B are right

1. I don’t have \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_relatives in these strange place.

A. any B. some C. a little D. much

1. [You](http://www.onthi.com/?a=OT&ot=LT&hdn_lt_id=1158) can’t see much of a country in a week.

A. much of B. some of C. a lot of D. many of

1. I won’t pass the exam. I have missed many of my lessons

A. some of B. much of C. many of D. a lot of

1. He got \_\_\_\_\_\_\_men friends, but he doesn’t know \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_women.

A. lots of/ many B. much/ many C. many / many D. many/ much

1. She pays a visit to her parents\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_other day.

A. each B. every C. most D. either

1. The house is small. However, there are\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_rooms for my family.

A. much B. little C. a few D. few

1. I need\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_sugar to make this cake.

A. many B. few C. lots D. a little

1. My mother has spent\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_money on this handbag.

A. a lot of B. many C. few D. lots

1. This is a very boring place to live because there’s\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to do.

A. lots of B. many C. any D. little

1. There was hardly\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_food left by the time we got there.

A. any B. some C. few D. plenty of

1. She used\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_chalk to write on the board.

A. many B. few C. some D. any

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_and every one of the flowers has its own colour and smell.

A. Each B. Every C. Both D. Almost

1. “How many potatoes do you want?” “Oh, just a\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, please.”

A. much B. few C. many D. little

1. The grass received so\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_water that it turned brown in the heat.

A. many B. few C. little D. much

1. The Smiths had so\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_children that they formed their own baseball team.

A. many B. much C. little D. few

1. Just think, in\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_three months it’ll be summer again.

A. most B. another C. other D. every

1. He has finished\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the exercises in this book.

A. most B. mostly C. most of D. almost

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_students in my class like watching football.

A. Most of B. Most C. Almost D. Mostly

1. We were bitten by mosquitoes\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_every night.

A. most B. almost C. mostly D. most of

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_all the passengers on the ferry were French.

A. Almost B. Every C. Most D. Mostly

1. We’ve got two TVs, but\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_works properly.

A. either B. neither C. none D. both

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of these restaurants are expensive.

A. Both B. Either C. Neither D. Each

1. We tried lots of hotel. of them had any rooms.

A. No B. None C. Neither D. Either

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of the companies supports a local charity.

A. Each B. All C. Most D. Half

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ my mother nor my aunt likes going shopping.

A. Either B. Most C. Neither D. Both

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of us wants to remind about that accident.

A. Either B. Both C. Most D. Neither

1. “She doesn’t want to criticize Laura”-”\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ do I.”

A. Neither B. Either C. So D. Too

1. I want some cake, but there was\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_left.

A. either B. some C. none D. both

1. Have you read\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of these books?

A. any B. lot C. some D. every

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of this money is yours, and half is mine.

A. Any B. Half C. Some D. Another

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ all of my children have visited this pagoda.

A. Almost B. Most C. A great deal D. A wide variety of

1. She has given me\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_three books.

A. others B. another C. the other D.other

1. You shouldn’t expect\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to do your work for you

A. others B. another C. the other D. the others

1. I have two brothers. One is a doctor,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_is a singer.

A. others B. another C. the others D. the other

1. I’m not surprised he’s feeling ill - he was eating one ice cream after\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_!

A. the other B. another C. others D. the others

1. She goes to English class every\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_day.

A. another B. the other C. other D. others

1. He studied\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_English and French.

A. either B. neither C. or D. both

1. They have two children,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of whom live abroad.

A. both B. all C. most D. none

1. We had bought three pairs of shoes. of them are cheap.

A. No B. None C. Neither D. Either

1. Park Hang Seo, who is the head coach of the Vietnam national football team, is a new idol of\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_people.

A. much B. a geat deal of C. many D. both

1. I’m thinking of traveling to either Argentina\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Brazil.

A. or B. nor C. and D.all

1. I have\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_things I want to talk to you about.

A. a great deal of B. a large amount of C. a number of D. a great many of

1. She has spent\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of time in Europe.

A. a great deal B. much C. the number D.each

1. Nowadays, cyberbullying has been receiving\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_public attention.

A. few B. much C. many D. plenty

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ article in this newspaper is very interesting.

A. Both B. Few C. All D. Every

1. The plan has been opposed by schools, businesses and\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_local organizations.

A. another B. the other C.other D.others

1. There’s\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in the drawer - I took everything out

A. something B. nothing C. eveything D. Anything

1. She’s a bit worried about moving to a big city where she won’t know\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. anybody B. somebody C. anybody D.nobody

1. She planted\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_trees in the garden.

A. lots B. plenty C. lots of D. a wide range

1. The man was waiting on\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_side of the street.

A. other B. the other C. another D. others

1. We all got wet in the rain because\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_had an umbrella.

A. some B. no C. none D. most

1. I don’t think\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_desk will fit into this classroom.

A. another B. others C.other D. the others

1. “Which song will you sing?” - “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_song you want.”

A. no B. not C. any D. None

**MODULE 14 : MODAL VERB**

**CÁCH DÙNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIẾU**

**1. CAN/ BE ABLE TO**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **CAN** | **BE ABLE TO** |
| **“be able to”** và **“can”** để diễn tả một khả năng hay sự có thể. Tuy nhiên, **“can”** không có dạng tương lai nên ta sử dụng **“will be able to”** | |
| Dùng để diễn tả những điều có thể làm do khả năng, *năng khiếu* của bản thân  Ví dụ:  I can swim. (= I have the ability to swim). | Dùng để diễn tả những điều có thể làm do *cố gắng, xoay xở* mới làm được  Ví dụ:  In spite of his broken leg, he was able to get out of the burning house. |

**2. MUST/ HAVE TO**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **MUST** | **HAVE TO** |
| Cả **“must”** và **“have to”** đều có nghĩa là “cần phải/ phải” | |
| Diễn tả sự cần thiết phải làm gì nhưng là do chủ quan (tự bản thân nhận thức thấy)  Ví dụ:  I must phone my sister. (=> I am aware that this is necessary). | Diễn tả sự cần thiết phải làm gì nhưng là do *khách quan* (nội quy, quy định...)  Ví dụ:  Students have to go to school on time. (=> It’s school’s regulation). |

**3. NEED**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **NEED (cần)** | |
| **“Need”** vừa là động từ thường, vừa là động từ khuyết thiếu | |
| **Need là động từ thường**  - Nó phải dùng trợ động từ khi thành lập câu phủ định và nghi vấn  - Động từ theo sau nó phải dùng dạng “to infinitive”  Ví dụ:  She needs to see you.  She doesn’t need to see you. | **Need là động từ khuyết thiếu**  - Khi là động từ khuyết thiếu NEED chỉ có hình thức hiện tại và có đầy đủ đặc tính của một động từ khuyết thiếu.  Ví dụ:  Need he work so hard?  You needn’t go yet, need you? |

**4. MUSTN’T/ NEEDN’T**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **MUSTN’T** | **NEEDN’T** |
| **MUSTN’T** (không được phép): mang ý cấm đoán.  Ví dụ: You mustn’t drink it. It is poisonous. | **NEEDN’T (không cần thiết):** mang ý nghĩa không bắt buộc.  Ví dụ: You needn’t hurry. We still have a lot time to do it. |

**5. SHOULD/ OUGHT TO**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **SHOULD** | **OUGHT TO** |
| **“should”** và **“ought to”** đều có nghĩa là “nên” dùng để đưa ra lời khuyên, ý kiến | |
| Chỉ sự bắt buộc hay bổn phận nhưng ở mức độ nhẹ hơn “Must”.  Ví dụ:  - You should send this report by 8th September. | Chỉ sự bắt buộc. Mạnh hơn “Should” nhưng chưa bằng “Must”.  Ví dụ:  She really ought to apologize. |

**6. SHALL/ WILL**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **SHALL** | **WILL** |
| **“shall”** và **“will”** đều có nghĩa là “sẽ” dùng để đưa ra một quyết định tại thời điểm nói. “will” có thể đi được với tất cả các ngôi, còn “shall” chỉ được dùng với ngôi I/ we. | |
| - Dùng để xin ý kiến, đưa gợi ý.  Ví dụ:  Where shall we eat tonight?  - Người ta dùng cấu trúc “Shall I...” để đề nghị giúp ai.  Ví dụ:  Shall I carry the luggage for you? | - Diễn đạt, dự đoán sự việc xảy ra trong tương lai.  Ví dụ:  Tomorrow will be sunny.  - Người ta dùng cấu trúc “Will you...” để đề nghị ai giúp mình.  Ví dụ:  Will you give me her address? |

**7. MAY/ MIGHT**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **MAY** | **MIGHT** |
| **“may”** và **“might”** đều có nghĩa là “có lẽ” dùng để diễn tả điều gì có thể xảy ra nhưng không chắc . “Might” là quá khứ của “may” | |
| - Diễn tả điều gì có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại. | - Diễn tả điều gì có thể xảy ra ở quá khứ.  - “Might” được dùng không phải là quá khứ của “may” với mức độ “có thể” thấp hơn “may”. |

**8. CAN/ COULD**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **CAN** | **COULD** |
| **“can”** và **“could”** được dùng trong câu hỏi đề nghị, xin phép, yêu cầu. | |
| Diễn tả khả năng hiện tại hoặc tương lai mà một người có thể làm được gì, hoặc một sự việc có thể xảy ra.  Ví dụ: I can swim./ It can rain. | Diễn tả khả năng xảy ra trong quá khứ.  Ví dụ: My brother could speak English when he was five. |

**9. MODAL VERB + HAVE + VP2**

**COULD + HAVE + VP2:** chỉ những việc lẽ đã xảy ra nhưng trên thực tế thì không

**MAY/ MIGHT + HAVE + VP2:** chỉ những việc có thể đã xảy ra nhưng không chắc chắn.

**NEEDN’T + HAVE + VP2:** chỉ những việc lẽ ra đã không cần thiết phải làm nhưng đã làm.

**CAN’T + HAVE + VP2:** chỉ những việc không thể đã xảy ra vì có căn cứ, cơ sở rõ ràng

**MUST + HAVE + VP2:** chỉ sự suy đoán logic dựa trên những hiện tượng có thật ở quá khứ

**SHOULD + HAVE + VP2:** chỉ một việc lẽ ra đã phải xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng vì lý do nào đó lại không xảy ra.

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

*1. You are not allowed to take photos in the museum.*

A. You may take photos in the museum.

B.. You should take photos in the museum.

C. You mustn’t take photos in the museum.

D. You needn’t take photos in the museum.

*2. I’m certain that Joe attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.*

A. Joe could have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.

B.. Joe must have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.

C. Joe mightn’t have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.

D. Joe needn’t have attended the ceremony as he can vividly recount the event.

*3. I thought it was not necessary to book tickets for the film in advance, but I was wrong.*

A. I needn’t have booked tickets for the film in advance.

B.. I couldn’t have booked tickets for the film in advance.

C. I should have booked tickets for the film in advance.

D. I must have booked tickets for the film in advance.

4. *I’m sure that they had practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals*

A. They couldn’t have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals

B. They must have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals

C. They shouldn’t have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals

D. They might have practiced hard for the games as they won a lot of medals.

5. *It was wrong of you to criticise your son in front of his friends.*

A. You could have criticised your son in front of his friends.

B.. You must have criticised your son in front of his friends.

C. You mightn’t have criticised your son in front of his friends.

D. You shouldn’t have criticised your son in front of his friends.

6. *I’m sure Luisa was very disappointed when she failed the exam.*

A. Luisa must be very disappointed when she failed the exam.

B.. Luisa must have been very disappointed when she failed the exam.

C. Luisa may be very disappointed when she failed the exam.

D. Luisa could have been very disappointed when she failed the exam.

7. *I* *really believe my letter came as a great surprise to John.*

A. John might be very surprised to receive my letter.

B.. John might have been very surprised to receive my letter.

C. John must be very surprised to receive my letter.

D. John must have been very surprised to receive my letter.

*8. Sally paid for her travel in advance, but it wasn’t necessary.*

A. Sally needn’t have paid for her travel in advance.

B.. Sally might not have paid for her travel in advance.

C. Sally may not have paid for her travel in advance.

D. Sally couldn’t have paid for her travel in advance.

*9. You needn’t have taken so many warm clothes there.*

A. It was not necessary for you to take so many warm clothes there.

B.. You have taken so many warm clothes there that I don’t need.

C. There’s no need for you to take so many warm clothes there.

D. You took lots of warm clothes there but it turned out not necessary.

*10. Mary should never have been allowed to try to swim in the sea alone.*

A. When Mary let to swim in the sea alone, she said new what she was doing.

B.. It would probably be wrong to let Mary swims in the sea on her own.

C. No one could have stopped Mary from trying to swim in the sea by herself.

D. Someone ought to have stopped Mary from attempting to swim in the sea on her own.

*11. It was impossible that he forgot to wear the helmet.*

A. He should have worn the helmet

B.. He must have worn the helmet

C. He might have forgot to wear the helmet

D. He needn’t have forgot wearing the helmet

*12. The fishes had died. I’m sure he forgot to feed them.*

A. He must have forgot to feed the fishes.

B.. He should have fed the fishes.

C. He needn’t have fed the fishes.

D. He might have forgot feeding the fishes.

*13. His parents complained about his absence from school. It’s wrong of him not to tell them about that.*

A. He should have told his parents about his absence from school.

B.. He might have told his parents about his absence from school.

C. He must have told his parents about his absence from school.

D. He can have told his parents about his absence from school.

*14. I’m sure that she didn’t kill him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.*

1. She mustn’t have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.
2. She needn’t have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.
3. She can’t have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened.
4. She shouldn’t have killed him because she was with me at the supermarket when the murder happened

*15. Perhaps he will return before you call.*

A. He may be returning before you called.

B.. He may/might have returned before you called.

C. He should have returned before you called.

D. He may return before you call.

*16. You don’t need to type the letter right now. You can do it later.*

A. You mustn’t type the letter right now because you can do it later.

B.. You can’t have typed the letter right now because you can do it later.

C. You needn’t type the letter right now because you can do it later.

D. You needn’t have typed the letter right now because you can do it later.

*17. It’s against the law if you hunt the endangered species.*

A. You don’t need to hunt the endangered species.

B.. You mustn’t hunt the endangered species.

C. You needn’t hunt the endangered species.

D. You can’t hunt the endangered species.

*18. I’m sure he knew all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.*

A. He must be knowing all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.

B.. He should have known all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.

C. He must have known all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.

D. He might have known all about the secret because he was there when we were talking.

*19. It isn’t mandatory to submit my assignment today.*

A. I mustn’t submit my assignment today.

B.. My assignment must have been submitted today.

C. I needn’t submit my assignment today.

D. My assignment is required to submit by today.

*20. Tom went on and on apologizing about it, which was quite unnecessary.*

A. Tom can’t have apologized. I quite understand.

B.. Tom shouldn’t have apologized. I quite understand.

C. Tom wouldn’t have apologized. I quite understand.

D. Tom needn’t have apologized. I quite understand.

*21. It’s possible that she didn’t hear what I said.*

A. She might have not heard what I said.

B.. She might not hear what I said.

C. She may not hear what I said.

D. She may not have heard what I said.

*22. It’s was wrong of you to betray her because she was kind to you.*

A. You shouldn’t have betrayed her because she was kind to you.

B.. You needn’t have betrayed her because she was kind to you.

C. You can’t have betrayed her because she was kind to you.

D. You mustn’t have betrayed her because she was kind to you.

*23. I’m sure he did this because I saw him standing there.*

A. He must have done this because I saw him standing there.

B.. He can have done this because I saw him standing there.

C. He need have done this because I saw him standing there.

D. He may have done this because I saw him standing there.

*24. I’m sure it wasn’t Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.*

A. It mustn’t have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.

B.. It can’t have been Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.

C. It mightn’t be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.

D. It couldn’t be Mr. Pike you saw because he is in London.

*25. You have to do clean the house every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.*

A. The house has been cleaned every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.

B.. The house has to do by you every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.

C. The house has to be done every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.

D. The house have to be done every morning because there is a lot of smoke out there.

*26. It isn’t necessary for you to send her a letter today.*

A. Her letter must have been sent today.

B.. I mustn’t send her letter today.

C. Her letter was required to send today.

D. You needn’t send her a letter today.

*27. Is it possible for me to phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?*

A. Will I phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?

B.. Can I phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?

C. Must I phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?

D. Could phone you at about 10 pm tomorrow?

*28. It’s time for me to start to think about the job I will do in the future.*

A. I should start to think about the job I will do in the future.

B.. I may start to think about the job I will do in the future.

C. I needn’t start to think about the job I will do in the future.

D. I must have started to think about the job I will do in the future.

*29. James should have been told the news a long time ago.*

A. James did not tell the news a long time ago.

B.. James had not told the news for a long time.

C. James was not told the news although it was necessary for him.

D. James has not been told the news for a long time although he should know it.

*30. Smoking is not allowed in public places such as: hospitals, schools.*

A. You needn’t smoke in public places such as: hospitals, schools.

B.. You mustn’t smoke in public places such as: hospitals, schools.

C. You don’t smoke in public places such as: hospitals, schools.

D. You may smoke in public places such as: hospitals, schools.

**MODULE 15 : INVERSION**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **STT** | **Các dạng đảo ngữ** | **Công thức** | **Ví dụ** | |
| **1** | Các cụm từ có  **NO** | **No/ Not + N +** Trợ từ+ S+ Động từ | **Not a** tear did she shed when the story ended in a tragedy. | |
| **At no time = Never = Under/In no circumstances** (không bao giờ) | **At no time** did he suspect that his girlfriend was an enemy spy- | |
| **By no means** (hoàn toàn không) | **By no means** is she poor. She only pretends to be. | |
| **For no reason** (không vì lí do gì) | **For no reason** will we surrender. | |
| **In no way** (không sao có thể) | **In no way** could I believe in a ridiculous story. | |
| **On no condition = On no account +** Trợ từ+ S+ Động từ (dù bất cứ lí do gì cũng không) | **On no account** should you be late for the Exam. | |
| **No longer** (không còn nữa) | **No longer** does he make mistakes. | |
| **No where + Trợ từ+ S+ Động từ** (không nơi nào, không ở đâu) | **No where** can the keys be found. | |
| **2** | Đảo ngữ với **các trạng từ phủ định** | **Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly , Scarcely, Barely,...** | **Little** did he know the truth.  **Never** in my life have I been in such an embarrassing situation. | |
| **3** | Đảo ngữ với  **ONLY** | **Only after + S + V +** Trợ từ + S + V  (chỉ sau khi) | **Only after** I had left home did I realize how important my family played a role in my life. | |
| **Only after +** N + Trợ từ + S + V  (chỉ sau khi) | **Only after** his father’s retirement did he take over the company. | |
| **Only by +** Ving + Trợ từ + S + V  (chỉ bằng cách) | **Only by** studying hard can you pass the exam. | |
| **Only if +** S + V + Trợ từ + S + V (chỉ nếu) | **Only if** you promise to keep secret will I tell you about it. | |
| **Only when +** S + V + Trợ từ + S + V (chỉ khi) | **Only when** you grow up can you understand this matter. | |
| **Only with +** N + trợ từ + S + V (chỉ với) | **Only with** your help can we manage. | |
| **Only once/ Only later/ Only in this way/ Only then +** Trợ từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ | **Only once** have I met her.  **Only later** did I realize I was wrong. | |
| **4** | **Hardly**  **No sooner** | **Hardly/barely/scarcely +** had + S + Vp2+ **when +** S + V(quá khứ đơn)  **= No sooner** + had + S + Vp2+ **than +** S + V(quá khứ đơn)  (ngay khi/ vừa mới thì) | **Hardly** had I gone to bed **when** the telephone rang.  **= No sooner** had I gone to bed **than** the telephone rang. | |
| **5** | **Not only ... but also** | **Not only +** Trợ từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ + **but +** Chủ ngữ + **also +** Động từ  (không những ....mà còn) | **Not only** does she sing beautifully **but** she **also** learns well. | |
| **6** | **So/Such .... that** | **So +** Tính từ + V + chủ ngữ + that + clause  **Such +** be + N + that + clause/ N + be + such + that + clause (quá... đến nỗi mà) | **So** beautiful is she that many boys run after her.  Her anger was **such** that she broke the vase.  **= Such** was her anger that she broke the vase. | |
| **7** | **Not until/**  **Not till** | **Not until/till +** Time/Time clause + Trợ từ+ Chủ ngữ + Động từ  (mãi đến khi) | **Not until/till** midnight did he come home.  **Not until/tỉll** I was 8 did I know how to ride a bike. | |
| **8** | **Neither** | **Neither +** Trợ từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ | **Neither** is there excitement nor entertainment in this small town. | |
| **9** | Đảo ngữ với **câu điêu**  **kiện** | **Câu điều kiện loại 1:**  Should +S + V, V+0/S + will, can...+ V | **Should** he come, please tell him to see me. | |
| **Câu điêu kiện loại 2:**  Were + S + (to V) + .., S + would/could + V | **Were** I you, I would apply for that job.  **Were** I to have enough money, I would buy that car. | |
| **Câu điêu kiện loại 3:**  Had + S + Vp2, S + would/could + have + Vp2 | **Had** the car in the front not stopped so suddenly, the accidents wouldn’t have happened. | |
| **10** | **Although** | Although/even though/though + S + V, S + V  **= Much as** + S + V, S + V  **= No matter** what + S + V, S + V hoặc No matter how + adj/adv + S + V, S + V  **= However +** adj/adv + S + V  = Adj/adv + **as/though +** S + V, S + V | Although the exercise is difficult, the boys can solve it.  **= Much as** the exercise is difficult, the boys can solve it.  **= No matter** how difficult the exercise is, the boys can solve it.  **= However** difficult the exercise is, the boys can solve it.  = Difficult **as** the exercise is, the boys can solve it. |
| **11** | **NOR** | **Nor +** Trợ từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ | He doesn’t smoke, **nor** does he drink. |
| **12** | **Đảo ngữ có SO/NEITHER** | **So/ Neither +** Trợ từ + Chủ ngữ | I can’t sing well, neither **can** my sister.  He loves football, **so** do I. |
| **13** | Đảo ngữ với các trạng từ chỉ **phương hướng/nơi chốn** | **Adv of place +** V + S | **Near my house** is a bus stop. |
| **14** | Đảo ngữ với **cụm phân từ** | **Cụm phân từ** (Ving/Vp2) + V + ‘S | **Situated** in the central mountains of Alaska is a peak named Denali.  **Coming** in first in the race was my sister. |

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

*1. Olga handed in her exam paper. She then realised that she had missed one question.*

1. Having realised that she had missed one question, Olga handed in her exam paper.
2. Not until Olga had handed in her exam paper did she realise that she had missed one question.
3. Had Olga realised that she had missed one question, she wouldn’t hand in her exam paper.
4. Only after Olga realised that she had missed one question did she hand in her exam paper.

*2. He badly suffered cyberbullying himself He realized the true dangers of social media only then.*

1. Not until he had badly suffered cyberbullying himself did he realize the true dangers of social media
2. Such was his suffering of cyberbullying that he didn’t realize the true dangers of social media.
3. Only when he had realized the true dangers of social media did he badly suffer cyberbullying himself.
4. But for his terrible suffering of cyberbullying, he wouldn’t realize the true dangers of social media.

*3. The coach changed his tactics in the second half. His football team won the match.*

1. But for the coach’s change of tactics in the second half, his football team could have won the match.
2. Not until his football team had won the match did the coach change his tactics in the second half.
3. Only if the coach had changed the tactics in the second half could his football team have won the match.
4. Had it not been for the coach’s change of tactics in the second half, the football team wouldn’t have won the match.

*4. The green campaign was strongly supported by the local people. The neighborhood looks fresh and clean now.*

1. Had the local people not strongly supported the green campaign, the neighborhood wouldn’t look fresh and clean now.
2. sacredly had the green campaign been strongly supported by the local people when the neighborhood looked fresh and clean.
3. Only if the local people had strongly supported the green campaign would the neighborhood look fresh and clean now.
4. But for the strong support of the local people for the green campaign, the neighborhood would look fresh and clean now.

*5. Smartphones are becoming reasonably priced. New applications make them more appealing.*

1. Whatever new applications smartphones have, they are becoming more appealing with reasonable prices.
2. No matter how reasonable the prices OS smartphones are, they are not so appealing with new applications.
3. Appealing though smartphones are with new applications, they are becoming less affordably priced.
4. Not only are smartphones becoming more affordable but, with new applications, they are also more appealing*.*

*6. She tried very hard to pass the driving test. She could hardly pass it.*

1. Although she didn’t try hard to pass the driving test, she could pass it.
2. Despite being able to pass the driving test, she didn’t pass it.
3. No matter how hard she tried, she could hardly pass the driving test.
4. She tried very hard, so she passed the driving test satisfactorily.

*7. Mary left home to start an independent life. She realised how much her family meant to her.*

1. Only when Mary realised how much her family meant to her did she leave home to start an independent life.
2. To realise how much her family meant to her, Mary decided to leave home to start an independent life.
3. Not until Mary had left home to start an independent life did she realise how much her family meant to her.
4. Mary left home to start an independent life with a view to realising how much her family meant to her.

*8. Laura practised playing the instrument a lot. She could hardly improve her performance.*

1. Hardly had Laura practised playing the instrument a lot when she could improve her performance.
2. Had Laura practised playing the instrument a lot, she could have performed much better.
3. However much Laura practised playing die instrument, she could hardly perform any better.
4. As soon as Laura practised playing the instrument a lot, she could perform much better.

*9. His friends supported and encouraged him. He did really well in the competition.*

1. If his friends had given him support and encouragement, he could have done really well in the competition.
2. No matter how much his friends supported and encouraged him, he couldn’t do well in the competition.
3. Such were his friends’ support and encouragement that he couldn’t do really well in the competition.
4. Had it not been for his friends’ support and encouragement, he couldn’t have done so well in the competition.

*10. She gave a great performance at the festival. We now know she has artistic talent.*

1. Amazing as her artistic talent is, we don’t know about her great performance at the festival.
2. Hardly had we known about her artistic talent when she gave a great performance at the festival.
3. Although she gave a great performance at the festival, now we still don’t know she has artistic talent.
4. But for her great performance at the festival, we wouldn’t know about her artistic talent now.

*11. Peter told US about his leaving the school. He did it on his arrival at the meeting.*

1. Only after his leaving the school did Peter inform US of his arrival at the meeting.
2. Not until Peter told US that he would leave the school did he arrive at the meeting.
3. Hardly had Peter informed US about his leaving the school when he arrived at the meeting.
4. No sooner had Peter arrived at the meeting than he told US about his leaving the school.

*12. Mike became a father. He felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.*

1. Were Mike to become a father himself, he would feel a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.
2. Only after Mike had become a father himself did he feel a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.
3. Had Mike become a father himself, he would have felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.
4. Not until he felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents did Mike become a father himself.

*13. He had hardly left the office when the phone rang.*

1. No sooner had he left the office than the phone rang.
2. No sooner he had left the office than the phone rang.
3. No sooner he had left the office when the phone rang.
4. No sooner he did left the office than the phone rang.

*14. No matter how hard Fred tried to start the car, he didn’t succeed.*

1. Fred tried very hard to start the car, and succeeded.
2. However hard Fred tried, he couldn’t start the car.
3. It’s hard for Fred to start the car because he never succeeded.
4. Fred tried hard to start the car, and with success

*15. Although he was very tired, he agreed to help his child with his homework.*

1. Despite of his tiredness, he was eager to help his child with his homework.
2. Tired as he was, he agreed to help his child with his homework.
3. Even if feeling very tired, he agreed to help his child with his homework.
4. He would have helped his child with his homework if he hadn’t been tired.

*16. The noise next door did not stop until after midnight.*

1. It was not until after midnight that the noise next door stopped.
2. It was midnight that the noise next door stopped.
3. Not until after midnight did the noise next door stopped
4. The noise next door stopped at midnight.

*17. Exhaustion prevented any of the runners from finishing the race.*

1. The runners can’t finish the race as a result of their exhaustion.
2. The runners are so exhausted that they can’t finish the race,
3. The runners were not exhausted enough to finish the race.
4. So exhausted were the runners that none of them finished the race.

*18. He started computer programming as soon as he left school.*

1. No sooner had he started computer programming than he left school.
2. Hardly had he started computer programming when he left school.
3. No sooner had he left school than he started computer programming.
4. After he left school, he had started computer programming.

*19. We stayed in that hotel despite the noise.*

1. Despite the hotel is noisy, we stayed here.
2. We stayed in the noisy hotel and we liked it.
3. No matter how noisy the hotel was, we stayed there.
4. Because of the noise, we stayed in the hotel.

*20. Friendly though he may seem, he’s not very trusted.*

1. However he seems friendly, he’s not to be trusted.
2. However friendly he seems, he’s not to be trusted.
3. He may have friends, but he’s not to be trusted.
4. He’s too friendly to be trusted.

*21. Despite his early retirement, he found no peace in life.*

1. Although he retired early, but he found no peace in life.
2. His early retirement has brought him peace in life.
3. He found no peace in life because he retired early.
4. Early as he retired, he found no peace in life.

*22. It wasn’t clear to US at the time how serious the problem was.*

1. We were not sure about how serious the problem was at the time.
2. That the problem was serious was not made clear to US.
3. Little did we know anything about the seriousness of the problem.
4. Little did we realise at the time how serious the problem was.

*23. If you want to save your eyesight, you must operate immediately.*

1. Unless you want to save your eyesight, you mustn’t operate immediately.
2. Only by operating immediately can you save your eyesight.
3. Provided that you must operate immediately, you can save your eyesight.
4. If you did operate immediately, you couldn’t save your eyesight.

*24. I only realized what I had missed when they told me about it later.*

1. Only after I had realized what I had missed did they tell me about it later.
2. As soon as they told me about it I realized what I had missed.
3. Only when they told me about it later did I realize what I had missed.
4. They told me about it and I realized what I had missed.

*25. The demand was so great that they had to reprint the book immediately.*

1. So great was the demand that they had to reprint the book immediately.
2. So great the demand was that they had to reprint the book immediately.
3. Such great was the demand that they had to reprint the book immediately.
4. Such was the demand great that they had to reprint the book immediately.

*26. You won’t find a more dedicated worker anywhere than Mrs Jones.*

1. Mrs Jones is the most dedicated worker you won’t find anywhere.
2. Nowhere will you find a more dedicated worker than Mrs Jones.
3. Nowhere will not you find a more dedicated worker than Mrs Jones.
4. Mrs Jones can’t be found in nowhere.

*27. The outcome of the election was never in doubt.*

1. At no time was the outcome of the election in doubt.
2. At no time the outcome of the election was in doubt.
3. Never in doubt was the outcome of the election.
4. By no means was the outcome of the election been suspected.

*28. The only way to eliminate world terrorism is by united opposition.*

1. Only with united opposition could we eliminate terrorism.
2. Only by united opposition can we eliminate terrorism.
3. Only in this way can world terrorism be eliminated.
4. Only then can we eliminate terrorism.

*29. He forgot about the gun until he got home.*

1. Not until he got home did he forget about the gun.
2. Not until he got home did he remember about the gun.
3. Not until he had got home did he remember about the gun.
4. Not until he had got home did he forget about the gun.

*30. The truth only came out on the publication of the general’s personal diaries.*

1. Only by publishing the general’s personal diaries, did the truth come out.
2. Not until the general’s personal diaries published did the truth come out.
3. Hardly were the general’s personal diaries published than the truth came out.
4. Only when the general’s personal diaries were published did the truth come out.

**MODULE 16:**

**DANH ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU (GERUND AND INFINITIVE)**

***.1. Những động từ theo sau bởi “Ving”***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **STT** | **Cấu trúc** | **Nghĩa** |
| 1 | **Admit doing st** | thú nhận làm gì |
| 2 | **Deny doing st** | phủ nhận làm gì |
| 3 | **Appreciate doing st** | cảm kích làm gì |
| 4 | **Avoid doing st** | tránh làm gì |
| 5 | **Delay/postpone/put off doing st** | hoãn lại làm gì |
| 6 | **Hate/detest/resent doing st** | ghét làm gì |
| 7 | **Enjoy/fancy doing st** | thích làm gì |
| 8 | **Imagine doing st** | tưởng tượng làm gì |
| 9 | **Involve doing st** | có liên quan làm gì |
| 10 | **Keep doing st** | cứ làm gì |
| 11 | **Mention doing st** | đề cập làm gì |
| 12 | **Mind doing st** | phiền/ngại làm gì |
| 13 | **Miss doing st** | suýt, lỡ làm gì |
| 14 | **Tolerate doing st** | chịu đựng làm gì |
| 15 | **Practice doing st** | thực hành làm gì |
| 16 | **Recall doing st** | nhớ lại làm gì |
| 17 | **Consider doing st** | xem xét, cân nhắc làm gì |
| 18 | **Resist doing st** | phản đối làm gì |
| 19 | **Risk doing st** | liều lĩnh làm gì |
| 20 | **Suggest doing st** | gợi ý làm gì |
| 21 | **Finish doing st** | hoàn thành làm gì |
| 22 | **Recommend doing st** | đề xuất làm gì |
| 23 | **Be busy doing st** | bận làm gì |
| 24 | **Be worth doing st** | đáng làm gì |
| 25 | **Look forward to doing st** | mong đợi làm gì |
| 26 | **Feel like doing st** | thích/muốn làm gì |
| 27 | **There is no point in doing st**  **= It’s no use/good doing st** | không đáng làm gì |
| 28 | **Get/be accustomed/used to doing st** | quen làm gì |
| 29 | **Spend time doing st** | dành thời gian làm gì |
| 30 | **Waste time doing st** | lãng phí thời gian làm gì |
| 31 | **Have difficulty (in) doing st** | gặp khó khăn trong việc làm gì |
| 32 | **Can’t help/stand/bear doing st** | không thể chịu/nhịn được |

***2. Những động từ theo sau bởi “TO V”***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **STT** | **Cấu trúc** | **Nghĩa** |
| 1 | **Afford to do st** | có đủ khả năng làm gì |
| 2 | **Agree to do st** | đồng ý làm gì |
| 3 | **Arrange to do st** | sắp xếp làm gì |
| 4 | **Appear to do st** | hóa ra là |
| 5 | **Ask to do st** | yêu cầu làm gì |
| 6 | **Attempt to do st** | nỗ lực làm gì |
| 7 | **Care to do st** | quan tâm làm gì |
| 8 | **Choose to do st** | chọn làm gì |
| 9 | **Claim to do st** | thú nhận làm gì |
| 10 | **Decide to do st** | quyết định làm gì |
| 11 | **Demand to do st** | yêu cầu làm gì |
| 12 | **Deserve to do st** | xứng đáng làm gì |
| 13 | **Expect to do st** | mong muốn làm gì |
| 14 | **Fail to do st** | thất bại làm gì |
| 15 | **Happen to do st** | tình cờ làm gì |
| 16 | **Hesitate to do st** | ngập ngừng làm gì |
| 17 | **Hope to do st** | hy vọng làm gì |
| 18 | **Intend to do st** | dự định làm gì |
| 19 | **Learn to do st** | học làm gì |
| 20 | **Manage to do st** | xoay xở làm gì |
| 21 | **Neglect to do st** | sao nhãng làm gì |
| 22 | **Offer to do st** | đề nghị làm gì |
| 23 | **Plan to do st** | có kế hoạch làm gì |
| 24 | **Prepare to do st** | chuẩn bị làm gì |
| 25 | **Pretend to do st** | giả vờ làm gì |
| 26 | **Promise to do st** | hứa làm gì |
| 27 | **Propose to do st** | đề xuất làm gì |
| 28 | **Refuse to do st** | từ chối làm gì |
| 29 | **Seem to do st** | dường như làm gì |
| 30 | **Swear to do st** | thề làm gì |
| 31 | **Tend to do st** | có khuynh hướng làm gì |
| 32 | **Threaten to do st** | dọa làm gì |
| 33 | **Vow to do st** | thề làm gì |
| 34 | **Wait to do st** | chờ làm gì |
| 35 | **Want to do st** | muốn làm gì |
| 36 | **Wish to do st** | ước mơ làm gì |
| 37 | **Would like to do st** | muốn, thích làm gì |
| 38 | **Yearn/desire to do st** | khát khao làm gì |
| 39 | **Ask/tell sb to do st** | bảo ai đó làm gì |
| 40 | **Assume sb to do st** | cho rằng ai đó làm gì |
| 41 | **Beg sb to do st** | cãu xin ai làm gì |
| 42 | **Believe sb to do st** | tin tưởng ai làm gì |
| 43 | **Cause sb to do st** | khiến cho ai làm gì |
| 44 | **Challenge sb to do st** | mời ai đó tham gia vào |
| 45 | **Command sb to do st** | yêu cầu ai làm gì |
| 46 | **Compel sb to do st** | bắt buộc ai làm gì |
| 47 | **Consider sb to do st** | xem xét ai làm gì |
| 48 | **Enable sb to do st** | làm cho ai có thể làm gì |
| 49 | **Encourage sb to do st** | khuyến khích ai làm gì |
| 50 | **Expect sb to do st** | mong đợi làm gì |
| 51 | **Forbid sb to do st** | cấm ai làm gì |
| 52 | **Force sb to do st** | ép ai đó làm gì |
| 53 | **Get sb to do st** | bảo ai đó làm gì |
| 54 | **Instruct sb to do st** | chỉ dẫn ai làm gì |
| 55 | **Invite sb to do st** | mời ai đó làm gì |
| 56 | **Order sb to do st** | ra lệnh cho ai làm gì |
| 57 | **Prefer sb to do st** | muốn ai đó làm gì hơn |
| 58 | **Persuade sb to do st** | thuyết phục ai làm gì |
| 59 | **Remind sb to do st** | nhắc nhở ai làm gì |
| 60 | **Request sb to do st** | đòi hỏi ai làm gì |
| 61 | **Warn sb not to do st** | cảnh báo ai không làm gì |
| 62 | **Teach sb to do st** | dạy ai làm gì |
| 63 | **Urge sb to do st** | hối thúc ai làm gì |
| 64 | **Tempt sb to do st** | xúi giục ai làm gì |
| 65 | **Want sb to do st** | muốn ai đó làm gì |
| 66 | **To/in order to/so as to + V** | để làm gì (chỉ mục đích) |
| 67 | **It takes sb + time + to V** | ai đó tốn bao nhiêu thời gian để làm gì |
| 68 | **Be about to V = be going to V** | chuẩn bị làm gì |
| 69 | **How/when/where/what/who/whether+ To V** | | |
| 70 | **Find it adj + to V** | thấy cái gì như thế nào để làm gì | |
| 71 | **The first/second/ third/..../last/ only + to V** | đầu tiên/thứ hai/thứ ba,..../cuối cùng/duy nhất làm gì | |

***.3. Những động từ theo sau bởi cả “TO V, Ving hoặc V(bare)”***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **STT** | **Cấu trúc** | **Nghĩa** |
| 1 | **Try to do st**  **Try doing st** | cố gắng làm gì  thử làm gì |
| 2 | **Remember to do st**  **Remember doing st** | nhớ phải làm gì  nhớ đã làm gì |
| 3 | **Forget to do st**  **Forget doing st** | quên phải làm gì  quên đã làm gì |
| 4 | **Advise sb to do st**  **Advise doing st** | khuyên ai đó làm gì  khuyên làm gì |
| 5 | **Allow/permit sb to do st**  **Allow/permit doing st** | cho phép ai đó làm gì  cho phép làm gì |
| 6 | **Recommend sb to do st**  **Recommend doing st** | khuyên bảo/dặn/đề nghị ai đó làm gì  khuyên bảo/dặn/đề nghị làm gì |
| 7 | **Encourage sb to do st**  **Encourage doing st** | khuyến khích ai đó làm gì  khuyến khích làm gì |
| 8 | **Mean to do st**  **Mean doing st** | dự định làm gì  có nghĩa là |
| 9 | **Regret to do st**  **Regret doing st** | rất lấy làm tiếc khi phải làm gì  hối tiếc vì đã làm gì |
| 10 | **Go on to do st**  **Go on doing st** | tiếp tục làm điều gì sau khi hoàn tất một công việc  chỉ sự liên tục của hành động |
| 11 | **V(tri giác) + 0 + V(bare)**  **Ving** | khi chứng kiến toàn bộ sự việc  khi chứng kiến một phần sự việc |
| 12 | **Stop to do st**  **Stop doing st** | dừng lại để làm gì  dừng hẳn làm gì |
| 13 | **Need to do st**  **Need doing st** | cần phải làm gì  cần phải được làm |
| 14 | **Help sb do/to do st** | giúp ai đó làm gì |
| 15 | **Have sb do st = get sb to do st**  **Have/get st done** | nhờ ai đó làm gì  có cái gì được làm bởi ai |
| 16 | **Used to do st**  **Be/get used to doing st** | thường làm gì trong quá khứ  thường làm gì ở hiện tại |

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

1. Students stopped\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_noise when the teacher came in.

A. make B. to make C. making D. made

2. She couldn’t bear\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ tears when she saw the film “Romeo and Juliet”.

A. shed B. to shed C. shedding D. sheds

3. Ann likes\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ but she hates\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ up.

A. cook/washing B. to cook/wash C. cooking/washed D. cooking/washing

4. I’d expected\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ weight on when I gave up smoking, but I didn’t.

A. to put B. putting C. to putting D. put

5. I enjoy\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to classical music.

A. listening B. to listen C. listens D. listen

6. I really regret\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ your feeling when I asked you such a silly question.

A. hurt B. to hurt C. hurting D. hurts

7. He’ll try the same mistake again.

A. not make B. to not make C. not making D. not to make

8. Would you mind me a newspaper?

A. buy B. to buy C. buying D. bought

9. Would you like the next dance with me?

A. to have B. having C. has D. had

10. It is no use - no one ever gets out of here.

A. trying to escape B. to try to escape C. trying escaping D. to try escaping

11. Did you remember\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Ann? - Oh, no. I completely forgot it.

A. phone B. to phone C. phoning D. phoned

12. Does the city government intend\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_anything about pollution?

A. do B. to do C. doing D.did

13. Those shirts need\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_but you needn’t\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_them now.

A. iron/iron B. to iron/to iron C. ironing/iron D. ironed/to iron

14. They finished\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_and then they wanted\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_out for pleasure.

A. learn/to go B. to learn/go C. learnt/goes D. learning/to go

15. I hope\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that tiring work again.

A. not do B. not to do C. not doing D. to not do

16. They postponed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_an Element School for the lack of finance.

A. built B. to build C. building D. builds

17. It’s no use\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him. He never allows anybody\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him advice.

A. advise/give B. to advise/to give C. advising/giving D. advising/to give

18. Are his ideas worth\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to?

A. listen B. to listen C. listening D. listened

19. He always avoids\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me in the streets.

A. meet B. to meet C. met D. meeting

20. My parents decided\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a taxi because it was late.

A. take B. to take C. taking D. took

21. Do you agree\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me some money?

A. lend B. to lend C. lending D. lent

22. Tom refuses\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his address.

A. give B. giving C. to give D. gave

23. The passengers asked her how\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the police station?

A. to get B. getting C. got D. get

24. My friends arranged\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at the airport in time.

A. meet B. to meet C. meeting D. met

25. Do you plan\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ out or\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at home at this weekend?

A. go/stay B. to go/stay C. going/stay D. to go/staying

26. I dislike\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in line.- So do I. That’s why I prefer\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at night when there are fewer people in the supermarket.

A. wait/shop B. to wait/shopping C. waiting/shopping D. waiting/to shop

27. He continued\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ after his illness.

A. worked B. to work C. to working D. working

28. My watch’s hands keep\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. stopping B. to stop C. stopped D. stop

29. My grandfather is used to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ up early in the morning.

A. getting B. to get C. get D. got

30. Don’t forget\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her my message when you see her.

A. give B. to give C. giving D. gave

31. I can’t help\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his opinions.

A. consider B. to consider C. considering D. considered

32. You should try\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ any shirts you want to buy.

A. wear B. to wear C. wearing D. wears

33. He used to fall asleep without \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his shoes off.

A. take B. to take C. taking D. taken

34. He spent many hours \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to repair his car.

A. try B. to try C. trying D. tries

35. Mary agreed \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the circus with Ann.

A. went B. to go C. going D. goes

36. Mike is considering \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a new car.

A. bought B. to buy C. buying D. buys

37. Mrs. Green prefers\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ TV to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema.

A. watching/go B. to watch/going C. watching/going D. watches/go

38. She expects\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ him tomorrow, but I look forward to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ him right away.

A. see/see B. to see/see C. see/seeing D. to see/seeing

39. They advised me \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a raincoat.

A. wear B. to wear C. wearing D. wore

40. You’d better\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ what you think in front of the conference.

A. say B. to say C. saying D. said

41. I regret\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ able to attend your birthday party yesterday.

A. not to be B. to not be C. not be D. not being

42. I had to ask the boys\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ billiards all the day.

A. to stop/playing B. to stop/to play C. stopping/playing D. stops/to play

43. My teacher promised \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for my next examination.

A. help/prepare B. to help/prepare C. helping/to prepare D. helped/preparing

44. Did you manage\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ these parcels alone?

A. finishing/to pack B. finishing/packing C. to finish/to pack D. to finish/packing

45. American women have got used to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ independently recently.

A. live B. to live C. living D. lives

46. We won’t let you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ what we are going to do with him.

A. know B. to know C. knowing D. known

47. I suggest\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ money for the poor people in our neighborhood.

A. save B. to save C. saving D. saved

48. The candidates are not allowed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ their mobile phones for their exams.

A. take B. to take C. taking D. takes

49. This coffee is too hot for me\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. to drink B. drinking C. drunk D. drink

50. My English teacher encouraged me\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ English grammar more carefully.

A. to learn B. learn C. learning D. being learned

**MODULE 17:**

**CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)**

**Câu điều kiện** dùng để nêu lên một giả thiết về một sự việc, mà sự việc đó chỉ có thể xảy ra khi điều kiện được nói đến xảy ra.

*Câu điều kiện gồm có hai phần (hai mệnh đề):*

+ Mệnh đề chính (main clause) là mệnh đề chỉ kết quả.

+ Mệnh đề if (if-clause) là mệnh đề phụ chỉ điều kiện.

Hai mệnh đề trong câu điều kiện có thể đổi chỗ cho nhau được. Nếu muốn nhấn mạnh điều kiện, ta đặt if-clause ở đầu câu và có dấu phẩy (,) ở giữa hai mệnh đề. Nếu muốn nhấn mạnh kết quả, ta đặt “main clause” ở đầu và giữa hai mệnh đề không có dấu phẩy.

**Các loại câu điêu kiện**

Có 3 loại câu điều kiện: **Loại 1** (câu điều kiện có thật trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai), **loại 2** (câu điều kiện không có thật trong hiện tại), **loại 3** (câu điều kiện không có thật trong quá khứ).

***3.1. Câu điều kiện loại 1***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng** |
| **If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), S + will/can/may/should/ought to/must + V**  If it rains, we will stay at home.  (Nếu *trời mưa, chúng tôi sẽ ở nhà).* | - diễn tả về tình huống có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai. |
| **If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), V/don’t V + ...**  If you know the answer, raise your hand.  (Nếu *bạn biết câu trả lời, hãy giơ tay).*  If you need the help, don’t hesitate to call me.  *(Nếu bạn cấn giúp đỡ, đừng chần chừ gọi cho mình nhé).* | - dùng để đưa ra lời chỉ dẫn, yêu cầu hoặc mệnh lệnh. |
| **If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), S + V(hiện tại đơn)**  If you eat too much, you are overweight.  *(Nếu bạn ăn nhiều, bạn sẽ béo phì).*  If you put a bowl of water in the sun, it evaporates.  *(Nếu bạn để một bát nước dưới trời nắng, nó sẽ bốc hơn).* | - diễn tả sự thật hiển nhiên, một quy luật tự nhiên hoặc một hành động xảy ra thường xuyên. |
| **Should + S + V (bare), S + will/can/may...+ V**  Should you see her, remind her to call me as soon as possible.  *(Nếu bạn gặp cô ấy, nhắc cô ấy gọi cho mình càng sớm càng tốt nhé”).* | - để câu nói thêm trang trọng ta dùng đảo ngữ (thay “if’ bằng “should”) |

***3.2. Câu điều kiện loại 2***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng** |
| **If + S + V(quá khứ đơn), S + would/could/might + V(bare)**  If I had money now, I would buy a new car.  *(Nếu tôi có tiền bây giờ, tôi sẽ mua một chiếc ô tô mới).* | - diễn tả những giả định trái ngược với thực tế ở hiện tại |
| **Were + S + (to V)... , S + would/could/might + V(bare)**  Were you in my situation, what would you do?  *(Bạn sẽ làm gì nếu bạn ở trong hoàn cảnh của tôi?)* | - để câu nói thêm trang trọng ta dùng đảo ngữ |

***3.3. Câu điều kiện loại 3***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng** |
| **If + S + V(quá khứ hoàn thành), S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2**  If I had seen the football match last night, I would have told you about it.  *(Nếu tối qua tôi xem trận bóng đó, tôi đã có thể kể với bạn về nó).* | - diễn tả những giả định trái ngược với thực tế ờ quá khứ. |
| **Had + S + Vp2, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2**  Had I known you were coming to Ha Noi, I wouldn’t have gone on holiday.  *(Nếu tôi biết bạn tới Hà Nội thì tôi có lẽ đã không đi du lịch).* | - để câu nói thêm trang trọng ta dùng đảo ngữ (đảo “had” của mệnh đề “if” lên đầu). |
| **If it hadn’t been for + N, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2**  **= Had it not been for + N, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2**  **= But for/without + N, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2**  (nếu không có....thì...đã)  If it hadn’t been for his father’s help, he wouldn’t have succeeded.  = Had it not been for his father’s help, he wouldn’t have succeeded.  = But for/without his father’s help, he wouldn’t have succeeded.  *(Nếu không có sự giúp đỡ của bô’ anh ấy, anh ấy có lẽ đã không thành công).* | - để nhấn mạnh danh từ trong câu điều kiện loại 3. |

***3.4. Câu điều kiện kết hợp***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Công thức** | **Cách dùng** |
| **If + S + V(quá khứ hoàn thành), S + would/could + V(bare)**  If I had had breakfast, I wouldn’t feel hungry now.  *(Nếu tôi đã ăn sáng thì bây giờ tôi đã không thấy đói).* | kết hợp câu điều kiện loại 3 và loại 2. |
| **If + S + V(quá khứ đơn), S + would/could/might + have + Vp2**  If I didn’t I have to go to school today, I would have gone on holiday with my parents yesterday.  *(Nếu như hôm nay tôi không phải đi học thì có lẽ hôm qua tôi đã đi nghỉ mát với ba mẹ rồi).* | kết hợp câu điều kiện loại 2 và loại 3. |

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he would have been able to pass the exam.

A. If he had been studied more B. Had he studied more

C. If he studied more D. If he studies more

2. According to some historians, if Napoleon had not invaded Russia, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the rest of the world.

A. had conquered B. would conquer C. would have conquered D. conquered

3. Tony would have forgotten the appointment if I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him.

A. don’t remind B. didn’t remind C. hadn’t reminded D. reminded

4. “I’m going out now.” -”\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you happen to pass a chemist’s, please get me some aspirins.”

A. Had B. Should C. Did D. Were

5. “What would you do in my position?” - “Were\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_like that, I would complain to the manager.”

A. I be treated B. I treated C. I to be treated D. to treat

6. Had I studied harder, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_better in the last exam.

A. would do B. would have done

C. had done D. wouldn’t have done

7. The book would have been perfect\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the ending.

A. had it not been for B. it had not been for

C. it hadn’t been for D. hadn’t it been for

8. He said if he had not answered the phone at the petroleum station then, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a fine.

A. would pay B. hadn’t paid

C. had been paid D. wouldn’t have had to pay

9. If\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_taller, I might be better at basketball.

A. I am B. I were C. I had been D. were I

10. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the book, please return it to me.

A. Should you find B. You find C. Were you to find D. If you found

11. If she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_sick, she would have been to the party with me.

A. wasn’t B. hadn’t been C. hasn’t been D. weren’t

12. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_anyone object, the plan will be reconsidered.

A. If B. Should C. Do D. Might

13. Had I known that you were ill last week,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. I would have gone to see you B. I would go to see you

C. I will go to see you D. I shall have gone to see you

14. Students will not be allowed into the exam room if they\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_their student cards.

A. don’t show B. didn’t show C. showed D. hadn’t showed

15. Without your help, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the technical problem with my computer the other day.

A. wouldn’t solve B. couldn’t have solved

C. could solve D. can’t solve

16. If Martin were here now, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_US to solve this difficult problem.

A. would help B. helps C. will help D. has helped

17. If he didn’t have to work today, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his children to the zoo.

A. will take B. takes C. would take D. has taken

18. If you didn’t have to leave today, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you around the city.

A. have shown B. showed C. will show D. would show

19. If our teacher were here now, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_US with this difficult exercise.

A. has helped B. helps C. will help D. would help

20. If he were younger, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a professional running competition now.

A. will join B. had joined C. would have joined D. would join

21. If you watch this film, you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_about the cultures of Southeast Asian countries.

A. learned B. were learning C. will learn D. would learn

22. If he were better qualified, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_get the job.

A. will B. can C. may D. could

23. If life\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_predictable it would cease to be life, and be without flavor.

A. is B. would be C. were D. had been

24. That sounds like a good offer. I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_it if I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_you.

A. would accept - were B. accepted - would be

C. accept - will be D. will accept - were

25. If he improved his IT skills, he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a job.

A. will easily get B. would easily get

C. will easily have got D. would easily have got

26. If it had not rained last night, the roads in the city\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_so slippery now.

A. must not be B. would not be

C. could not have been D. would not have been

27. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ten minutes earlier, you would have got a better seat.

A. Had you arrived B. If you arrived

C. Were you arrived D. If you hadn’t arrived

28. If it\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_their encouragement, he could have given it up.

A. hadn’t been for B. wouldn’t have been for

C. had been for D. hadn’t been

29. But for his kind support, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. would not have succeeded B. did not succeed

C. had not succeeded D. would succeed

30. - Jean: “Why didn’t you tell me about the plans for the merge?”

- Jack: “I would have told you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.”

A. if you asked me B. had you asked me

C. you had asked to me D. you were asking me

31. We\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on the beach now if we hadn’t missed the plane.

A. will lie B. could be lying C. will be lying D. might have lain

32. If I were in charge, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_things differently.

A. had done B. would do C. would have done D. will do

33. If a drop of oil is placed in a glass of water, it\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to the top.

A. will float B. would float C. does float D. should float

34. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_anyone call, just say I’ll be back in the office at four o’clock.

A. If B. Were C. Should D. Unless

35. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me twice my current salary, I wouldn’t work for them.

A. If they paid B. Weren’t they paid

C. Were they not to pay D. Had they not paid

36. If I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_just one year younger, I would be eligible for the scholarship.

A. am B. will be C. would be D. were

37. If we are not busy this weekend, we\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the new fruit farm in the countryside.

A. will visit B. would visit C. would have visited D. visited

38. If you follow my directions, you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_her house easily.

A. would find B. would have found C. found D. will find

39. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_advised on what and how to prepare for the interview, he might have got the job.

A. Had he been B. If he had C. Unless he had been D. Were he to be

40. If my father\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_bankrupt last year, he could own the luxurious car now.

A. didn’t go B. hadn’t gone C. wasn’t going D. weren’t to go

41. If I had enough money, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_abroad to improve my English.

A. will go B. would go C. should go D. go

42. If you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to my advice in the first place, you wouldn’t be in this mess right now.

A. listen B. had listened C. will listen D. listened

43. If you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Tom, tell him I have a message for him.

A. will meet B. would meet C. meet D. met

44. If I lived nearer the centre, I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_always late for work.

A. wouldn’t be B. can be C. won’t be D. will be

45. If we had known your new address, we\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to see you.

A. came B. will come C. would come D. would have come

46. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_she agreed, you would have done it.

A. If B. Had C. Should D. Would

47. If you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to be chosen for the job, you’ll have to be experienced in the field.

A. want B. wanted C. had wanted D. wants

48. If the doctor had arrived sooner, the boy\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_saved.

A. might be B. have been C. was D. might have been

49. If there\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_enough water, the rice fields could have been more productive.

A. had been B. were C. would be D. are

50. If he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a thorough knowledge of English, he could have applied for this post.

A. had had B. had C. has D. has had

**MODULE 18:**

**CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ (TYPES OF CLAUSES)**

**11. MỆNH ĐỀ ĐỘC LẬP (INDEPENDENT CLAUSE):**

***10.1.1. Định nghĩa:*** Mệnh đề độc lập là mệnh đề mà ý nghĩa của nó không phụ thuộc vào một mệnh đề khác trong cùng một câu. Trong một câu, có thể có hai hoặc nhiều mệnh đề độc lập. Chúng được nối với nhau bằng liên từ kết hợp (coordinating conjunction).

***10.1.2. Các loại liên từ trong mệnh đề độc lập:***

**a. Liên từ bình đẳng:**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| - addition(and) | He washed the car and polished it. |
| - continuation (and then) | He washed the car and then polished it. |
| - contrast (but, yet): | She sold her house, but/ yet (she) can’t help regretting it. |
| - choice (or): | You can park your car on the drive or on the road. |
| - result (so): | He couldn’t find his pen, so he wrote in pencil. |
| - reason (for): | We rarely stay in hotels, for we can’t afford it. |

**b. Cặp liên từ tương ứng (Correlative conjunction):** either ... or; neither ... nor ...; not only... but... (also/as well/too)

Eg: She not only studies well but also sings beautifully.

\* Lưu ý: Ngoài ra ta còn dùng dấu chấm phẩy (semicolon) trong mệnh đề độc lập.

Eg: I didn’t know you were coming to Ha Noi; That is why I went on holiday.

**2. MỆNH ĐỀ PHỤ THUỘC (DEPENDENT CLAUSES)**

**2.1. Mệnh đề danh từ (Noun clauses)**

***a. Định nghĩa:*** là những mệnh đề có chức năng tương tự như một danh từ. Mệnh đề danh từ, cũng giống như một danh từ, có thể được sử dụng vừa là chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ.

***b. Vai trò của mệnh đề danh từ:***

**- Làm chủ ngữ:** Eg: What she said is unbelievable.

**- Làm tân ngữ:**

*+ Làm tân ngữ cho động từ:* Eg: I don’t know who he is.

**-** *Làm tân ngữ cho giới từ:* Eg: My parents are really satisfied with what I have done.

***c. Các loại mệnh đề danh từ***

**\* Mệnh đê danh từ có chứa THAT**

**-** Cấu trúc It’s + adj + that + clause:

Eg: It’s obvious that he’s going to be late.

**-** Cấu trúc It’s + N + that+ clause:

Eg: It’s a pity that he’s going to be late.

**-** Cấu trúc S + V + that + clause:

Eg: I know that he’s going to be late.

**-** Cấu trúc That + S + V + V (số it) + ...:

Eg: That he was dismissed was a shock to his wife.

**\* Mệnh đề danh từ có chứa IF/WHETHER (liệu rằng có hay không)**

E.g: I don’t know if/ whether he loves me.

(Tôi không biết liệu rằng anh ấy có yêu tôi không).

**\* Mệnh đê danh từ có chứa TỪ ĐỂ HỎI**

Eg: Tell me when you signed the contract.

**2.2. Mệnh đề quan hệ**

***a. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (restrictive relative clause)***

**-** Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước, là bộ phận quan trọng của câu, nếu bỏ đi thì mệnh đề chính không có nghĩa rõ ràng.

Ví dụ:

The girl who is wearing the blue dress is my sister.

The book which I borrowed from you is very interesting.

***b. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non- restrictive relative clause)***

**-** Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ dửng trước, là phần giải thích thêm, nếu bỏ đi thì mệnh đề chính vẫn còn nghĩa rõ ràng.

**-** Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định thường được ngăn với mệnh đề chính bởi các dấu phẩy. Danh từ đứng trước thường là tên riêng hoặc trước các danh từ thường có các từ như: this, that, these, those, my, his, her, your, our, their,...đứng trước.

**-** Không được dùng that trong mệnh đề không xác định.

Ví dụ:

Peter, who is my boyfriend, is very handsome and intelligent.

My father, who is 50 years old, is a doctor.

***c. Mệnh đề quan hệ nối tiếp***

**-** Mệnh đề quan hệ nối tiếp dùng để giải thích cả một câu, trường hợp này chỉ dùng đại từ quan hệ *which* và dùng dấu phẩy để tách hai mệnh đề. Mệnh đề này luôn đứng ở cuối câu.

Ví dụ:

He sent me a bunch of flowers, which made me surprised.

***d. Mệnh đề quan hệ rút gọn***

Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể rút gọn theo 4 cách:

**- *Cách 1. Using present participle phrases (sử dụng hiện tại phân từ - Ving)***

Dùng khi đại từ quan hệ đóng vai trò làm chủ ngữ và động từ trong mệnh đ’ê quan hệ ở thể chủ động.

Ta dùng present participle phrase thay cho mệnh đề đó (bỏ đại từ quan hệ và trợ động từ, đưa động từ chính về nguyên mẫu rồi thêm -ing)

Ví dụ:

The man who Is sitting next to you is my uncle.

=> The man sitting to you is my uncle.

Do you know the man who asked me the way to the bank?

=> Do you know the man asking me the way to the bank?

**- *Cách 2. Using past participle phrases (sử dụng quá khứ phân từ - Vp2)***

Dùng khi đại từ quan hệ đóng vai trò làm chủ ngữ và động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể bị động.

Ta dùng past participle phrase thay cho mệnh đề đó (Bỏ đại từ quan hệ, trợ động từ và bắt đâu cụm từ bằng past participle).

Ví dụ:

The students who were punished by the teacher are lazy.

The students punished by the teacher are lazy.

**- *Cách 3. Using “to infinitive” or “infinitive phrase” (for sb to do)***

***a. Khi đại từ quan hệ thay thế cho các từ có chứa số thứ tự như: first, second, next, third....last, only và so sánh nhất***

Ví dụ:

She was the last person that was interviewed this morning.

=> She was the last person to be interviewed this morning.

She is the most suitable person who can take on this job.

=> She is the most suitable person to take on this job.

***b.*** ***Câu bắt đầu bằng: here, there***

Ví dụ:

There is a good restaurant where we can eat good food.

=> There is a good restaurant to eat good food.

Here is the form that you must fill in.

=> Here is the form for you to fill in.

***Cách 4. Using noun phrases (cụm danh từ)***

Mệnh đề quan hệ không xách định có thể được rút gọn bằng cách dùng cụm danh từ.

Ví dụ:

Mrs Flora, who is a rich businesswoman, will sponsor our competition.

=> Mrs Flora, a rich businesswoman, will sponsor our competition.

I live in Ha Noi, which is the capital of Vietnam.

=> I live in Ha Noi, the capital of Vietnam.

**2.3. Mệnh đê trạng ngữ (Adverbial Clause)**

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ là mệnh đề có chức năng ngữ pháp của một trạng ngữ (bổ nghĩa cho một mệnh đề khác).

***2.3.1. Mệnh đê trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Once** (Một khi) | Once you understand this problem, you will find no difficulty.  *(Một khi bạn hiểu được vấn đề này, bạn sẽ không thấy nó khó nữa).* |
| **When** (Khi) | When she comes back, she will buy food.  *(Khi cô ấy về, cô ấy sẽ mua thức ăn).* |
| **As soon as** (Ngay sau khi) | As soon as I finish the homework, I will go to sleep.  *(Ngay sau khi làm xong bài tập, tôi sẽ đi ngủ).* |
| **While** (Khi/Trong khi) | While I was in China, I went out a lot.  *(Khi tôi ở Trung Quốc, tôi đi chơi rất nhiều).* |
| **By the time** (Tính cho tới lúc) | By the time I came home, everyone had slept.  *(Tính cho tới khi tôi về tới nhà, mọi người đã đi ngủ hết rồi).* |
| **As** (Khi) | Someone called me as I was taking bath.  *(Ai đó đã gọi tôi khi tôi đang tắm).* |
| **Since** (Từ khi) | I have lived here since I was 10 years old.  *(Tôi đã sống ở đây từ khi tôi 10 tuổi).* |
| **Before** (Trước khi) | She had known the truth before I told her.  *(Cô ấy đã biết sự thật trước khi tôi nói cho cô ấy).* |
| **After** (Sau khi) | He came after the train had left.  *(Anh ấy đã tới sau khi con tàu rời đi).* |
| **Till/Until** (Cho tới khi) | I will stay here till/until he comes back.  *(Tôi sẽ ở lại đây cho tới khi anh ấy quay lại).* |
| **During + N/V- ing** (Trong suốt) | During my stay, I find him very naughty.  *(Trong suốt thời gian tôi ở đây, tôi thấy cậu bé rất nghịch).* |
| **Just as** (Ngay khi) | Just as he entered the house, he saw a thief.  *(Ngay khi bước vào nhà, anh ta nhìn thấy một tên trộm).* |
| **Whenever** (Bất cứ khi nào) | Whenever you are free, we will practice speaking English.  *(Bất cứ khi nào bạn rảnh, chúng ta sẽ thực hành nói Tiếng Anh).* |
| **No sooner .... than....**  (Vừa mới.... thì đã...) | No sooner had he gone out than he came back.  *(Anh ta vừa mới ra ngoài thì đã đi về).* |
| **Hardly/Scarcely ... when....**  (Vừa mới ...thì đã...) | Hardly/Scarcely had she had a shower when the phone rang.  *(Cô ấy vừa mới đi tắm thì điện thoại reo).* |

***2.3.2. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Where** (ở đâu) | I like to go where you like.  *(Anh sẽ đi nơi mà em muốn).* |
| **Anywhere** (Bất cứ đâu) | I do not like to go anywhere there is a swimming pool.  *(Tôi không thích đi bất cứ nơi nào mà có bể bơi).* |
| **Wherever** (Bất cứ đâu) | You can sit wherever you like.  *(Bạn có thể ngồi bất cứ chỗ nào bạn thích).* |
| **Everywhere** (tất cả mọi nơi) | I want to shop everywhere there is sale.  *(Tôi muốn mua hàng ở tất cả những nơi có giảm giá).* |

***2.3.3. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ cách thức***

**- As/Just as:** như là/ giống như là

**Ví dụ:**

He loves flowers as/just as women love. *(Anh ấy thích hoa cũng như phụ nữ thích hoa vậy).*

**- As If/As though:** như thể là

***+ Điều kiện có thật: As if/As though + S+V (hiện tại)***

It looks as if/as though it is going to rain. *(Trông như thể là trời sắp mưa).*

***+ Điều kiện không có thật ở hiện tại:* As *if/As though + S + Were/V (quá khứ)***

He dresses as if/as though it were in winter even in the summer.

*(Anh ta mặc cứ như là mùa đông dù đang là mùa hè).*

***+ Điều kiện không có thật ở quá khứ: As if/As though + S + had + PII***

He looked as if/as though he had collected the money.

*(Anh ta nhìn cứ như thể là anh ta bắt được tiền).*

***2.3.4. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân***

**- Because/Since/As:** vì

Because/since/as he is tired, he stays at home. *(Vì anh ấy mệt, anh ấy ở nhà.)*

**- Now that/Seeing that:** vì rằng

Now that I am in a foreign country, I visit my home once a year.

*(Vì rằng giờ tôi đang ở nước ngoài, tôi thăm nhà chỉ một lần một năm).*

**- On account of the fact that/because of the fact that/due to the fact that:** vì sự thật là/ vì thực tế là.

On account of the fact that his leg is broken, he cannot play football.

*(Vì thực tế là chân anh ta bị gãy, anh ấy không thể chơi đá bóng).*

***.2.3.5. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản***

**- While/Whereas:** trong khi

Many people like pork, while/whereas others do not. *(Có rất nhiều người thích thịt lợn trong khi nhiêu người lại không).*

***2.3.6. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ***

**- Though/Even though/Although:** mặc dù

Although he is tired, he goes to work. *(Mặc dù anh ấy mệt, anh ấy vẫn đi làm.)*

Although she is a beautiful girl, no one loves her.

*(Mặc dù cô ấy rất xinh, không ai yêu cô ấy).*

**- In spite of the fact that /In spite of + V-ing/N:** mặc dù

In spite of the fact that his leg is broken, he goes out *(Mặc dù chân anh ấy bị gãy, anh ấy vẫn đi chơi).*

**- Despite the fact that/Despite + V-ing/N:** mặc dù

Despite the fact that it is raining, they play soccer. *(Mặc dù trời mưa, họ vẫn đá bóng).*

**- Adj/Adv + As/Though + S + V:** mặc dù

Carefully as/though he drives, he has an accident. *(Mặc dù anh ta lái xe cẩn thận, anh ấy vẫn gặp tai nạn).*

**- No matter + what/who/when/where/why/how (+adj/adv) + S + V:** mặc dù, bất kể

**Whatever/ whoever/ whenever/ wherever/ however + S + V:** mặc dù, bất kể

**-** No matter who you are, I love you. *(Cho dù em là ai, anh cũng vẫn yêu em).*

**-** Whatever you said, I believe you. *(Cho dù em nói gì, anh cũng tin em).*

***2.3.7. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích***

**- So that/ in order that/ in case/ for fear that:** để mà, trong trường hợp, phòng khi

He learns English so that he can get a better job. *(Anh ấy học Tiếng Anh để mà anh ấy có thể kiếm được công việc tốt).*

**+ Lưu ý:** Nếu chủ ngữ của cả hai mệnh đề giống nhau, ta có thể giản lược:

**So as (not) to/In order (not) to/ (not) to + V**

**Ví dụ:**

**-** He works hard so that he can buy a new house.

= He works hard so as to/in order to/to buy a new house.

*(Anh ấy làm việc chăm chỉ để mà anh ấy có thể mua được một ngôi nhà mới).*

**-** You had better take an umbrella in case it might rain.

*(Cậu nên cầm theo 1 chiếc ô phòng khi trời có thể mưa).*

***2.3.8. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả***

**- So + Adj/Adv + that:** quá đến nỗi mà...

**So + many/much/ (a) few/ (a) little + N + that**

**Ví dụ:**

**-** He is so intelligent that he can do all the difficult exercises. *(Anh ấy giỏi tới mức mà anh ấy có thể làm được tất cả những bài tập khó).*

**-** There are so many students that there are not enough chairs. *(Có nhiều học sinh tới mức mà không có đủ ghế để ngồi).*

**- Such + (a/an) + Adj + N + that:** quá...đến nỗi mà...

It was such a cold day that I just want to stay at home. *(Trời lạnh đến nỗi mà tôi chỉ muốn ở nhà).*

**- So:** vì vậy

I do not have any money, so I cannot buy a television. *(Tôi không có tiền vì vậy tôi không thể mua được một cái ti vi).*

**- Therefore/Consequently/As a result/As a consequence/:** vì vậy

I got up late, with the result that I missed my bus. *(Tôi dậy muộn vì vậy tôi bị lỡ xe buýt).*

She is not a good student; therefore, she cannot get good marks. *(Cô ấy không phải học sinh giỏi vì vậy có ấy không có nhiều điểm tốt).*

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

1. In that year, the majority of exhibitors expressed their preference for a postponement

A. but the stocks of plants were low B. since the stocks of plants were low

C. thanks to the low stocks of plants D. but for the low stocks\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of plants

2. I decided to go to the library as soon as I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. would finish what I did B. finished what I did

C. finished what I was doing D. finish what I did

3. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in this national park declined from a few thousand to a few hundred in ten years.

A. For a number of tigers B. The number of tigers

C. A number of tigers D. That the number of tigers

4. It was\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that the first wheeled vehicles appeared.

A. not until the end of prehistoric times B. before the end of prehistoric times

C. as soon as the end of prehistoric times D. when the prehistoric times ended

5. Sometimes\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_wears people out and is worse than the lack of sleep itself.

A. to sleep the desire B. to desire to sleep is

C. the desire to sleep D. the desire to sleep who

6. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_disappear from the public eye shortly after the games are over.

A. Many Olympic athletes B. Many Olympic athletes who

C. That many Olympic athletes D. Many Olympic athletes to

7. During the 1930s, Costance Spry introduced the art of flower arranging, but this did not really catch on\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. before the end of the following decade B. until the end of the following decade

C. as far as following decade ended D. from the following decade ended

8. Claire wanted to know what time\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. do the banks close B. the banks closed

C. did the banks close D. the banks will close

9. Anthony Burgess,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_as a novelist, was originally a student of music.

A. because of being famous B. who has achieved fame

C. who because he was famous D. he achieved fame

10. No matter\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, Mozart was an accomplished composer while still a child.

A. how it seems remarkable B. how remarkable it seems

C. it seems remarkable how D. how seems it remarkable

11. He asked me and his friends\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his pens.

A. when did he put B. where he puts

C. where he had put D. where had he put

12. Scientists are now beginning to carry out experiment on \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ trigger different sorts of health risk.

A. noise pollution can B. that noise pollution

C. how noise pollution D. how noise pollution can

13. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the French army was defeated at the battle of Dien Bien Phu came a complete surprise to all over the world.

A. Why B. Which C. What D. That

14. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ is not clear to researchers.

A. Why did dinosaurs become extinct B. Why dinosaurs became extinct

C. Did dinosaurs become extinct D. Dinosaurs became extinct

15. Elderly people,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, require constant attention.

A. a large number’s depending on government aid.

B. and many of them depend on the government to finance them

C. who are dependent many of them on the financing from the government

D. many of them who are financially dependent on the government

16. Coming unexpectedly in to the room,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. so she made the intruder get surprise

B. the appearance took the intruder by surprise

C. it surprises the intruder with her appearance

D. she took the intruder by surprise

17. Having been asked to speak at the conference,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. some notes were prepared for Dr. Clark

B. some notes were prepared by Dr. Clark

C. Dr. Clark prepared some notes

D. audiences were pleased to hear Dr. Clark

18. The students were not satisfied\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. because of the teacher’s not informing them of the coming test

B. because the teacher not inform them of the coming test

C. as the teacher’s not informing them about the coming test

D. since the teacher’s no information about the coming test

19. We’ll send you an email of confirmation\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. after we had made our final decision.

B. before we made our final decision

C. while we were making our final decision .

D. as soon as we have made our final decision

20. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, Stan Lee, passed away at the age of 95 due to heart and respiratory failure.

A. Who is the Marvel Comics icon B. Marvel Comics icon

C. The Marvel Comics icon is D. That Marvel Comics icon

21. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_have made communication faster and easier through the use of email and the Internet is widely recognized.

A. It is that computers B. That computers

C. Computers that D. That it’s computers

22. For me,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_is not important.

A. what a person wearing B. what does a person wear

C. what a person wears D. what will a person wear

23. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, most citizens of the sultanate actually live in poverty.

A. Although the average income in Brunei is among the world’s highest

B. Since the Sultan of Brunei is one of the wealthiest people in the world

C. Considering that the largest concentration of urban population is in Brunei’s capit

D. Because Brunei earns billions of dollars a year from petroleum exports

24. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_is that a chicken stands up to lay its eggs.

A. Many people don’t realize that B. Because many people don’t realize

C. What many people don’t realize D. It is that many people don’t realize

25. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a small creature that defends itself with lobster-like claws and a poisonous sting.

A. Scorpions are B. Many a scorpion is

C. A scorpion, which is D. The scorpion is

26. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, they got on well with each other.

A. To quarrel a lot like siblings at their age

B. But most siblings at their age quarrel a lot

C. While most siblings at their age quarrel a lot

D. For most siblings to quarrel a lot at their age

27. Tommy is on the way to his friend’s birthday party, carrying a gift box\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in colourful paper.

A. were nicely wrapped B. having wrapped nicely

C. nicely wrapped D. nicely wrapping

28. Backpacking is best suited for those who are in good physical condition\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. without being required to walk several miles

B. so that it would require walking several miles

C. so as not to require walking several miles

D. as it may require walking several miles.

29. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ , playing music is an effective way for them to open their heart to the outside world.

A. Such were their visual impairments B. Having been visually impaired

C. For those with visual impairments D. Being visually impaired people

30. The little boy took an instant liking to his babysitter\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. before he first met her B. prior to their first meeting

B. upon their first meeting D. as soon as he meets her

31. The patients\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_with the new drug showed better signs of recovery than those receiving conventional medicine.

A. treated B. having treated C. treating D. who treated

32. Despacito,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_over four billion times on YouTube, is one of the most favourite songs among teenagers worldwide.

A. is viewed B. which viewed C. viewing D. viewed

33. The proposal\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by the environmentalists to grow more trees has received approval from the council.

A. which suggested B. be suggested C. suggested D. was suggested

34. Richard Wright enjoyed the success and influence\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_among Black American writers of his era.

A. were unparalleled B. unparalleled C. are unparalleled D. whose unparalleled

35. Jack Ma or Ma Yun,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, is the founder and executive chairman of Alibaba Group, a family or highly successful Internet-based businesses.

A. parents are traditional musician-storytellers

B. are traditional musician-storytellers

C. traditional musician-storytellers

D. whose parents are traditional musician-storytellers

36. Cong Phuong,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_2 goals for Vietnam in the match against Malaysia, is the star of the 28th SEA Games.

A. to score B. who scored C. scores D. scored

37. Harry Potter book,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by J.K. Rowling, are very popular with children around the world.

A. which was written B. writing C. written D. which wrote

38. Louis Pasteur invented the process of pasteurization and developed vaccines for several diseases\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_rabies.

A. include B. included C. including D. inclusive

39. Last week, our class went to Ha Long Bay for a picnic,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_US very happy then.

A. which made B. that made C. made D. which was made

40. The last person\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the room must turn off the lights.

A. to leave B. who leave C. that leave D. leaves

41. Anna seems to be a bright student. She’s always the first\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_her work.

A. finishing B. to finish C. being finished D. to be finish

42. Nearly all of the reporters\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the press conference had questions\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. attend - asked B. attended - to ask

C. attending - to ask D. would attend - to be asked

43. Drinking water\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_excessive amounts of fluorides may leave a stained or mottled effect on the enamel of teeth.

A. containing B. which contain C. contained D. which are contained

44. The explanation\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for the problems didn’t satisfy anybody.

A. giving B. which gave C. given D. having given

45. Designers are experimenting with a new material\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_flexibly with lightness.

A. is combining B. combining C. combines D. combination of

46. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_depends on your gentle persuasion.

A. That he agreed to help you B. That he agrees to help you

C. Whether he agrees to help you D. Whether he agreed to help you

47. The chairman requested that\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the member study the problem carefully

B. with more carefulness the problem could be studied

C. the problem was more carefully studied

D. the members studied more careful the problem

48. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_seemed a miracle to US.

A. His recover after so soon B. That he recovered so soon

C. His being recovered so soon D. When he had recovered so soon

49. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, we drove the horses into the stable

A. Aware that a tornado was brewing B. Because a tornado brewing

C. Because of a tornado was brewing D. Although a tornado was brewing

50. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_before, his first performance for the amateur dramatic group was a success

A. Though having never acted B. Despite he had never acted

C. As he had never acted D. In spite of his never having acted

***Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Once** (Một khi) | Once you understand this problem, you will find no difficulty.  *(Một khi bạn hiểu được vấn đề này, bạn sẽ không thấy nó khó nữa).* |
| **When** (Khi) | When she comes back, she will buy food.  *(Khi cô ấy về, cô ấy sẽ mua thức ăn).* |
| **As soon as** (Ngay sau khi) | As soon as I finish the homework, I will go to sleep.  *(Ngay sau khi làm xong bài tập, tôi sẽ đi ngủ).* |
| **While** (Khi/Trong khi) | While I was in China, I went out a lot.  *(Khi tôi ở Trung Quốc, tôi đi chơi rất nhiều).* |
| **By the time** (Tính cho tới lúc) | By the time I came home, everyone had slept.  *(Tính cho tới khi tôi về tới nhà, mọi người đã đi ngủ hết rồi).* |
| **As** (Khi) | Someone called me as I was taking bath.  *(Ai đó đã gọi tôi khi tôi đang tắm).* |
| **Since** (Từ khi) | I have lived here since I was 10 years old.  *(Tôi đã sống ở đây từ khi tôi 10 tuổi).* |
| **Before** (Trước khi) | She had known the truth before I told her.  *(Cô ấy đã biết sự thật trước khi tôi nói cho cô ấy).* |
| **After** (Sau khi) | He came after the train had left.  *(Anh ấy đã tới sau khi con tàu rời đi).* |
| **Till / Until** (Cho tới khi) | I will stay here till/until he comes back.  *(Tôi sẽ ở lại đây cho tới khi anh ấy quay lại).* |
| **During + N/V- ing** (Trong suốt) | During my stay, I find him very naughty.  *(Trong suốt thời gian tôi ở đây, tôi thấy cậu bé rất nghịch).* |
| **Just as** (Ngay khi) | Just as he entered the house, he saw a thief.  *(Ngay khi bước vào nhà, anh ta nhìn thấy một tên trộm).* |
| **Whenever** (Bất cứ khi nào) | Whenever you are free, we will practice speaking English.  *(Bất cứ khi nào bạn rảnh, chúng ta sẽ thực hành nói Tiếng Anh).* |
| **No sooner .... than....**  (Vừa mới.... thì đã...) | No sooner had he gone out than he came back.  *(Anh ta vừa mới ra ngoài thì đã đi về).* |
| **Hardly/Scarcely ... when....**  (Vừa mới ...thì đã...) | Hardly/Scarcely had she had a shower when the phone rang.  *(Cô ấy vừa mới đi tắm thì điện thoại reo).* |

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG 10**

1. They always close their curtains \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.

**A.** as soon as they had got home **B.** once they get home

**C.** after they are getting home **D.** before they will get home

2. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, we had already finished work.

**A.** By the time he arrived **B.** After he have arrived

**C.** As soon as he arrives **D.** When he had arrived

3. I will come and see you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** when I was finishing my homework **B.** as soon as I have finished my homework

**C.** until I finished my homework **D.** after I had finished my homework

4. We'll send you an email of confirmation \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** after we had made our final decision.

**B.** before we made our final decision

**C.** while we were making our final decision

**D.** as soon as we have made our final decision

5. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, leave it in the hospital for someone else to read.

**A.** When you have read the book **B.** After you had read the book

**C.** Before you are reading the book **D.** While you were reading the book

6. He will apply for a job \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** when he is graduating from university **B.** until he graduated from university

**C.** after he had graduated from university **D.** as soon as he graduates from university

7. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ , she will go to sleep.

**A.** By the time she finished the homework **B.** After she was finishing the homework

**C.** When she finished the homework **D.** As soon as she has finished the homework

8. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I will give him the report.

**A.** When he will return **B.** When he returns

**C.** Until he will return **D.** No sooner he returns

9. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, he will get ready to go to work.

**A.** When he will have breakfast tomorrow

**B.** Until he would have breakfast tomorrow

**C.** After he has breakfast tomorrow

**D.** As soon as he had breakfast tomorrow

10. She will call you to confirm \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** until she received the parcel **B.** when she was receiving the parcel

**C.** the moment she receives the parcel **D.** after she had received the parcel

11. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, we will be able to leave for the airport.

**A.** After the taxi had arrived **B.** As soon as the taxi arrives

**C.** Until the taxi will arrive **D.** When the taxi arrived

12. We will congratulate him on winning the first prize \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** as soon as Peter gets here **B.** after Peter had got here

**C.** when Peter was getting here **D.** until Peter got here

13. I'll help you with your homework \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** after I had done my own **B.** as soon as I have done my own

**C.** until I did my own **D.** when I was doing my own

14. We will invite all of our friends to come over for a house- warning party \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** as soon as we have moved into the new house.

**B.** until we moved into the new house

**C.** after we will move into the new house

**D.** when we moved into the new house

15. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I will reply to you at once.

**A.** Until I received your message **B.** When I was receiving your message

**C.** As soon as I receive your message **D.** After I had received your message

16. He will take the dog out for a walk \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ dinner.

**A.** before he had finished **B.** until he finished

**C.** as soon as he finishes **D.** when he was finishing

17. I will call and tell you something interesting \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** before I came home after work **B.** after I had come home after work

**C.** while I was coming home after work **D.** when I come home after work

18. I will tell him to call you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** as soon as he returned **B.** until I saw him

**C.** when he returns **D.** after I’d seen him

19. By the time you come here tomorrow, the work \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** will have been finishing **B.** will be finishing

**C.** will have been finished **D.** will be finished

20. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as soon as I see him.

**A.** I will tell James the news **B.** I tell James the news

**C.** I can tell James the news **D.** I would tell the news

21. The neighbors will look after our plants \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** as soon as we were away **B.** while we are away

**C.** after we were away **D.** before we would be

22. Let's go out for dinner \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** after the movie had finished **B.** before the movie finishes

**C.** as soon as the movie would finish **D.** when the movie finishes

23. Make sure you close all the windows \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** before you leave **B.** until you will leave

**C.** after you leaves **D.** when you left

24. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ until she apologizes.

**A.** I don't speak to Kate **B.** I not speak to Kate

**C.** I didn’t speak to Kate **D.** I won’t speak to Kate

25. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ his name was Doug, I thought he was called Damien!

**A.** When he was mentioning **B.** Until he mentioned

**C.** The moment he would mention **D.** As soon as he mention

26. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ while the teacher was explaining the activity.

**A.** They were taking **B.** They was talked

**C.** They are talking **D.** They would talk

27. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ my lesson by noon, I will come around.

**A.** As soon as I am finishing **B.** After I have finished

**C.** Before I had finished **C.** If I will finish

28. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, we went to as many islands as possible.

**A.** Until I will have in Greece **B.** When we were in Greece

**C.** As soon as I have been in Greece **D.** Before I had been in Greece

29. The lift won't start \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** before you will press that button **B.** until you press that button

**C.** as soon as you are pressing that button **D.** after you have press that button

30. She will give the children their dinner \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** before he comes home **B.** when he had come

**C.** as soon as he is coming **D.** until he comes

31. He'll have to behave better \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** until he is going to school **B.** until he has gone to school

**C.** when he goes to school **D.** before he will be going to school

32. I'll do it \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** when I was finishing my first project **B.** after I had finish my first project

**C.** until I finished my first project **D.** as soon as I have finished my first project

33. He is going to stay in our flat while \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** we were in Scotland **B.** we will be in Scotland

**C.** we had been in Scotland **D.** we are in Scotland

34. Will you recognize him \_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

**A.** the moment you see him **B.** until you are seeing him

**C.** after you will see him **D.** as soon as you saw him

35. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I will complete every exercise in my textbook.

**A.** When I master English **B.** The moment I have mastered English

**C.** As soon as I had mastered English **D.** Before I have mastered English

36. We can’t play loud music \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** before everyone will go to bed **B.** when everyone went to bed

**C.** as soon as everyone is going to bed **D.** after everyone has gone to bed

37. I'll wait with you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** until the bus comes **B.** after the bus have come

**C.** as soon as the bus had come **D.** before the bus comes

38. We always have an ice cream \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** after we had gotten to the beach **B.** until we are getting to the beach

**C.** as soon as we get to the beach **D.** before we got to the beach

39. I decided to go to the library as soon as I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** would finish what I did **B.** finished what I did

**C.** finished what I was doing **D.** finish what I did

40. Mrs Brown will have worked at this school for 30 years \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

**A.** by the time she retires **B.** when she retired

**C.** as soon as she had retired **D.** after she had retired

**CÁCH SỬ DỤNG ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ**

1. **4 trường hợp sử dụng MĐQH có dấu phẩy**

* Danh từ riêng ( Viết hoa ) : Mary, Peter
* this, that, these, those + N(s) : This book ...
* Tính từ sỡ hữu + N : my, his, her, our, their, its, your + N
* Sỡ hữu cách ( N’s N ) : Hoa’s book

1. **Cách sử dụng đại từ quan hệ trong mệnh đề không dấu “,”**

**N chỉ người +** who / that **+ V**

**N chỉ người +** whom / who / that **+ S + V**

**N chì người và vật +** that  **+ S + V**

**N chỉ vật +** which / that **+ V / S V**

**N chỉ người / vật +** whose  **+ N + S V**

**Thời gian +** when = in, on , at + which **+ S V**

**Nơi chốn +** where= in,on,at + which **+ S V**

**Lý do +** why = for which **+ S V**

* **THAT: thay thế cho WHO/ WHOM/ WHICH trong MÐQH không dấu phẩy**

1. **Các trường hợp dùng “ That”**

* hình thức so sánh nhất ( the most , the adj-est )
* đi sau các từ: only, the first, the last
* danh từ chỉ người và vật
* sau các đại từ bất định, đại từ phủ định, đại từ chỉ số lượng: ***no one, nobody, something, somebody, all, some, any, little, none.***

**B. BÀI TẬP TRẮC NGHIỆM VỀ “ WHO / WHOM / WHICH/ WHOSE....)**

- N chỉ người thường tận cùng bằng gốc “ or, er, ist, ian

- N chỉ vật thường tận cùng bằng gốc “ ion, ment, ..

**- Phía sau là N thường dùng “ Whose” -> 1 số N thường gặp như: car, son, daughter, outlook, book, houses, mother, father, brother, parents**

**- Nơi chốn dùng “ where” , thời gian dùng “ when”, lý do = “ why”**

**- So sánh nhất ( the most ..., the + adj-est) dùng “ That”**

**C. NỐI 2 CÂU DÙNG ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ (Đầu câu là Người dùng Who giữa và cuối dùng Whom)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| ***Ex:*** *Mary, is a good teacher. I saw her last week* | ***B1: Xác định 2 từ giống ở câu 1 và câu 2***  **Câu 1 :** Xác định từ giống  Xem có dùng dấu “,” không  **Câu 2:** Thay từ giống bằng “who / whom = người”/ “which = vật” , “ where= nơi chốn” , “ when= t.gian”  “whose = sở hữu” |
| *Mary is a good teacher. Whom I saw last week* | ***B2: Đem “ Who/ which..” ra đầu câu 2*** |
| *Mary, whom I saw last week, is a good teacher* | ***B3. Đem ca câu 2 đặt sau từ giống ở câu 1 và ghi phần còn lại câu 1 ( nếu có )*** |

**RELATIVE PRONOUNS FOLLWED BY A PREPOSITION**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| ***Trong mệnh đề quan hệ có giới từ thì giới từ có 2 vị trí đứng:***  ***- Giới từ đứng*** *trước đại từ quan hệ hoặc giới từ đứng sau động từ.*  ***- Lưu ý: Giới từ không đứng trước đại từ quan hệ “ who và that”***  *- Khi giới từ là thành phần của cụm động từ thì không thể đem giới từ ra trước “whom, which, whose”*  *- Giới từ* ***“ WITHOUT”****không được đặt sau động từ mà phải đặt trước đại từ quan hệ.* | *Ex1: She is the woman* ***about whom*** *I told you*  *She is the woman* ***who/whom/ that*** *I told you* ***about.***  *Ex2:Did you find the world which you were* ***looking up*** *?*  *(****NOT*** *: \_\_\_\_\_the world up which you were looking ? )*  *Ex3: The woman* ***without whom*** *I can’t live is Jane*  *(* ***NOT*** *: The woman whom can’t live without is Jane )* |

**REDUCTION RELATIVE CLAUSES**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| *Khi* ***động từ*** *trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể* ***chủ động***  ***+ am/is/are/was/were + V-ing***  ***+V1/Vs/es***  ***+V2/ed***  ***+has/have + V3/ed***  *=> Bỏ ĐTQH,Bỏ trợ động từ nếu có,****Động từ chính => V-ing*** | *E.g: That man,****who is standing*** *over there,is my best friend.*  *=> That man,****standing*** *over there,is my best friend* |
| *Khi* ***động từ*** *trong ,mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể* ***bị động***  ***+am/is/are/was/were + V3/ed***  ***+have/has + been + V3/ed***  *=> Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ trợ động từ nếu có,****Động từ chính => V-3/ED*** | *E.g: The boy who* ***was injured*** *in the accident was taken to the hospital*  *=>The boy* ***injured*** *in the accident was taken to the hospital* |
| *Khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ đứng sau* ***“first/last/second/only/next/one/dạng so sánh nhất hoặc để chỉ much đích,sự cho phép*** *=> Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ trợ động từ nếu có*  ***Động từ chính => To-V( chủ động)***  ***Động từ chính => to be V3/ed ( bị động)*** | *E.g: He was the last man* ***who left*** *the burning building.*  *=> He was the last man* ***to leave*** *the burning building.*  *E.g This is the second person* ***who was killed*** *in that way*  *=> This is the second person* ***to be killed*** *in that way* |

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| ***Rút gọn mệnh đề bằng cụm danh từ có dạng:*** *S + Be + N /cụm N/cụm giới từ*  *=> Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ be* | *E.g: Football,****which is*** *a popular sport,ivery good for health.*  *=> Football, a popular sport,ivery good for health.* |
| ***Mệnh đề quan hệ chứa tobe và tính từ/cụm tính từ***  *=> Bỏ ĐTQH, Bỏ be giữ nguyên tính từ phía sau* | *E.g:My grandmother,****who is*** *old and sick,never goes out of the house.*  *=> My grandmother, old and sick,never goes out of the house.* |

**PRACTISES**

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.**

1. The young man was released after the court was found innocent of all the charges against him.

A. who B. who he C. which D. whose

2. Is that the same film we watched last year?

A. when B. which C. why D. who

3. The girl I borrowed the dictionary asked me to use it carefully.

A. whose B. from whom C. from whose D. whom

4. The first television picture John Logie Baird transmitted on 25 November, 1905 was a boy worked in the office next to Baird's workroom in London.

A. which; whom B. who; which C. that; whose D. that; who

5. Joyce Bews, was born and grew up in Portsmouth on the south coast of England, she still lives, was 100 last year.

A. that; in which B. who; where C. that; where D. who; that

6. The pollution they were talking is getting worse.

A. that B. about which C. which D. whom

7. Robert Riva, an Italian player used to play for Cremonese, now coaches the Reigate under 11’s football team.

A. when B. which C. where D. who

8. When I was at school, there was a girl in my class skin was so sensitive that she couldn't expose her skin to the sun even with cream on.

A. where B. whose C. whom D. that

9. Unfortunately, the friend with I intended to go on holiday to Side is ill, so I'll have to cancel my trip.

A. who B. whom C. where D. that

10. The new stadium, will be completed next year, will seat 30,000 spectators.

A. what B. where C. when D. which

11. Blenheim Palace, Churchill was born, is now open to the public.

A. when B. where C. which D. whose

12. The man I introduced you to last night may be the next president of the university.

A. which B. whom C. whose D. why

13. Cathy is trustworthy. She's a person upon you can always depend.

A. who B. whom C. that D. ∅

14. Your career should focus on a field in you are genuinely interested.

A. which B. what C. that D. ∅

15. People outlook on life is optimistic are usually happy people.

A. whose B. whom C. that D. which

16. The girl dress you admire has been working for an export company since she left school.

A. who B. what C. whose D. whom

17. One of the people arrested was Mary Arundel, is a member of the local council.

A. that B. who C. whom D. ∅

18. The Titanic, Gsank in 1922, was supposed to be unsinkable.

A. whose B. that C. which D. who

19. The Newspaper is owned by the Mearson Group, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_chairman is Sir James Bex.

A. which B. that C. who D. whose

20. Genghis Khan, name means "very mighty ruler", was a Mongol emperor in the Middle Ages.

A. whom B. whose C. who D. how

21. She has two brothers, are engineer.

A. whom both B. both who C. both of whom D. both whom

22. Extinction means a situation a plant, an animal or a way of life stops existing.

A. to which B. for which C. on which D. in which

23. The party, I was the guest of honor, was extremely enjoyable.

A. at that B. at which C. to that D. to which

24. Ann has a lot of books, she has never read.

A. most of that B. most of these C. most of which D. which most of them

25. We have just visited disadvantaged children in an orphanage in Bac Ninh Province.

A. located B. locating C. which locates D. to locate

26. An endangered species is a species population is so small that it is in danger of becoming extinct.

A. whose B. which C. what D. who

27. Pumpkin seeds, protein and iron, are a popular snack.

A. that B. provide C. which D. which provide

28. He lives in a small town

A. Where is called Taunton B. which is called Taunton

C. is called Taunton D. that called Taunton

29. The scientists on this project try to find the solutions to air pollution.

A. working B. worked C. are working D. who working

30. The girl \_\_\_\_\_\_ is our neighbor.

A. talks to the lady over there C. was talking to the lady over there

B. is talking to the lady over there D. talking to the lady over there

31. She didn’t tell me the reason \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ she came late.

A. when B. for which C. for why D. both B and C

32. This is the best play \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I have ever seen.

A. which B. what C. whom D. that

33. Taj Mahal, \_\_\_\_\_ by Shah Janhan for his wife, is thought to be one of the great architectural wonders of the world.

A. building B. to build C. built D. to be built

34. Mr.Jones, \_\_\_\_\_\_I was working, was generous about overtime payments.

A. he B. for whom C. for him D. whom

35. Is this the address to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you want the package sent ?

A. where B. which C. that D. whom

36. He was the last man \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the ship.

A. who leave B. to leave C. leaving D. left

37. The nurse\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_from Japan can speaking English well.

A. which comes B. who come C. coming D. came

38. More than a mile of roadway has been blocked with trees, stones and other debris, \_\_\_\_the explosion.

A. causing B. caused by C. which caused by D. which caused

39. I have a message for people \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by the traffic chaos.

A. to delay B. who delay C. delayed D. who delaying

40. Trang An Scenic Landscape Complex is the 8th World Heritage in Viet Nam \_\_\_\_ by UNESCO.

A. to be recognised B. to recognise C. recognising D. recognised

41. Tom was the last \_\_\_\_\_\_the classroom yesterday.

A. to leave B. leaving C. left D. leaves

42. The palace \_\_\_\_\_ many centuries ago remains practically intact.

A. building B. to build C. built D. people build

43. Many of the pictures \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ from outer space are presently on display in the public library

A. sending B. sent C. which sent D. which is sending

44. The house \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the storm has now been rebuilt .

A. destroyed B. destroying C. which destroyed D. that is destroyed

45. The man \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the blackboard is our teacher .

A. stood B. stands C. standing D. to stand

**Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions. ( Reduction Relative Clauses )**

**Question 1**. Half the people \_\_\_\_\_said they would pay more for environmentally friendly food.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** polled | **B.** polling | **C.** who polled | **D.** to poll |

**Question 2**. the door, I saw a luxurious car.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** Opened | **B.** I opened | **C.** Opening | **D.** Upon opened |

**Question 3**. I come from a city \_ located in the southern part of the country.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** locate | **B.** which located | **C.** locating | **D.** located |

**Question 4**. When in a proper way, the Internet is a great way to obtain useful information.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** use | **B.** using | **C.** used | **D.** to use |

**Question 5**. She’s much into a novel by Han Mac Tu.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** write | **B.** written | **C.** writing | **D.** which written |

**Question 6.** He is the only student in the class \_ the tricky question.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** answer | **B.** answered | **C.** who answer | **D.** to answer |

**Question 7**. The two men \_ by the police were released today.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** arrested | **B.** arresting | **C.** arrest | **D.** to arrest |

**Question 8**. The house \_ in red is where John lives.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** paint | **B.** painted | **C.** to paint | **D.** painting |

**Question 9**. Although about work, he refused the idea of giving up.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** stress | **B.** stressing | **C.** stressed | **D.** which was stressed |

**Question 10**. The house in the storm has now been rebuilt.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** destroyed | **B.** destroying | **C.** which destroyed | **D.** that is destroyed |

**Question 11**. Once into different languages, the novel will gain special attention from potential readers.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** translate | **B.** translated | **C.** being translate | **D.** to translate |

**Question 12**. After breakfast with her children, she started to prepare for lunch.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** being had | **B.** having had | **C.** have | **D.** had |

**Question 13**. I have a message for people by the traffic chaos.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** to delay | **B.** who delay | **C.** delayed | **D.** delaying |

**Question 14**. Melanie was the only person a letter of thanks.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** wrote | **B.** written | **C.** to write | **D.** writing |

**Question 15**. If \_ to the zoo, our children will be very happy.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** take | **B.** to take | **C.** taking | **D.** taken |

**Question 16**. The drug from the bark of the cinchona tree, is native to South America.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** derived | **B.** to derive | **C.** deriving | **D.** which derived |

**Question 17**. Front-line workers their life to treating the Covid-19 patients need to be

given much more attention from the public.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** devote | **B.** devoting | **C.** devoted | **D.** who is devoted |

**Question 18**. If \_ during the pandemic, schools need to be fully prepared for online courses.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** close | **B.** closed | **C.** closing | **D.** is closed |

**Question 19**. The online conference to the reinvestment of profit was disrupted by the system crash.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** relating | **B.** related | **C.** to relate | **D.** which relate |

**Question 20.** The contraction in China is the starkest economic sign of the damage by the pandemic.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** caused | **B.** causing | **C.** to cause | **D.** which caused |

**Question 21**. Those in taking this online course should contact me at 555-4573.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** interesting | **B.** who is interested | **C.** who interested | **D.** interested |

**Question 34**. The virus from Wuhan (China) killed millions of people in the world just in five months.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** emerged | **B.** emerge | **C.** which emerging | **D.** emerging |

**Question 35**. Toxic chemicals \_ into the seas pose a risk to the public health.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **A.** release | **B.** released | **C.** to release | **D.** which released |

**MODULE 19: TỪ VỰNG (VOCABULARY)**

**BÀI TẬPÁP DỤNG 11**

1. Through an\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, your letter was left unanswered.

A. overtone B. overcharge C. overtime D. oversight

2. My mother told me to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for an electrician when her fan was out of order.

A. send B. write C. rent D. turn

3. He failed in the election just because he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his opponent.

A. overestimated B. underestimated C. understated D. undercharged

4. Captain Scott’s\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to the South Pole was marked by disappointment and tragedy.

A. excursion B. visit C. tour D. expedition

5. Jane will have to repeat the course because her work has been\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. unpleasant B. unnecessary C. unusual D. unsatisfactory

6. They thought the man was drunk because he behaved\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. affluently B. abnormally C. phenomenally D. extraordinary

7. She had never been in good health, but she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_her husband by twenty years.

A. overlived B. outlived C. lived longer D. underlived

8. Their efforts were much\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_when they won 2 gold, medals in bodybuilding and billiards.

A. considered B. required C. expended D. appreciated

9. Their discussion quickly developed into a\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_argument over who should receive the money.

A. burning B. heated C. hot D. scorching

10. I’m sorry, teacher. I’ve\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_my homework on the bus.

A. left B. let C. forgotten D. missed

11. She kindly offered to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me the way to the post office.

A. show B. describe C. direct D. explain

12. Two thousand people are\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_as having cancer of the mouth every year; and 60 percent of them will die within five years.

A. regarded B. diagnosed C. checked D. killed

13. Police are warning the public to be on the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for suspicious packages.

A. care B. alert C. guard D. alarm

14. Half of the children were away from school last week because of\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of influenza.

A. a breakthrough B. an outbreak C. a break-out D. an outburst

15. He was\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_when I had those problems and said whatever I did he would stand by me.

A. exciting B. supportive C. busy D. dull

16. U.S President Obama has become the first\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_president to visit Hiroshima since 1945.

A. standing B. sitting C. working D. retiring

17. In some countries, on moral\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that education should not be taxed, there is no tax on books.

A. idea B. principle C. belief D. concept

18. Farmers collect household and garden waste to make\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. floor coverings B. glassware C. compost D. pipes

19. Although we have a large number of students, each one receives\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_attention.

A. alone B. only C. single D. individual

20. In many countries, education is\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_until the age of sixteen.

A. necessary B. compulsory C. essential D. legal

21. In order to avoid boredom, the most important thing is to keep oneself\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. occupied B. occupation C. occupant D. occupational

22. Ebola virus disease which is ongoing in West Africa is a serve, often fatal illness, with a case\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_rate of up to 90%.

A. fatality B. dead C. mortal D. dying

23. At the universities of Oxford and Cambridge the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of teachers to students is very high.

A. proportion B. ratio C. percentage D. number

24. The children had been\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of the danger, but had taken no notice.

A. prevented B. warned C. explained D. shown

25. We need\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_actions and interventions of the local authorities to prevent national parks from being destroyed by pollution.

A. excitedly B. threateningly C. approximately D. timely

26. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) is a specialized\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of the United Nations established on November 16,1945.

A. office B. agency C. company D. enterprise

27. Euro 2016, which is the men’s football\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of Europe, is scheduled to be held in France from 10 June to 10 July 2016.

A. championship B. champions C. tournament D. final

28. A lot of children participated in\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_performances.

A. fundraising B. raising-fund C. fundraise D. funding-raise

29. Mai is a\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. She seldom feels sad or disappointed with her life.

A. pessimist B. pessimistic C. optimistic D. optimist

30. Do you think he is\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of doing the job?

A. suitable B. able C. competent D. capable

31. A \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ knit community is the one in which relationships are very close.

A. actively B. quickly C. hardly D. close

32. The manager did not offer her the job because of her untidy\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. sight B. view C. presence D. appearance

33. Many young people have objected to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_marriage, which is decided by the parents of the bride and groom.

A. agreed B. compulsory C. contractual D. sacrificed

34. I was going to leave when something happened, which attracted my\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. attention B. sympathy C. thought D. surprise

35. ASEAN helps to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_regional cooperation in Southeast Asia in the spirit of equality and partnership.

A. invest B. promote C. advocate D. invest

36. Rowing is the act of propelling a boat with\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. sticks B. clubs C. oars D. bats

37. That beautiful girl died of an\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_morphine.

A. overweight B. overhear C. overdo D. overdose

38. This is valuable \_\_\_\_\_ chair which dates back to the eighteenth century.

A. traditional B. old-fashioned C. antique D. ancient

39. Paul was \_\_\_\_\_\_ of himself for having stolen money from his mother.

A. shy B. ashamed C. timid D. embarrassed

40. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ flowers are usually made of plastic or silk.

A. Unreal B. False C. Artificial D. Untrue

41. Students have to pay\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_fees when they attend public schools.

A. tuition B. teaching C. education D. learning

42. My husband and I both go out to work so we share the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. happiness B. household chores C. responsibility D. employment

43. When our teacher saw what we had done he was absolutely\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. angry B. upset C. furious D. annoyed

44. I enjoy walking to school, but on rainy days I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to going by bus.

A. would rather B. commit C. prefer D. resort

45. The traffic lights\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_green and I pulled away.

A. became B. turned C. got D.changed

46. They want to get young people to open a bank \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. count B. counter C. account D. deposit

47. They still remain the need for an integrated system of subsidies which will farmers to look after their upland environment and producing food.

A. enable B. adopt C. consume D. discourage

48. Although she loves movies, she doesn’t\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_enjoy live theatre.

A. partially B. regularly C. finally D. particularly

49. They attempted to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the painting to its original condition.

A. restore B. renovate C. repair D. refurbish

50. Instead of an increase, there has been a recent\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in crime.

A. crash B. drop C. break D. issue

51. Students also have the opportunity to choose from a wide range of\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_courses in the university.

A. compulsory B. optional C. required D. limited

52. The judge\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the murderer to a lifetime imprisonment.

A. accused B. convicted C. sentenced D. prosecuted

53. The\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for this position starts at thirty thousand euros per year.

A. wage B. payment C. fee D. salary

54. Iwant to take these jeans back because they are too small but I can’t find the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_anywhere.

A. receipt B. receiver C. reception D. receptionist

55. Everyone said that they had\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_themselves at the wedding.

A. enjoyed B. pleased C. impressed D. excited

56. The car burst into\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_but the driver managed to escape.

A. fire B. flames C. heat D. burning

57. When they thought they had enough evidence, the police \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the man with murder.

A. charged B. arrested C. suspected D. investigated

58. How much is the bus\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to the city centre?

A. fee B. fare C. price D. cost

59. Many traffic accidents are\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_by carelessness and impatience.

A. caused B. resulted C. occurred D. happened

60. The bus conductor told him to get off because he couldn’t pay the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. fare B. journey C. bill D. travel

61. Our team was losing but we managed to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the score.

A. get B. noticed C. even D. have

62. They studied hard and\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_they passed the entrance exam.

A. eventually B. finally C. at the end D. endingly

63. As the drug took\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, the patient became quieter.

A. effect B. force C. influence D. action

64. She\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the baby on the bed in order to change its nappy.

A. lay B. laid C. lied D. lain

65. Parents have great hopes of great\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_when they send their children to school.

A. wishes B. obligations C. expectations D. plans

66. The investment has had\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on the development of our project.

A. results B. progress C. effects D. interruptions

67. He would win the race if he\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_his brother’s example and trained harder.

A. repeated B. set C. answered D. followed

68. If you practice regularly, you can learn this language skill in short\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of a time.

A. period B. aspect C. arrangement D. activity

69. Students can\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a lot of information just by taking an active part in class.

A. concern B. install C. appear D. memorize

70. A few years ago, a fire\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_much of an overcrowded part of the city.

A. battled B. devastated C. mopped D. developed

71. The young should\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_themselves in social activities.

A. determine B. serve C. involve D. promote

72. I prefer\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_jobs because I don’t like keep on moving and changing all the time.

A. demanding B. challenging C. steady D. secure

73. In order to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.

A. achieve B. catch C. establish D. manage

74. It’s funny you should say that. I’ve just had the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_thought.

A. like B. identical C. alike D. likely

75. Many materials have been used for\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_teeth, including wood.

A. artificial B. false C. hand-made D. natural

76*.* A lot of residents had to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_from the unexpected hurricane last month.

A. protect B. recover C. suffer D. save

77. Each form of mass media has an important\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on society.

A. impact B. pressure C. affection D. role

78. There seems to be a large\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_between the number of people employed in service industries, and those employed in the primary sectors.

A. discrimination B. discretion C. discrepancy D. extinction

79. The mass media are\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of communication, such as books, newspapers, recordings, radio, movies, television, mobile phones and the Internet.

A. models B. modes C. parts D. types

80. The teacher hoped to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a positive, not a negative reply from his student.

A. respond B. donate C. elicit D. preface

81. She made the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_mistake of forgetting to put the s” on the verb in the third person singular.

A. classic B. important C. classical D. famous

82. I had a long\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_with my neighbor yesterday. We talked for hours.

A. explanation B. protest C. conversation D. accusation

83. I’m sorry that I giggled so much. I was in rather a silly\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. temper B. mood C. feeling D. outlook

84. The football match tomorrow evening will be broadcast\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on TV and radio.

A. simultaneously B. communally C. uniformly D. jointly

85. A relief\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_has been set up to help earthquake victims.

A. fund B. donation C. treasury D. collection

86. Bill Gates is probably the best known and most successful\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in computer software.

A. pioneer B. navigator C. generator D. volunteer

87. Making chicken soup is not difficult; it’s just a matter of following the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. ingredients B. design C. spices D. recipe

88. After his miraculous recovery from the stroke, the man spent the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of his life travelling and doing charity work.

A. remainder B. abundance C. legacy D. excess

89. We all wish to create a friendly and supportive environment\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to learning.

A. liable B. conducive C. detrimental D. accommodating

90. Economic reforms began in the Soviet Union in June 985 by the Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the Soviet economy.

A. repair B. reproduce C. reply D. restructure

91. Many people like the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of life in the countryside.

A. step B. pace C. speed D. space

92. The bank won’t lend you the money without some\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that you will pay it back.

A. profit B. interest C. charge D. guarantee

93. Tony is so\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that his friends tend to tell him all their problems.

A. confidential B. sympathetic C. critical D. optimistic

94. The question of late payment of the bill was\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_again at the meeting.

A. raised B. risen C. brought D. taken

95. Instead of being excited about the good news, Ted seemed to be\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. ignorant B. indifferent C. unlikely D. unexpected

96. Learners of English as a foreign language often fail to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_between unfamiliar sounds in that language.

A. separate B. differ C. distinguish D. solve

97. My first job was to arrange the files into\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_order from the oldest to the most recent.

A. alphabetical B. chronological C. numerical D. historical

98. Parts of the country are suffering water\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_after the unusually diy summer.

A. thirst B. shortage C. supply D. hunger

99. Thanks for bringing US a present. It was very\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of you.

A. adorable B. grateful C. thoughtful D. careful

100. The majority of people accept that modern drugs are the most effective way to cure a (n)\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. sicken B. illness C. symptom D. treatment

**MODULE 20 : REPORTED SPEECH**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| ***Một số thay đối khi chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp*** | | | |
| **Những thay đổi** | **Trực tiếp** | | **Gián tiếp** |
| ***Thay  đổi về  thì  (lùi 1 thì)*** | *Hiện tại đơn* | **- V(bare)/V(s,es)**  He said: “I live in a big city.”  **- am/is/are**  She said: “I am at home.” | **- Ved/V(cột2)**  He said (that) he lived in a big city.  **- was/were**  She said (that) she was at home. |
| *Quá khứ đơn* | **- Ved/V(cột 2)**  Peter said: “I did it by myself.”  **- was/were**  Mary said: “I was in the park last Sunday.” | **- Had + V(p2)**  Peter said (that) he had done it by himself.  **- Had been**  Mary said (that) she had been in the park the Sunday before. |
| *Hiện tại tiếp diễn* | **- Am/is/are + Ving**  She said: “We are learning now.” | **- Was/were + Ving**  She said (that) she was learning then. |
| *Quá khứ tiếp diễn* | **- Was/we re + Ving**  He said: “I was sleeping then.” | **- Had + been + Ving**  He said (that) he had been sleeping then. |
| *Hiện tại hoàn thành* | **- Have/has + Vp2**  He said: “Someone has stolen my bag.” | **- Had + Vp2**  He said (that) someone had stolen his bag. |
| *Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn* | **- Have/has + been + Ving**  She said: “I have been waiting for you for 3 hours.” | **- Had + been + Ving**  She said (that) she had been waiting for me for 3 hours. |
| *Tương lai đơn* | **- Will/shall + V(bare)**  Lan said: “I will call you tonight” | **- Would + V(bare)**  Lan said (that) she would call me that night. |
| *Tương lai gần* | **- Am/is/are + going to + V**  Huong said: “We are going to have a party next weekend.” | **- Was/were + going to + V**  Huong said (that) they were going to have a party the next weekend.” |
|  | *Động từ khuyết thiếu* | **- Can**  He said: “I can’t come on time.” | **- Could**  He said (that) he couldn’t come on time. |
| **- Must/have to (sự bắt buộc)**  She said: “I must take care of my little brother.”  **- Must (sự suy diễn)**  He said: “You must be tired now.”  **- Must (đưa ra lời khuyên)**  My father said: “This exam is very important. You must prepare for it well.”  **- Mustn’t (sự cấm đoán)**  She said: “You mustn’t make noise here.” | **- Had to**  She said (that) she had to take care of her little brother.  **- Must**  He said (that) I must be tired then.  **- Must**  My father said (that) that exam was very important and I must prepare for it well.  **- Mustn’t**  She said (that) I mustn’t make noise there. |
| **- May**  My teacher said: “You may use dictionaries for this test.” | **- Might**  My teacher said (that) we might use dictionaries for that test.” |
| **- Need**  He said: “I need do it  now.” | **- Needed/had to**  He said (that) he needed/had to do it then. |
| **- Needn’t (dùng ở hiện tại)**  She said: “We needn’t set off early.”  **- Needn’t (dùng ở tương lai)**  He said: “You needn’t come here tomorrow.” | **- Needn’t/didn’t have to**  She said (that) they needn’t/didn’t have to set off early.  **- Wouldn’t have to**  He said (that) I wouldn’t have to come here the next day. |
| ***Trạng từ chỉ thời gian*** | | Today | that day |
| Tonight | that night |
| Tomorrow | the next day / the following day |
| Tomorrow morning | the next morning |
| Yesterday | the day before / the previous day |
| Ago | before |
| Now | then |
| Next (Tuesday) | the next / following Tuesday |
| Last (Tuesday) | the previous Tuesday / the Tuesday before |
| The day after tomorrow | in two days’ time / two days later |
| The day before yesterday | Two days before |
| Here | there |
| **Các đại từ** | ***Subject***  ***pronouns*** | I | He/ She |
| You | I/ We/ They |
| We | We/ They |
| ***Object***  ***pronouns*** | me | him/ her |
| you | me/ us/ them |
| us | us/ them |
| ***Possessive***  ***adjectives*** | my | his/ her |
| your | my/ our/ their |
| our | our/ their |
| ***Possessive***  ***pronouns*** | mine | his/ hers |
| yours | mine/ ours/theirs |
| ours | ours/ theirs |
| ***Demonstratives*** | this | that |
| these | those |

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG 1**

1. *“You’d better stay at home during this time” he said to Lan.*

A. He ordered Lan to stay at home during that time.

B. He warmed Lan against staying at home during that time.

C. He advised Lan to stay at home during that time.

D. He thanked Lan for staying at home during that time.

2. *“What have you done to my laptop, Jane?” asked Tom.*

A. Tom asked Jane what had she done to his laptop.

B. Tom asked Jane what has she done to his laptop.

C. Tom asked Jane what she had done to his laptop.

D. Tom asked Jane what she has done to his laptop.

3. *“When did you start practising yoga?” asked Tom.*

A. Tom wanted to know when I had started practising yoga.

B. Tom wanted to know when had I started practising yoga.

C. Tom wanted to know when did I start practising yoga.

D. Tom wanted to know when I was starting practising yoga.

4. *“Why didn’t you attend the meeting, Mary?” Tom asked.*

A. Tom asked Mary why didn’t she attend the meeting.

B. Tom asked Mary why she hadn’t attended the meeting.

C. Tom asked Mary why hadn’t she attended the meeting.

D. Tom asked Mary why she wasn’t attending the meeting.

5. *“How long have you lived here, Lucy?” asked Jack.*

A. Jack asked Lucy how long did she live here.

B. Jack asked Lucy how long had she lived there.

C. Jack asked Lucy how long she lived here.

D. Jack asked Lucy how long she had lived there.

6. *“You had better see a doctor if the sore throat does not clear up,” she said to me.*

A. She reminded me of seeing a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.

B. She ordered me to see a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.

C. She insisted that I see a doctor unless the sore throat did not clear up.

D. She suggested that I see a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.

7. *“Why don’t we go out for dinner tonight?” said Jim.*

A. Jim suggested going out for dinner that night.

B. Jim refused to go out for dinner that night.

C. Jim denied going out for dinner that night.

D. Jim promised to go out for dinner that night.

8. *“You got an A in Chemistry. Congratulations!” Peter said to his classmate.*

A. Peter encouraged his classmate to get an A in Chemistry.

B. Peter persuaded his classmate to get an A in Chemistry.

C. Peter insisted on getting an A in Chemistry for his classmate.

D. Peter congratulated his classmate on getting an A in Chemistry.

9. *“No, I won’t go to work at the weekend, “said Sally.*

A. Sally refused to go to work at the weekend.

B. Sally promised to go to work at the weekend.

C. Sally apologized for not going to work at the weekend.

D. Sally regretted not going to work at the weekend.

10. *“We will not leave until we see the manager, “said the customers.*

A. The customers promised to leave before they saw the manager.

B. The customers refused to leave until they saw the manager.

C. The customers agreed to leave before they saw the manager.

D. The customers decided to leave because they did not see the manager.

11. *“Why don’t we go camping at the weekend?” he said.*

A. He denied going camping at the weekend.

B. He suggested going camping at the weekend.

C. He objected to going camping at the weekend.

D. He apologized for going camping at the weekend.

12. *“I didn’t give John the money,” said Mary.*

A. Mary denied giving John the money.

B. Mary admitted giving John the money.

C. Mary suggested giving John the money.

D. Mary remembered giving John the money.

13. *“Would you like to go to the show with me?” Anna said to Bella.*

A. Anna reminded Bella to go to the show with her.

B. Anna persuaded Bella to go to the show with her.

C. Anna encouraged Bella to go to the show with her.

D. Anna invited Bella to go to the show with her.

14. *“You should take better care of your health, “said Tom’s mother.*

A. Tom’s mother promised to take better care of his health.

B. Tom’s mother ordered him to take better care of his health.

C. Tom’s mother required him to take better care of his health.

D. Tom’s mother advised him to take better care of his health.

15. *“Don’t forget to submit your assignments by Thursday,” said the teacher to the students.*

A. The teacher reminded the students to submit their assignments by Thursday.

B. The teacher allowed the students to submit their assignments by Thursday,

C. The teacher ordered the students to submit their assignments by Thursday.

D. The teacher encouraged the students to submit their assignments by Thursday

16. *“I’m sorry I haven’t finished the assignment,” Fiona said.*

A. Fiona denied having finished the assignment.

B. Fiona regretted having finished the assignment.

C. Fiona refused to finish the assignment.

D. Fiona apologised for not finishing the assignment.

17. *“I’ll call you as soon as I arrive at the airport,” he said to me.*

A. He objected to calling me as soon as he arrived at the airport.

B. He promised to call me as soon as he arrived at the airport.

C. He denied calling me as soon as he arrived at the airport.

D. He reminded me to call him as soon as he arrived at the airport.

18. *“What are you going to do after school, Anne?” Kevin asked.*

A. Kevin asked Anne what was she going to do after school.

B. Kevin asked Anne what she was going to do after school.

C. Kevin wanted to know what Anne would do after school.

D. Kevin wanted to know what would Anne do after school.

19. *He said: “I’m sorry I didn’t reply to the letter.”*

A. He apologized for not to reply to the letter.

B. He apologized for not to replying to the letter.

C. He apologized for didn’t reply to the letter.

D. He apologized for not replying to the letter.

20. *“It can’t be Mike who leaked the document, it might be Tom.” said our manager.*

A. Our manager suspected Tom of having leaked the document not Mike.

B. Our manager blamed Tom for having leaked the document instead of Mike.

C. Our manager showed his uncertainty about who leaked the document: Mike or Tom.

D. Our manager made it clear that Tom was the one who leaked the document, not Mike.

21. *“Tom, please don’t tell anyone my new telephone number.” said Jane.*

A. Jane told Tom please don’t tell anyone my new telephone number.

B. Jane asked Tom not to tell anyone her new telephone number.

C. Jane said to Tom not to tell anyone her new telephone number, please.

D. Jane wanted Tom didn’t tell anyone my new telephone number.

22. *“You broke my glasses,” said the woman to me.*

A. The woman insisted on breaking her glasses.

B. The woman advised me to break her glasses.

C. The woman told me to break her glasses.

D. The woman blamed me for breaking her glasses.

23. *The doctor said, “You really ought to rest for a few days, Jasmine.”*

A. Jasmine’s doctor insisted that she should rest for a few days.

B. The doctor suggested that Jasmine should take a short rest.

C. The doctor strongly advised Jasmine to take a few days’ rest.

D. It is the doctor’s recommendation that Jasmine rested shortly.

24. *“Don’t forget to go to the supermarket after work!” he said.*

A. He told me that I shouldn’t forget to go to the supermarket after work.

B. He requested me not to forget to go to the supermarket after work.

C. He reminded me to go to the supermarket after work.

D. He asked me no to forget to go to the supermarket after work

25. *“If I were you, I would do morning exercise regularly.” said John.*

A. John asked me to do morning exercise regularly.

B. John prevented me from doing morning exercise regularly.

C. John advised me to do morning exercise regularly.

D. John congratulated me on doing morning exercise regularly.

26. *“Don’t leave the house until I get back, John “ his sister said.*

A. John’s sister told him to leave the house when she got back.

B. John’s sister told him not to go out until she gets back.

C. John’s sister told him not to leave the house until she got back.

D. John’s sister told him to stay at home till she got back.

27. *Mary said: “I am sure that you broke my vase, Jim”.*

A. Mary accused Jim of having broken her vase.

B. Mary said she knew that Jim broke her vase.

C. Mary asked Jim of having broken her vase.

D. Mary told Jim to break the vase.

28. *“Shall I carry the suitcase for you, Mary?” said John.*

A. John offered Mary to carry the suitcase for Mary.

B. John offered to carry the suitcase for Mary.

C. John offered carrying the suitcase for Mary.

D. John offered Mary if he should carry the suitcase for her.

29. *“I was not there at the time,” he said.*

A. He denied to have been there at the time.

B. He denied that he had not been there at the time.

C. He denied to be there at the time.

D. He denied having been there at the time.

30. *“Leave my house now or I’ll call the police!” shouted the lady to the man.*

A. The lady threatened to call the police if the man didn’t leave her house.

B. The lady said that she would call the police if the man didn’t leave her house.

C. The lady told the man that she would call the police if he didn’t leave her house.

D. The lady informed the man that she would call the police if he didn’t leave her house.

31. *“You did a great job! I’m proud of your achievement,” said the woman to her grandchild.*

A. The woman said that her grandchild’s job was great and she was so proud of his work achievement.

B. The woman told her grandchild that she was proud of his achievement at work.

C. The woman told her grandchild to do a great job so that she could be proud of his achievement.

D. The woman complimented her grandchild on his achievement.

32. *“I will let you know the answer by the end of this week,” Tim said to Jane.*

A. Tim suggested giving Jane the answer by the end of the week.

B. Tim promised to give Jane the answer by the end of the week.

C. Tim insisted on letting Jane know the answer by the end of the week.

D. Tim offered to give Jane the answer by the end of the week.

33. *“John, why don’t you go on a picnic with me next weekend?” said Janet.*

A. Janet suggested John went on a picnic with her the nest weekend.

B. Janet suggested John go on a picnic with her the next weekend.

C. Janet suggested John should go on a picnic with her next weekend.

D. Janet suggested John to go on a picnic with her next weekend.

34. *“Don’t come home late, Jenny, it’s dangerous!” her father said.*

A. Jenny’s father told her not go home late and it was dangerous.

B. Jenny’s father told her not to go home late because it was dangerous.

C. Jenny’s father advised her go home early.

D. Jenny’s father asked her against being home late because it may be dangerous.

35. *His wife said to him: “Write to me as often as you can”.*

A. His wife told him to write to her as often as he can.

B. His wife told him to write to her as often as he could.

C. His wife told him writing to her as often as he could.

D. His wife told him writing to her as often as he can.

**MODULE 21: THỨC GIẢ ĐỊNH - THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**

**I.Định nghĩa**

Câu giả định hay còn gọi là câu cầu khiến là loại câu đối tượng thứ nhất muốn đối tượng thứ hai làm

việc gì. Câu giả định có tính chất cầu khiến chứ không mang tính ép buộc như câu mệnh lênh.

**II.Cách sử dụng**

Câu giả định chủ yếu được sử dụng để nói đến những sự việc không chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra. Ví dụ, chúng ta

sử dụng khi nói về những sự việc mà một ai đó:

+ Muốn xảy ra.

+ Dự đoán sẽ xảy ra.

+ Xảy ra trong tưỏ’ĩig tượng.

**III.Phân loại**

Thức giả định được chia thành ba loại sau:

**1.Hiện tại giả định**

**a.Hình thức**

Present Subjunctive (hiện tại giả định).

Past Subjunctive (quá khứ giả định).

Past perfect Subjunctive (quá khứ hoàn thành giả định).

Hiện tại giả định ở tất cả các ngôi có hình thức giống như động từ nguyên thể không có "to". Từ "that"

phải luôn được xuất hiện trong câu giả định hiện tại ngoại trừ một số thành ngữ. (Nếu "that" bị lược bỏ thì hầu hết các động từ được theo sau bởi to infinitive ) Ví dụ:

They order that people get out of the building immediately.

=> They order people to get out of the building immediately.

**b. Cách dùng**

\* Dùng trong một số câu thành ngữ/ câu cảm thán để thể hiện một ao ước, hi vọng hay một lời cầu

chúc.

Ví dụ:

(God) Bless you! (Chúa phù hộ cho con) Heaven/God help sb! (Cầu chúa phù hộ cho ai) Long live Vietnam! (Việt Nam muôn năm) Heaven forbid! (Lạy trời!)

Success attend you! (Chúc bạn thành công)

\* Dùng sau một sô các động từ đê thể hiện ý muốn, yêu cầu, đề nghị, gợi ý, ra lệnh. Những động từ đó là:

+ advise / ədˈvaɪz /: khuyên bảo.

+ demand / dɪˈmɑːnd /: đòi hỏi, yêu cầu.

+ prefer / prɪˈfəːr /: thích hơn, ưa hơn.

+ require / rɪˈkwaɪər /: đòi hỏi, yêu cầu.

+ insist / ɪnˈsɪst /: cứ nhất định, khăng khăng đòi, cố nài.

+ propose / prəˈpəʊz /: đề nghị, đề xuất, đưa ra.

+ stipulate / ˈstɪpjuleɪt /: quy định, đặt điều kiện

+ command / kəˈmɑːnd /: ra lệnh, chỉ thị.

+ move / muːv /: chuyển, khuấy động, làm cảm động, đề nghị

+ recommend /rekə'mend/: giới thiệu, tiến cử.

+ suggest / səˈdʒest /: đề nghị, đề xuất, gợi ý.

+ decree / dɪˈkriː/: ra lệnh, quy định bằng sắc lệnh

+ order / ˈɔːdə/: ra lệnh.

+ request / rɪˈkwest/ /: thỉnh cầu, yêu cầu, đề nghị.

+ urge / ɜːdʒ /: hối thúc, thúc giục.

+ ask / ɑːsk /: đòi hỏi, xin, yêu cầu, thỉnh cầu

**Vi du:**

The law requires that every one have his car checked at least once a month.

She suggested that we meet at the restaurant in the Hilton Garden Inn for a change of venue. The university requires that all its students take this course

\* Dùng sau một sô tính từ sau:

+ important / ɪmˈpɔːtənt /: quan trọng,

+ necessary / ˈnesəseri /: cần thiết, thiết yếu.

+ urgent / ˈɜrdʒənt /: khẩn thiết, cấp bách

+ obligatory / əˈblɪɡətri /: bắt buộc, cưỡng bách

+ essential / ɪˈsenʃl /: cần thiết, cốt yếu, chủ yếu.

+ advisory / ədˈvaɪzəri /: tư vấn, cố vấn.

+ recommended/ ˌrekəˈmend /: được giới thiệu, tiến cử

+ required / rɪˈkwaɪəd/: đòi hỏi, cần thiết

+ mandatory / ˈmændətəri /: có tính cách bắt buộc

+ proposed / prəˈpəʊzd /: được đề nghị, dự kiến

+ suggested / səˈdʒesid /: giới thiệu, đề nghị

+ vital / ˈvaɪtl /: sống còn, quan trọng

+ crucial / ˈkruːʃəl /: quyết định, cốt yếu, chủ yếu

+ imperative / ɪmˈperətɪv /: bắt buộc, cấp bách

Vi du:

It is crucial that you be there before Tom arrives. It is important that she attend the meeting on time.

It is recommended that he take a raincoat with him.

\* Tất cả các danh từ xuất phát từ những động từ và tính từ trên đều buộc mệnh đề sau nó phải ở dạng giả định, nếu như nó diễn đạt các yếu tố như thể hiện ý muốn, yêu cầu đề nghị, ra lệnh, gợi ý. Những danh từ đó là:

+ demand / dɪˈmɑːnd /: đòi hỏi, yêu cầu

+ recommendation / ˌrekəmenˈdeɪʃn /: sự giới thiệu, sự tiến cử

+ insistence / ɪnˈsɪstəns /: sự khăng khăng đòi, sự cố nài

+ request / rɪˈkwest /: lời thỉnh cầu, lời yêu cầu

+ proposal / prəˈpəʊzl /: sự đề nghị, sự đề xuất

+ suggestion / səˈdʒestʃən /: sự đề nghị, sự gợi ý

+ preference / ˈprefrəns /: sự thích hơn

+ importance / ɪmˈpɔːtənt /: sự quan trọng

Ví dụ:

There is suggestion from the doctor that the patient stop smoking. It is recommendation that the vehicle owner be present at the court. Lưu ý:

Trong ngữ pháp Anh-Anh trước động từ ở mệnh đề 2 thường có should, người Anh chỉ bỏ should khi sau nó là động từ to be nhưng ngữ pháp Anh-Mỹ không dùng should cho toàn bộ động từ ở mệnh đề 2.

\* Dùng trong cấu trúc với “would rather" có hai chủ ngữ

Là loại câu người thứ nhất muốn người thứ hai làm việc gì (nhưng làm hay không còn phụ thuộc vào người thứ hai). Trong trường hợp này, động từ ở mệnh đề 2 để ở dạng nguyên thể không to. Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định đặt not trước nguyên thể không to.

Ví dụ:

I would rather that you type this letter tomorrow.

He would rather that I not forget the next appointment.

Lưu ý:

Ngữ pháp nói ngày nay, đặc biệt là ngữ pháp Mỹ cho phép bỏ that trong cấu trúc này mà vẫn giữ nguyên hình thức giả định.

**2. Quá khứ giả định**

**a. Hình thức**

Quá khứ giả định ở tất cả các ngôi có hình thức giống như thì quá khứ đơn nhưng riêng với to be thì ta chia là were cho tất cả các ngôi (nhưng trong văn phong giao tiếp hằng ngày thì có xu hướng dùng was cho các chủ ngữ là danh từ số ít).

**b. Cách dùng**

\* Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 2 để diễn tả một điều kiện không có thật ở hiện tại hoặc không thể xảy ra

được ở tương lai.

**Ví dụ:**

If I were you, I would apologize to her.

If I knew her new address, I would come to see her.

\* Dùng trong câu ước không có thực ở hiện tại (wish = If only)

**Ví dụ:**

I wish I were rich and famous.

If only my son could study as well as you.

\* Được sử dụng sau "as if / as though" để ám chỉ một điều gì đó là không có thật ở hiện tại hoặc không

thể xảy ra (không có sự khác nhau nào giữa as if và as though).

**Ví dụ:**

He talks as if he were my father.

He behaves as though he owned the house

\* Dùng trong mẫu câu “would rather" để chỉ một ao ước đối lập với hiện tại.

**Ví dụ:**

Henry would rather that his girlfriend worked in the same department as he does. (His girlfriend does not work in the same department).

Jane would rather that it were winter now. (In fact, it is not winter now).

Lưu ý:

Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định dùng didn't + verb hoặc were not sau chủ ngữ thứ hai. Ví dụ:

Henry would rather that his girlfriend didn’t work in the same department as he does. Jane would rather that it were not **winter now.**

**\* Dùng trong cấu trúc "it's time..."**

**Ví dụ:**

It's time you stopped playing games and helped me with the housework.

= It's time for you to stop playing games and help me with the housework.

Lưu ý:

Nếu sau: "It's time + I/ he/ she/ it" là động từ to be thì ta dùng was.

**3. Quá khứ hoàn thành giả định**

**a. Hình thức**

Quá khứ hoàn thành giả định có hình thức giống như thì quá khứ hoàn thành(had + Vp2)

**b. Cách dùng**

\* Dùng trong mệnh đề điều kiện của câu điều kiện loại 3 để diễn tả những giả thuyết không có thật ở

trong quá khứ.

**Ví dụ:**

If I had seen the film last night, I could have told you about it. If I had known you were ill, I would have visited you.

\* Dùng sau "wish/ If only" để diễn đạt ý cầu mong hoặc giả định đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ. Cấu trúc:

Ví dụ:

I wish that I hadn't spent so much money. If only she had asked someone's advice. Lưu ý:

Ta có thể dùng wished thay thế mà không làm thay đổi thì của mệnh đề phía sau. Ví dụ: I wished (that) I hadn't spent so much money.

\* Dùng sau "as if / as though" để chỉ một giả định không có thật trong quá khứ. Cấu trúc:

**Ví dụ:**

He looked frightened as if he had seen ghosts.

He talked as though he had known everything about it.

Lưu ý: Hai công thức giả định với “as if” và ‘as though" chỉ được áp dụng khi chúng chỉ một điều đối lập với thực tế ở hiện tại hoặc quá khứ. Nếu nó chỉ một dự đoán về một điều gì đó mà nó có thể xảy ra hoặc không thì ta không áp dụng hai công thức giả định trên.

**Ví dụ:**

It looks as if it's going to rain. (Perhaps it will rain.)

\* Dùng với cấu trúc would rather (hai chủ ngữ) để chỉ một mong muốn đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ.

**Ví dụ:**

Bob would rather that Jill had gone to class yesterday. (Jill did not go to class yesterday) Bill would rather that his wife hadn't divorced him. (His wife divorced him.)

**Bài tập áp dụng**

**Exercise 1: Chọn phương án đúng để hoàn thành những câu sau đây:**

1. It is necessary that children \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of their old parents.

A. takes care B. to take care c. take care D. took care

2. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_complaining about the weather.

A. would stop B. stop c. stopped D. had stopped

3. It is essential that every student \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to learn English at university.

A. had B. have c. has D. to have

4. We wish we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a large house but we can't afford it now.

A. have B. had c. can have D. will have

5. My friend won't lend me his car. I wish\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. he lent me his car B. he didn't lend me his car

C. he would lend me his car D. he will lend me his car

6. I'm sorry I haven't got any money on me. I wish \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. I have got no money on me B. I have some money on me

C. I had some money on me D. I had got no money on me

7. My friends didn’t take part in the game. I wish \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. my friends took part in the game B. my friends had taken part in the game

C. my friends would take part in the game D. my friends did take part in the game

8. It wasn't fine yesterday. I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ wish

A. it was fine yesterday B. it would fine yesterday

C. it will fine yesterday D. it had been fine yesterday

9. I wish I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_Psychology when I was a college student.

A. had studied B. would study C. studied D. studied

10. I wish someone \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to help me with that work tomorrow.

A. offer B. offered C. would offer D. had offered

11. If only I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_play the guitar as well as you!

A. would B. should C. could D. might

12. When I saw Tom, he looked \_\_\_\_\_\_\_he had been ill.

A. so B. such as C. the same D. as if

13. Mrs White always talks to her baby as though he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_an adult.

A. is B. were C. had been D. will be

14. When he came out of the room, he looked \_\_\_\_\_\_he had seen a ghost.

A. as B. as though C. when D. if

15. Susan's doctor insists \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for a few days.

A. that she is resting B. her resting C. that she rest D. her to rest

16. The doctor suggested that his patient \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. stop smoking B. stops smoking C. stopped smoking D. to stop smoking

17. It is necessary that he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the books.

A. find B. doesn't find C. don't find D. did not find

18. It has been proposed that we \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the topic.

A. to change B. changed C. changing D. change

19. It's important that every student \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_all the lectures.

A. attends B. attend C. has attended D. attended

20. It's time we all \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_now.

A. leave B. to leave C. left D. have left

21. He acts as if he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_English perfectly.

A. know B. knew C. have known D. had known

22. She acted as though she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him before.

A. knew B. know C. had known D. has known

23. I would rather that I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him to my birthday party yesterday.

A. invited B. have invited C. had invited D. invite

24. She would rather Mary here right now.

A. be B. were C. was D. were/ was

25. I suggest that he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ harder

A. should study B. study C. studied D. should study/ study

1 C 2 C 3 B 4 B 5 C 6 C 7 B 8 D 9 A 10 C 11 C 12 D 13 B

14 B 15 C 16 A 17 A 18 D 19 B 20 C 21 B 22 C 23 C 24 B 25 D

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG 5**

***1. Lan didn't apply for the job in the library. She regrets it now.***

**A.** Lan wishes she had applied for the job in the library.

**B.** Lan wishes she hadn’t applied for the job in the library.

**C.** Lan wishes she would apply for the job in the library.

**D.** Lan wishes she applies for the job in the library.

***2. Maria says she'd like to have been put in a higher class.***

**A.** Maria wishes that she will be put in a higher class.

**B.** Maria wishes that she is put in a higher class.

**C.** Maria wishes that she had been put in a higher class.

**D.** Maria wishes that she were put in a higher class.

***3. He broke up with her but now he thinks that was a mistake.***

**A.** He wishes he hadn't broken up with her.

**B.** He wishes not to have broken her up.

**C.** He regrets having not broken up with her.

**D.** He was mistaken with breaking up with her.

***4. I regret not going to the airport to see her off.***

**A.** I wish I had gone to the airport to see her off.

**B.** If only I would go to the airport to see her off.

**C.** I regret to go to the airport to see her off.

**D.** If I were you, I would go to the airport to see her off.

***5. It's such a pity my mother can't attend my birthday party.***

**A.** If only my mother could attend my birthday party.

**B.** If only my mother had attended my birthday party.

**C.** I am very sorry that my mother didn't attend my birthday party.

**D.** I wonder why my mother can't attend my birthday party.

***6. You are not tactful; that is why you are always offending other people.***

**A.** You must have offended other people because you are not tactful.

**B.** If you were tactful, you would satisfy other people.

**C.** I wish you were tactful so that you don’t offend other people.

**D.** You should have been tactful so that you didn’t offend other people.

***7. It is a pity that I can’t speak English as native speaker.***

**A.** I wish I could speak English as a native speaker.

**B.** I wish I couldn’t speak English as a native speaker.

**C.** I wish I can speak English as a native speaker.

**D.** I wish I have spoken English as a native speaker.

***8. His parents are away on holiday. He really needs their help now.***

**A.** As long as his parents are at home, they will be able to help him.

**B.** He wishes his parents were at home and could help him now.

**C.** If his parents are at home, they can help him now.

**D.** If only his parents had been at home and could have helped him.

**9. *I didn't read the book from which the film was made. I can't tell you about it.***

**A.** I wish I had read the book from which the film was made.

**B.** If I had read the book from which the film was made, I could have told you about it.

**C.** I wish I had read the book from which the film was made and could tell you about it.

**D.** As long as I didn’t read the book from which the film was made, I can’t tell you about it.

***10. He doesn't have any money now. He can't lend his friend some.***

**A.** As long as he has much money now, he can lend his friend some.

**B.** If he has much money now, he can lend his friend some.

**C.** He wishes he had money now and could lend his friend some.

**D.** If only he had had money now and could have lent his friend some.

**BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG 2**

**Exercise 1:** **Choose the word or phrase that best complete the sentence** (**A,B,C** **or D)**

1. If that hat costs much, I ……………a small one.

A. would have bought B. will buy C. bought D. would buy.

2) If you …………more carefully,you wouldn’t have had so many accidents.

A. drive B. drove C. had driven D. driven

3) If I spoke English, my job …………………a lot easier.

A. was B. were C. will be D. would be

4. If he ……………. to London yesterday, he …………. his old friend

A. went / would meet B. go / would meet

C. had gone / would have met D. went / would have met

5. I will lend them some money If they ……………. me.

A. ask B. will ask C. asked D. had asked

6. If we had known who he was, we ……………. him to speak at our meeting.

A. would have invited B. have invited C. will invite D. would invite

7. My dog will bark if it ……………. any strange sound.

A. hear B. hears C. heard D. had heard.

8. If I …………. enough money,I will buy a house.

A. had B. had had C. will have D. have

9. If you ………….. away, I will send for a policeman.

A. not go B. don’t go C. hadn’t gone D. didn’t go

10. If I ………in your place, I would accept Mr Anderson’s invitation.

A. were B. am C. be D. was

11. What ……….. we do if they don’t come tomorrow?

A. would B. will C. did D. had

12. If I ……………. you, I would tell the truth.

A. is B. am C. were D. was

13. If I had enough time now, I ……….. to my parents.

A. would write B. write C. will write D. wrote

14. It’s too bad Helen isn’t here. If she ……….. here, she …….. what to do.

A. is / will know B. was / knows

C. were / would know D. are / would have known

15. If she …………. late again, she will lose her job.

A. come B. came C comes D. had come

16. I will let you know if I ……….. out what’s happening.

A. find B. finds C. found D. had found

17. If we ……………. in a town, life would be better.

A. live B. lived C. would live D. had lived

18. I’m sure he wouln’t mind if we ……………early.

A. arrive B. arriving C. arrived D. had arrived

19. If I won the lottery, I ……. you half the money.

A. gave B. had given C. will give D. would give

20. It ……….. be a pity if she married Fred.

A. will B. would C. can D. may

21. If I’m free on Saturday, I ………….. to the mountains.

A. to go B. could go C. went D. can go

22. we ……………. you if we have time.

A. will phone B. would phone C. phoned D. had phoned

23. If I …………. you,I would help them.

A. am B. will be C. were D. had been

24. I could have understood him if he ……………more slowly.

A. speaks B. spoke C. had spoken D. would speak

25. If I had known that you were in hospital, I …………….. you.

A. will visit B. would have visited C. visit D. don’t visit

26. I wouldn’t have believed it if I ………………it with my own eyes.

A. had seen B. saw C. hadn’t seen D. didn’t see

27. What would you have done if the lift ……….. struck between two floors at that time.

A. had got B. got C. gets D. getting

28. If I …………that the traffic lights were red, I …………………..

A. had realized / would have stopped B. had realized / wouldn’t have stopped

C. realized / would stop C. realize / will not stop

29. If we have some eggs,I ……………you a cake.

A. made B. makes C. will make D. would make

30. If you …………so busy, I would have shown you how to play.

A. hadn’t been B. weren’t C. aren’t D. wouldn’t be.

**Exercise 2: Choose the best answer**.

1. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it.

A. would never have believed B. don’t believe

C. hadn’t believed D. can’t believe

2. Put all the toys away……….. someone slips and falls on them.

A. provided that B. unless C. in case D. so long as

3. Many argue that the world will never make the switch to cleaner forms of energy………… easily obtainable soil sources remain.

A. suppose that B. providing that C. unless D. as long as

4. ………….. you to be offered that job, would you have to move to another city?

A. should B. Were C. had D. Provided that

5. You will find their house \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you take a good street map with you.

A. as long as B. even if C. if only D. otherwise:

6. You’d better stop spending money, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you will end up in debt

A. unless B. otherwise C. if D. in case

7. Henry\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a rich man today if he had been more careful in the past.

A. will have been B. will be C. would have been D. would be

8. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you visit him, give him my best wishes.

A. Could B. Would C. Should D. Might

9. Were she ten years younger, she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the beauty contest.

A. will enter B. had entered C. would enter D. would have entered

10. If it……….. their encouragement, he could have given it up.

A. had been for B. hadn’t been C. hadn’t been for D. wouldn’t have been for

11. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ any employee be ill, they must call the office to inform their head of departure.

A. Were B. Should C. Had D. If

12. If Lucy’s car \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ down, she would be here right now.

A. didn’t break B. hadn’t broken C. wouldn’t have been D. doesn’t break

13. Harry would certainly have attended the proceedings \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. if he didn’t get a flat tyre B. had he not had a flat tyre

C. had the tyre not flattened itself D. if the flat tyre didn’t happen

1. If I \_\_\_\_\_ my wallet at home this morning, I \_\_\_\_\_ money for lunch now.

A. leave / will have B. didn’t leave / would have

C. hadn’t left / would have D. hadn’t left / would have had

1. I………you sooner had someone told me you were in the hospital.
2. would have visited B. visited C. had visited D. visit
3. ………then what I know today,I would have saved myself a lot of time and trouble over the years.

A-had I known B-did I know C-If I know D- If I would know

1. If someone ……in to the store,smile and say, “May I help you?”

A-comes B-came C-would come D-could come

1. Trees won’t grow ……….. there is enough water.

A. if B. when C. unless D. as

**Exercise 3 choose the best answer**

1. **But for two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.**

A. If I didn’t make two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.

B. I would have got full marks for the test if there hadn’t been these two minor mistakes

C. Had I made two minor mistakes, I would have got full marks for the test.

D. If the mistakes hadn’t been minor, I could have got full marks for the test.

2. **Get in touch with me as soon as possible if you change your mind about the trip.**

A. Should you change your mind about the trip, contact me as soon as possible

B. If you changed your mind about the trip, get in touch with me as soon as possible.

C. You should call me whenever you changed your mind about the trip.

D. Having changed your mind about the trip, you should get in touch with me soon

3**. If it hadn’t been for the goalkeeper, United would have lost.**

A. United didn’t lose the game thanks to their goalkeeper.

B. United lost the match because of their goalkeeper.

C. Without their goalkeeper, United could have won

D. If their goalkeeper didn’t play so well, United would have lost.

4. **Without his help, we would all die**.

A. We died because he didn’t help us.

B. He didn’t help us, so we died.

C. If it hadn’t been for his help, we would all have died

D. If he had helped us, we wouldn’t have died.

5. **Had the announcement been made earlier, more people would have attended the lecture**.

A. Not many people came to hear the lecture because it was held too late,

B. The lecture was held earlier so that more people would attend

C. Fewer people attended the lecture because of the early announcement.

D. Since the announcement was not made earlier, fewer people came to hear the lecture.

6. **But for Helen acting so wonderfully, the play would be a flop**

A. Helen acted so wonderfully, but the play was a flop.

B. If it wasn’t for Helen’s wonderful acting, the play would be a flop

C. The play was a flop although Helen acted so wonderfully.

D. The play was a flop although Helen was such a wonderful actor.

**7. Provided your handwriting is legible, the examiner will accept your answer.**

A. Although the examiner cannot read your handwriting, he will accept your answer,

B. Whatever your handwriting, the examiner will accept your answer.

C. The examiner will accept your answer if your handwriting is beautiful

D. So long as the examiner can read your handwriting, he will accept your answer.

8. **But for his father’s early retirement, Richard would not have taken over the family business**.

A. Richard only took over the family business because his father decided to retire early.

B. Richard didn’t take over the family business because his father didn’t retire early

C. His father retired early but he still ran the family business

D. Richard’s father didn’t want him to take over the family business despite his retirement

9. **Were it not for the money, the job wouldn’t be worthwhile**

A. This job is not rewarding at all

B. This job offers a poor salary

C. Although the salary is poor, the job is worthwhile

D. The only thing that makes this job worthwhile is the money.

***10. You can stay in the flat for free if you pay the bills.***

A. Provided you pay the bills, you can stay in the flat for free.

B. Without the bills paid, you can stay in the free flat.

C. Unless the flat is free of bills, you cannot stay in it.

D. Whether you pay the bills or stay in the flat, it is free.

**11: She is now leading a normal life as a result of all the support she received from social workers.**

**A**. Had it not been for the social workers, she wouldn’t be leading such a normal life now.

**B**. Because she receives all the support from social workers, she is leading a normal life now

**C**. If she didn’t receive all the support from social workers, she wouldn’t be leading a normal life now.

**D**. Had she not received so much support from social workers, she wouldn’t be leading such a normal life now.

**12. In my experiments, the liquid is cooled to 32­­­ºF. It always freezes.**

A. If you cool the liquid to 32 degrees, it froze.

B. If you cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would freeze.

C. If you cool the liquid to 32 degrees, it will freeze.

D. If you had cooled the liquid to 32 degrees, it would have frozen.

**Exercise 4: Choose the best answer:**

1. I'm not very fit. I wish \_\_\_\_\_\_

A. I would be fitter B. I were fitter C. I was fitter D. I am fitter

2. It's very hot.

A. I wish it were cooler. C. A. I wish it were hotter.

B. I wish it was rain tomorrow. D. If only it had rained.

3. He likes to swim.

->He wishes he ……………… near the sea.

A. liked B. living C. lives D. to live

4. She wishes she ………………. blue eyes.

A. has B. had C. had had D. would have

5. If only I \_\_\_ him now.

A. see B. saw C. have seen D. seen

6. I wish it \_\_\_ a holiday today.

A. were B. will be C. is D. had been

**7..** What a pity I didn’t meet you yesterday.

A. If only I met you yesterday. B. If only I meet you yesterday.

C. If only I had met you yesterday. D. If only I hadn’t met you yesterday.

8.. Susan regretted not buying that villa.

A. Susan wished she had bought that villa. B. Susan wished she bought that villa.

C. Susan wished she could buy that villa. D. Susan wished she hadn’t bought that villa.

9. It’s a pity that you didn’t tell us about this.

A. I wish you told us about this. B. I wish you would tell us about this.

C. I wish you had told us about this. D. I wish you have told us about this.

10. He wishes he …………… buy a new car.

A. can B. will C. could D. would

11. Those children are really noisy.

A. I wish they were quieter B. I wish they would be quiet

C. If only they were quieter D. Both A and C are correct

12. She misses him. She wishes he ……………. her a letter.

A. would send B. will send C. has sent D. would have sent

13. I wish I …….................... help you.

A. would B. can C. could D. will

14. She wishes she ……………………. him yesterday.

A. would meet B. meets C. met D. had met

15. Yesterday, John told me that he wishes he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ harder in high school because then university might not be so difficult for him.

A. studied B. would study C. had studied D. studies

16. If only my motorbike………………broken down again, I would have arrived on time

A. would B. hadn’t C. didn’t D. wasn’t

17. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in prison, but I am

A. wasn't B. am not C. weren't D. were

18. I wish you……………. make that noise, it’s annoying!

A. don't B. wouldn't C. would D. couldn't

19. I wish I……………………………. to the movies with you last night.

A. went B. did go C. could go D. could have gone

20.. I hate Canadian winters. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_\_ in Hawai right now.

A. was B. am C. will be D. were

**Exercise 5: Choose the best option to complete these following sentences.**

1. Tom looked tired as though he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_very hard.

A. has worked B. worked C. work D. had worked

2. Henry talks with his dog as if it \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_him.

A. understand B. understood C. understanding D. had understood.

3. She sings as if she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a singer.

A. were B. is C. had been D. has been

4. I feel as if my head \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_fire now.

A. were B. is C. had been D. has been

5. Mary dresses as if she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a queen.

A. is B. be C. were D. had been

6. She acted as if she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ big amount of money.

A. had B. has C. have D. had had

7. He spends his money as though he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a millionaire.

A. were B. is C. be D. has been

8. He talked about Paris as if he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_there before

A. be B. been C. has been D. had been

9. Tom acts as if he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_my boss.

A. had been B. have been C be D. were

10. He talked as if he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ all the work himself, but in fact Tom and I did most of it.

A. has done B. have done C did D. had done

11. Barbara looked at me as though she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_me before.

A. has never met B. have never met C had never met D. never met

12. She behaved as though she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ crazy

A. has been B. had been C. be D. B and C are right

13. He treats us as if we\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ all idiots

A. has been B. have been C. be D. were

14. The spacemen felt as if he \_\_\_\_\_\_ in a paradise.

A. had been B. falls C. fall D. has fallen

15. He behaved as though he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to the USA.

A. has been B. had been C. were D. was

16. I wish the more effective teaching method\_\_\_\_\_\_ used.

A. is B. was C. were D. has been

17. She wishes she \_\_\_\_\_\_ a fairy now.

A. was B. were C. is D. had been

18. She spent money as if she always\_\_\_\_\_\_ plenty of it.

A. have B. had C. had had D. has

19. Mr Nam ate as if he \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_anything for days

A. didn’t eat B. haven’t eaten C. hadn’t eaten D. not ate

20. She walks as if she\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a wooden leg.

A. has B. have C. had D. have had

**Exercise 6:** Choose the correct answer

1. I \_\_\_\_\_\_watch the football game than basketball game

A. like B. would rather C. prefer D. would like

2. Jane would rather that it \_\_\_\_\_\_ winter now.

A. were B. be C. is D. had been

3. Would you rather \_\_\_\_\_\_ in ink or in pencil?

A. write B. writing C. to write D. wrote

4. I would rather that you \_\_\_\_\_\_ me tomorrow.

A. call B. to call C. calling D. will call

5. Henry would rather that his girlfriend \_\_\_\_\_\_in the same department as he does.

A. work B. to work C. working D. worked

6. It’s time you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the house.

A. paint B. painted C. painting D. paints

7. Bob would rather that Jill \_\_\_\_\_\_ to class yesterday.

A. go B. went C. had gone D. have gone

8. It’s time we all......................... now.

A. had gone B. go C. should go D. went

9. John would rather \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ than worked last night.

A. slept B. was sleeping C. have slept D. had slept

10. It’s time \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a car.

A. go B. buy C. to buy D. buying

**Exercise 7: Choose the best answer**

1. I requested that he ………….. the work on time.

A. finishes B. will finish C. finish D. finished

1. It is necessary that she ………….. the club.

Ajoin B. joins C. would join D. has joined

1. The doctor suggested that the patient ………….. smoking.

A. stop B. should stop C. would stop D. both A and B are correct

1. It is important that you ……….. on time.

A. comes B. coming C. having come D. come

1. It is necessary that she ………….. the housework.

A. do B. would do C. doing D. done

1. They requested that I …………early.

A. leave B. should leave C. left D. A or B

1. It is our wish that he…………… what he please.

A. is doing B. does C. do D. should have done

1. I propose that the minutes of the previous meeting……….. read.

A. to be B. be C. being D. should have been

1. The court ordered that the man ………….. released.

A. be B. was C. is D. has been

1. It is essential that he ……….. the bike.

A. to repair B. should repair C. would repair D. had better repair

***KEY***

***EX1: 1B, 2C, 3B, 4C, 5A, 6A, 7B, 8D, 9B, 10A, 11B, 12C, 13D, 14C, 15C, 16A, 17B, 18C, 19D, 20B, 21D, 22A, 23C, 24C, 25B, 26C, 27A, 28A, 29C, 30A***

***EX2: 1A, 2C, 3C, 4B, 5A, 6B, 7D, 8C, 9C, 10C, 11B, 12B, 13B, 14C, 15A, 16A, 17A, 18C***

***EX3: 1B, 2A, 3C, 4C, 5D, 6B, 7D, 8A, 9D, 10A, 11D, 12C***

***EX4: 1B, 2A, 3A, 4B, 5B, 6A, 7C, 8A, 9C, 10C, 11D, 12A, 13C, 14D, 15C, 16B, 17C, 18B, 19C, 20D***

***EX5: 1D, 2B, 3A, 4A, 5C, 6D, 7A, 8D, 9D, 10D, 11C, 12C, 13D, 14A, 15B, 16C, 17B, 18C, 19C, 20C***

***EX6: 1B, 2A, 3A, 4A, 5D, 6B, 7C, 8D, 9D, 10C***

***EX7: 1C, 2A, 3D, 4D, 5A, 6D, 7C, 8B, 9A, 10B***

**MODULE 22: MẠO TỪ (ARTICLES)**

**\* PHẦN I: LÝ THUYẾT**

1. **Mạo từ không xác định: a / an**

***\* “a” hay “an”***

***“a”: được dùng:***

- Trước các từ được bắt đầu bằng phụ âm hoặc 1 nguyên âm đọc như phụ âm.

Vớ dụ: a book, a pen

a university, a one-way street

***“an” – được dùng***

- Trước các từ được bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm (U, E, O, A, I) hoặc trước các từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm nhưng được đọc như nguyên âm

Vớ dụ: an apple, an orange

an hour, an honest person

- Hoặc trước các danh từ được viết tắt và đọc như một nguyên âm

Vớ dụ: *an L- plate, an SOS, an MP*

**\*Cách dùng a/ an**

Dựng trước các danh từ đếm được số ít

Khi danh từ đó:

1. Được nhắc đến lần đầu hoặc không xác định cụ thể về mặt đặc điểm, tính chất…

*Vớ dụ: I have* ***a dog*** *and* ***a cat****.*

1. Được dùng để chỉ 1 loài nào đó (tương đương với danh từ số nhiều không có mạo từ)

*Vớ dụ:* ***A dog*** *is a loyal animal*

1. Được dùng để chỉ nghề nghiệp, chức vụ

*Vớ dụ: I am* ***a teacher***

1. Trước tên người mà người nói không biết là ai *a* *Mr Smith* nghĩa là “người đàn ông được gọi là Smith” và ngụ ý là ụng ta là người lạ đối với người nói. Cũn nếu khụng cú a tức là người nói biết ông Smith
2. Trong câu cảm thán

*Vớ dụ:* *Such a long queue! What a pretty girl!*

Nhưng: *Such long queues! What pretty girls.*

1. Dùng với ‘such’: …. such a/ an + singular countable noun

*Vớ dụ: It is such an interesting book.*

1. Dùng với ‘so’: …so + adj. + a/ an + singular countable noun

*Vớ dụ:*  *He is so good a player.*

1. Dùng với ‘too’:.. too+ adj. + a/ an + singular countable noun.

*Vớ dụ:*  *This is too difficult a lesson for them.*

9. Được dùng trong các thành ngữ chỉ số lượng nhất định

Vớ dụ: *a lot of, a couple, a dozen, a great many+ plural noun, a great deal of + uncountable noun, many a+ singular noun, a large/ small amount of +uncountable noun, a good many of/ a good number of + plural noun, a few, a little, only a few, only a little.*

1. Dùng trước những số đếm nhất định, đặc biệt là chỉ hàng trăm, hàng ngàn

Vớ dụ: *a hundred, a thousand, a million, a billion.*

11. Với từ ‘half’:

- trước *half* khi nó theo sau 1 đơn vị nguyờn vẹn.

Vớ dụ: *a kilo and a half và cũng cú thể là one and a half kilos.*

***Chỳ ý:***: 1/2 kg = half a kilo (không có *a* Trước *half*).

- dùng trước *half* khi nó đi với 1 danh từ khỏc tạo thành từ ghộp.

Vớ dụ: *a half-holiday* nửa kỡ nghỉ, *a half-share*: nửa cổ phần.

- half a dozen; half an hour

12. Dùng trước các phân số như 1/3, 1 /4, 1/5, = *a third, a quarter, a fifth hay one third, one fourth, one fifth*.

13. Dùng trong các thành ngữ chỉ giá cả, tốc độ, tỉ lệ

Vớ dụ: *five dolars a kilo; four times a day; once a week; 60km an hour..*

14. There + (be) + (N)

is + a/an + singular noun

is + uncountable noun

are+ plural noun

15. Từ ‘time’ trong cỏc cụm từ: Have a good time

Have a hard time

Have a difficult time

16. Thường được dùng sau hệ từ (động từ nối) hoặc sau ‘as’ để phân loại người hay vật đó thuộc loại nào, nhóm nào, kiểu nào

Vớ dụ: He **is a liar**

The play **was a comedy**

He **remained a bachelor** all his life.

Don’t use your plate **as an astray**.

**II. Mạo từ xác định: The**

1. Được sử dụng khi danh từ được xác định cụ thể về tính chất, đặc điểm, vị trí hoặc được nhắc đến lần thứ 2 trong câu.

2. The + noun + preposition + noun.

Vớ dụ: *the girl in blue; the man with a banner; the gulf of Mexico; the United States of America.*

* *The + (n) + of the + (n).*

*Vớ dụ: The leg of the table; The back of the house*

*- Most + plural noun: Vớ dụ: Most women want to be beautiful (phụ nữ núi chung)*

*Most of the + plural noun: Vớ dụ: Most of the women in my school want to be beautiful (không phải phụ nữ nói chung mà là phụ nữ ở trường tôi)*

*All + plural noun vs all of the + plural noun*

*Some + plural noun vs some of the + plural noun*

*3. The + danh từ + mệnh đề quan hỆ*

Vớ dụ: *the boy whom I met; the place where I met him.*

4. Trước 1 danh từ được nhắc đến lần đầu nhưng được ngầm hiểu giữa người nói và người nghe.

Vớ dụ: *Jane’s teacher asked her a question but she doesn’t know* ***the*** *answer.*

5. The + tính từ so sánh bậc nhất, số thứ tự hoặc *only, next, last*.

Vớ dụ: *The first week; the only way, the next day, the last person*

***Note:*** *- khi núi về trình tự của 1 quy trình nào đó ‘the’ không được dùng:*

*First,..*

*Second,…*

*Third,……..*

*Next,………*

*……..*

*Lastly,……….*

- ‘next’ và ‘last’ không được sử dụng trong các cụm trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian: next Tuesday, last week

6. The + danh từ số ít tượng trưng cho một nhóm thú vật hoặc đồ vật thì có thể bỏ *the* và đổi danh từ sang số nhiều.

Vớ dụ: *The whale = Whales, the shark = sharks, the deep-freeze = deep - freezes.*

Nhưng đối với danh từ ***man*** (chỉ loài người) thì không có từ (*a, the*) đứng trước.

Vớ dụ: *if oil supplies run out, man may have to fall back on the horse*.

7. The + adj*:* đại diện cho 1 lớp người, nó không có hình thái số nhiều nhưng được coi là 1 danh từ số nhiều và động từ sau nó phải được chia ở số nhiều.

Vớ dụ: *the old = người già nói chung; The disabled = những người tàn tật;*

*The unemployed = những người thất nghiệp.*

*The homeless, the wounded, the injured, the sick, the unlucky, the needy, the strong, the weak,*

*The English, the American…*

1. Dùng trước tên các khu vực, vùng đó nổi tiếng về mặt địa lý hoặc lịch sử

Vớ dụ: *The Shahara. The Netherlands.*

1. The + phương hướng

Vớ dụ: He lives in the North (of Viet Nam)

* *The + East / West/ South/ North + noun.*

Vớ dụ: *the East/ West end.*

*The North / South Pole.*

* *Giới từ (to, in, on, at, from) + the + phương hướng: to the North*
* Nhưng không được dùng the trước các từ chỉ phương hướng này, nếu nó đi kÌm với tên của một châu lục hoặc 1 quốc gia.

Vớ dụ: *South Africa, North America, West Germany.*

* Không được dùng ‘the’ trước các từ chỉ phương hướng khi nó đi với các động từ như*: go, travel, turn, look, sail, fly, walk, move*

*Ví dụ: go north/ south*

1. The + các ban nhạc phổ thụng.

Vớ dụ: *the Bach choir, the Philadenphia Orchestra, the Beatles.*

1. The + tên các tờ báo lớn/các con tầu biển

Vớ dụ: *the Times, the Titanic*

1. The + tên họ ở số nhiều có nghĩa là gia đình họ nhà…

Ví dụ: *the Smiths = Mr and Mrs Smith (and their children)*

1. The + Tên ở số ít + cụm từ/ mệnh đề có thể được sử dụng để phân biệt người này với người khác cùng tên

Ví dụ: *We have two Mr Smiths. Which do you want? I want the Mr Smith who signed this letter*.

1. Với các buổi trong ngày: in the morning; in the afternoon, in the evening (but at noon, at night, at mid-night.)
2. Danh từ đếm được số nhiều có ‘the’ và không có ‘the’

Danh từ đếm được số nhiều The + danh từ đếm được số nhiều

Chỉ loài Chỉ đối tượng cụ thể, xác định

Dogs are loyal The dog that is under the table is lovely

1. Với trường học nếu có ‘of’ hoặc ‘for’ theo sau thì dùng ‘the’: The university of architecture; the school for the blind

Nếu không có ‘of’ thì không dùng mạo từ: Foreign Trade university.

1. Với các nhạc cụ: play the guitar/ the piano/ the violin
2. Với các thể chế quân sự: the army, the police, the air force, the navy, the military
3. Với từ ‘same’:

* the same + (N)

Ví dụ: We have the same grade

Twins often have the same interest.

* The same as + (N)/ (Pro.)

Your pen is the same as my pen/ mine.

* The same + (N) + as +(N)/ (Pro.)

Vớ dụ: Her mother has the same car as her father

1. Với dạng so sánh kép

The + so sánh hơn + S+ V, the + so sánh hơn + S+ V

Vớ dụ: The hotter it is, the more uncomfortable I feel.

1. Với tên sông, suối, đại dương, kênh đào, rặng núi

Ví dụ: The Red River, the River Nile, the Volga, the Thames, the Amazon, The pacific Ocean, The Atlantic Ocean, the Suez Canal, the Panama Canal, The Alps, the Andes, the Himalayas, the Rockies

(nhưng không dùng ‘the’ khi danh từ riêng đứng sau: Lake Ba Be, Mountain Everest)

1. Với thứ duy nhất: the sun, the moon, the sky, the atmosphere, the Great Wall of China, the stars, the equator
2. Với tên nước (ở dạng số nhiều hoặc có các từ như: Republic, Union, Kingdom, States)

Ví dụ: The US, The United Kindom, The Soviet Union, The Republic of South Africa, The Philippines…

(thông thường không dùng mạo từ với tên nước)

1. Với môn học cụ thể: The applied Maths

(môn học nóii chung không dùng mạo từ: English, Mathematics, Literature..)

1. Với các giai đoạn lịch sử

Ví dụ: The stone Age; The middle Age; The Renaissance; The Industrial Revolution

1. ‘office’ cú ‘the’ và không có ‘the’

The office (be)in office

Cơ quan, văn phòng đương chức

1. Trong các cách diễn đạt:

At the moment; at the end of; in the end; at the beginning of; at the age of; for the time being…

1. Với ‘radio’, ‘cinema’ và ‘theatre’: Vớ dụ: Listen to **the radio**
2. Với 1 số tên nhà và công trình nổi tiếng: the Empire State Building, the White House, the Royal Palace, the Golden Gate Bridge, the Vatican
3. Với tên riêng của các viện bảo tàng/ phòng trưng bày nghệ thuật, rạp hát, rạp chiếu phim, khách sạn, nhà hàng: the National Museum, the Globe Theatre, the Odeon Cinema, the Continential Hotel, the Bombay Restaurant..

\*Nhưng nếu nhà hàng, khách sạn được đặt tên theo tên của người sáng lập thì không dùng mạo từ. Ví dụ: McDonald, Matilda’s restaurant

1. **Không dùng mạo từ:**
2. Không dùng mạo từ trước danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được với nghĩa chung

Vớ dụ: Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.

Nhưng: **The water in this bottle** can be drunk. (vì có cụm giới từ bổ nghĩa)

Elephants are intelligent animals

Nhưng: **The elephants in this zoo** are intelligent. (mang nghĩa cụ thể)

1. Không dùng mạọ từTrước 1 số danh từ như: h*ome, church, bed, court, hospital, prison, school, college, university* khi nó đi với động từ và giới từ chỉ chuyển động (chỉ đi tới đó làm mục đích chính).

Vớ dụ: *He is at home. I arrived home before dark. I sent him home.*

to bed (để ngủ)

to church (để cầu nguyện)

to court (để kiện tụng)

We go to hospital (chữa bệnh)

to prison (đi tù)

to school / college/ university (để học)

Tương tự

in bed

at church

We can be in court

in hospital

at school/ college/ university

We can be / get back (hoặc be/ get home) from school/ college/university.

leave school

We can leave hospital

be released from prison.

Với mục đích khác thì phải dùng *the*.

Vớ dụ: *I went to the church to see the stained glass.*

*He goes to the prison sometimes to give lectures.*

*Student go to the university for a class party.*

1. Sea

Go to sea (thủy thủ ra biển)

to be at the sea (hành khách/thủy thủy đi trên biển)

Go to the sea / be at the sea = to go to/ be at the seaside: đi tắm biển, nghỉ mát

We can live by / near the sea.

1. Work and office.

Work (nơi làm việc)

*Go to work.*

nhưng *office* lại phải có *the*.

*Go to the office.*

Vớ dụ: *He is at / in the office.*

Nếuto be in office (không có *the*) nghĩa là đang giữ chức

To be out of office – thôi giữ chức

1. Town

*The* có thể bỏ đi khi nói về thị trấn hoặc chủ thể

Ví dụ: *We sometimes go to town to buy clothes.*

*We were in town last Monday.*

*Go to town / to be in town* – Với mục đích chính là đi mua hàng

1. Không dùng trước tên đường phố khi nó có tên cụ thể: street, avenue, road, lane,

Vớ dụ: She lives on **Ly Thai To street**.

But: I can’t remember the name of **the street (the + n of the + n)**

There is **a road. (cấu trỳc ‘there’)**

1. Không dùng mạo từ với tên nước, tên tiểu bang, thành phố

Ví dụ: Viet Nam, Ha Noi, Bac Ninh, California

(trừ 1 số trường hợp đó đề cập ở trên)

1. Không dùng mạo từ với sân vận động, công viên, trung tâm thương mại, quảng trường, nhà ga, sân bay

Ví dụ: My Đinh Stadium, Thong Nhat Park, Trang Tien Plaza, Crescent Mall ; Times Square, Kenedy Airport; Victoria Station

(but: the Mall of America)

1. Không dùng mạo từ với tên ngôn ngữ

Vớ dụ: **English** is difficult

1. Không dùng mạo từ với các bữa ăn: breakfast, lunch, dinner/ supper

Ví dụ: I often have breakfast at 6. 30

(nhưng a/ an có thể được dùng khi có tính từ đứng trước: I had **a very nice breakfast** with my mother)

1. Không dùng mạo từ với các môn học núi chung: Maths

Nhưng lại dùng ‘the’ với môn học cụ thể: the applied Maths

1. Không dùng mạo từ trước các môn thể thao:

Vớ dụ: He is playing **golf/ tennis**.

1. Không dùng mạo từ trước các danh từ trừu tượng:

Vớ dụ: Life is complicated

Nhưng: He is studying **the life of** Beethoven. (vỡ cú cụm giới từ bổ nghĩa)

1. Không dùng mạo từ với danh từ chỉ bệnh tật: cancer, heart disease, high blood, measles, mumps,..
2. Không dùng mạo từ với các phương tiện đi lại: by car, by bus, by plane..
3. Không dùng mạo từ với ‘television’/ TV: watch TV

Nhưng: Can you turn off **the television**? (ở đây ‘television’ không mang nghĩa truyền hình mà là 1 cỏi TV cụ thể được ngầm hiểu giữa người nói và người nghe)

1. Không dùng mạo từ với tính từ chỉ định, đại từ chỉ định, tính từ sở hữu, tính từ bất định, đại từ quan hệ, và các từ như: enough, another, either, neither, much, every, some, any, no
2. Không dùng mạo từ với các hành tinh: Venus, Mars, Jupiter
3. Không dùng mạo từ trước tên riêng ở dạng sở hữu cách

Vớ dụ: Tim’s house

Nhưng: the boss’s house

1. Không dùng mạo từ trước tên của các đảo, hồ, núi, đồi

Ví dụ: Phu Quoc, Lake Michigan, Lake Babe, Everest, North Hill

Nhưng dùng mạo từ ‘the’ nếu chúng ở dạng số nhiều: the Canary Islands, the British Isles, the Philippines; the Great Lakes, the Alps..

1. Không dùng mạo từ trước các từ chỉ ngày tháng hoặc ngày lễ

Ví dụ: on Monday, in June, at Christmas..

Nhưng với các mùa có thể dùng ‘the’ hoặc không dùng ‘the’

Ví dụ: in (the) summer

‘the’ luôn được dùng trong cụm từ ‘in the fall’

***Bảng dùng the và không dùng the trong một số trường hợp đặc biệt***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Dùng the** | **Không dùng the** |
| 1. Trước các đại dương, sông ngũi, biển, vịnh và các hồ ở số nhiều   Ví dụ:  *The Red sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the Persian Gulf, the Great Lakes.*   1. Trước tên các dồi núi.   *Ví dụ: The Rockey Moutains*     1. Trước tên 1 vật thể duy nhất trên thế giới hoặc vũ trụ.   Ví dụ: *the earth, the moon, the Great Wall*   1. Trước *School/college/university + of* + noun   Ví dụ:  *The University of Florida.*  *The college of Arts and Sciences.*   1. Trước các số thứ tự + noun.   Ví dụ: *The first world war.*  *The third chapter.*     1. Trước tên các nước có từ 2 từ trở lên. Ngoại trừ *Great Britain*.   Ví dụ:  *The United States, the United Kingdom, the Central Africal Republic.*   1. Trước tên các nước được coi là 1 quần đảo.   Ví dụ: *The Philippines.*   1. Trước tờn cỏc nhạc cụ.   Ví dụ: *To play the piano.*   1. Trước tên các môn học cụ thể   Ví dụ: *The applied Math.*  *The theoretical Physics*   1. Trước tên các danh từ trừu tượng mang nghĩa cụ thể   *Ví dụ: The happiness he had after the marriage is very important.*   1. Trước tên các bữa ăn cụ thể   *Ví dụ: The beakfast we had yesterday was delicious*   1. Trước các từ chỉ bộ phận cơ thể trong các cụm giới từ ON, IN, OVER, BY   Ví dụ: *He cut himself on the thumb.*  *The victim was shot in the chest.*  *.* | 1. Trước tên 1 hồ (hay các hồ ở số Ít).   Ví dụ:  *Lake Geneva, Lake Erie*   1. Trước tên 1 ngọn núi   *Ví dụ: Mount Mckinley*   1. Trước tên các hành tinh hoặc các chòm sao   Ví dụ: *Venus, Mars, Earth, Orion*     1. Trước tên các trường này khi Trước đó là 1 tên riêng.   Ví dụ:  *Cooper*’*s Art school, Stetson University.*   1. Trước các danh từ mà sau nó là 1 số đếm.   Ví dụ: *World war one*  *chapter three*     1. Trước tên các nước có 1 từ như: *Sweden, Venezuela* và các nước được đứng Trước bởi *new* hoặc tính từ chỉ phương hướng.   Vớ dụ: *New Zealand, South Africa.*   1. Trước tên các lục địa, tiểu bang, tỉnh, thành phố, quận, huyện   Ví dụ: *Europe, California.*   1. Trước tờn bất cứ môn thể thao nào.   Ví dụ: *Base ball, basket ball.*     1. Trước các môn học chung   *Ví dụ: Mathematics*   1. Trước tên các danh từ trừu tượng mang nghĩa chung.   Ví dụ: *Freedom, happiness.*   1. Trước tên các bữa ăn: *breakfast, lunch, dinner* 2. Trước các từ chỉ bộ phận cơ thể (dùng tính từ sở hữu thay thế)   Ví dụ*: She cut her finger* |

**\* PHẦN II: BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

🖎**Exercise 1: Choose the best option to complete the following sentences**

1. My mother goes to church in \_\_\_\_\_\_ morning.

A. x B. every C. the D. a

1. I eat \_\_\_\_\_\_orange everyday.

A. an B. orange C. the orange s D. any orange

1. Harry is \_\_\_\_\_\_ sailor.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

1. We had \_\_\_\_\_ dinner in a restaurant.

A. a B. an C. x D. the

1. Mary loves \_\_\_\_\_ flowers.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ is a star.

A. Sun B. A sun C. The sun D. Suns

1. London is \_\_\_\_\_ capital of England.

A. an B. a C. x D. the

1. I want \_\_\_\_\_\_ apple from that basket.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

1. She works six days \_\_\_\_\_ week.

A. in B. for C. a D. X

1. I bought \_\_\_\_\_\_ umbrella to go out in the rain.

A. a B. an C. x D. the

1. My daughter is learning to play \_\_\_\_\_\_violin at her school.

A. a B. an C. x D. the

1. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_\_pen that is on the counter.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

1. Our neighbour has \_\_\_\_\_\_cat and \_\_\_\_\_\_ dog.

A. a/ a B. an/ a C. the/ the D. X/ X

1. It is \_\_\_\_\_\_funniest book that I have ever read.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

1. I usually go to school by\_\_\_\_\_\_bike.

A. a B. an C. x D. the

🖎**Exercise 2:Choose the best answer to complete the sentences**:

1. There are billions of stars in \_\_\_\_\_ space.

A. a B. an C. X D. the

1. He tried to park his car but \_\_\_\_\_ space wasn’t big enough.

A. the B. a C. an D. X

1. Can you turn off \_\_\_\_\_ television, please?

A. X B. a C. an D. the

1. We had \_\_\_\_\_ meal in a restaurant.

A. a B. X C. the D. an

1. Thank you. That was \_\_\_\_\_\_ very nice lunch.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

1. My daughter plays \_\_\_\_\_ piano very well.

A. the B. a C. X D. an

1. Jill went to \_\_\_\_\_\_ hospital to see her friend.

A. x B. the C. a D. an

1. Mrs Lan went to \_\_\_\_\_\_ school to meet her son’s daughter.

A. x B. the C. a D. an

1. We visited \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ two years ago.

A. Canada and the United States B. the Canada and the United States

C. the Canada and United States D. Canada and United States

1. Are you going away next week? No, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ week after next.

A. a B. the C. some D. X

1. We haven’t been to \_\_\_\_\_\_ for years.

A. cinema B. the cinema C. a cinema D. any cinema

1. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was \_\_\_\_\_\_ journey.

A. three hour B. a three- hours C. a three- hour D. three- hours

1. I can’t work here. There’s so much \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. noise B. noises C. the noise D. a noise

1. I’ve seen \_\_\_\_\_\_ good films recently.

A. a B. the C. some D. an

1. I often watch \_\_\_\_\_\_ television for two hours every night.

A. some B. the C. any D. X

1. The injured man was taken to \_\_\_\_\_.

A. hospital B. any hospital C. the hospital D. hospitals

1. She went out without \_\_\_\_\_ money.

A. any B. an C. a D. x

1. Did \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ police find \_\_\_\_\_\_ person who stole your bicycle?

A. a /a B. the / the C. a / the D. the / a

19. Can anyone give me.......................... hand, please because I have just fallen over?

A. a B. an C. the D. X

20. I don’t know what to do. It’s................................ problem.

A. quite difficult B. a quite difficult C. quite a difficult D. the quite difficult

21. I have left my book in.......................... kitchen and I would like you to get it for me.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

22. Please meet me at the train station in............................ hour from now.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

**Exercise 3:Choose the best answer to complete the sentences**:

1. \_\_\_\_\_driver was\_\_\_\_\_strong athletic young man.
2. The/the B. The/a C. A/ the D. A/a
3. He took\_\_\_\_\_cigar from his mouth and blew away\_\_\_\_\_long trail of smoke.
4. the/a B. a/a C. the/the D. a/the
5. We sat\_\_\_\_\_side by\_\_\_\_\_side smoking and thinking.
6. 🗴/a B. 🗴/the C. the/🗴 D. 🗴/🗴
7. We got back to \_\_\_\_\_inn as \_\_\_\_\_night was falling.
8. the/the B. a/the C. the/🗴 D. the/a
9. It was\_\_\_\_\_ late afternoon and their shadows lay long across \_\_\_\_\_road.
10. 🗴/the B. 🗴/🗴 C. the/the D. a/the
11. \_\_\_\_\_invitations to\_\_\_\_\_dinner for 16 people were sent out.

A. 🗴/the B. 🗴/a C. the/the D. a/the

1. He worked hard and often got out of \_\_\_\_\_bed at \_\_\_\_\_night to make sure that he had written \_\_\_\_\_point down.

A. 🗴/the/a B. 🗴/🗴/a C. the/the/🗴 D. a/the/🗴

1. They stood for \_\_\_\_\_moment, then all together slowly moved towards\_\_\_\_\_church.

A. 🗴/the B. 🗴/🗴 C. the/a D. a/the

1. “Do you usually go to \_\_\_\_\_church?” “Occasionally”

A. a B. an C. the D. 🗴

1. They are at\_\_\_\_\_sea now. They write that they are having\_\_\_\_\_marvelous time.

A. the/the B. a/the C. 🗴/🗴 D. the/a

1. I’ll drive you to \_\_\_\_\_town this morning.

A. a B. 🗴 C. the D. an

1. Although it was\_\_\_\_\_early afternoon, all\_\_\_\_\_lights in\_\_\_\_\_restaurant were on.

A. 🗴/the/the B. 🗴/🗴/a C. the/the/🗴 D. a/the/🗴

1. \_\_\_\_\_Nile flows right through\_\_\_\_\_city

A. 🗴/the B. 🗴/a C. the/the D. a/the

1. It was \_\_\_\_\_sort of\_\_\_\_\_occasion when one wants to help but doesn’t know how.

A. the/the B. a/the C. the/a D. the/🗴

**ĐÁP ÁN**

🖎**Exercise 1:**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. C | 1. A | 1. A | 1. D | 1. D | 1. C | 1. D | 1. B |
| 1. C | 1. B | 1. D | 1. C | 1. A | 1. C | 1. D |  |

🖎**Exercise 2:**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. C | 1. A | 1. D | 1. A | 1. A | 1. A |
| 1. B | 1. B | 1. A | 1. B | 1. B | 1. C |
| 1. A | 1. C | 1. D | 1. C | 1. A | 1. B |
| 1. A | 1. C | 1. C | 1. B |  |  |

🖎**Exercise 3:**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1B | 2A | 3D | 4C | 5B |
| 6B | 7B | 8D | 9D | 10D |
| 11B | 12A | 13C | 14D |  |

🖎

**MODULE 23: PHRASAL VERBS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **PHRASAL VERB WITH “BREAK"** | |
| Break away: trốn thoát, thoát khỏi  + Break down:  - dừng hoạt động (máy móc, phương tiện)  - đập vỡ, đổ vỡ tan tành  - phân tích vào chi tiết, chia nhỏ  - suy sụp tinh thần, buồn bã, suy nhược  + Break in:  - (on) can thiệp vào, gián đoạn, ngắt/ chặn (lời); cắt ngang (câu chuyện)  - tập luyện (ngựa...), cho vào khuôn phép, dạy dỗ (trẻ con...)  + Break into:  - đột nhập, đột nhiên, phá lên  - break into tears: khóc òa lên | + Break out:  – bùng nổ, nổ ra (chiến tranh, dịch bệnh)  - (in) bùng phát (bị bệnh vùng da)  - (of) trốn thoát + Break up:  - chia thành/ vỡ thành từng mảnh  - phân tán (đám đông), dừng lại cuộc chiến)  - (with sb) chia tay, kết thúc mối quan hệ.  - bật cười lớn tiếng  + Break off:  - dừng lại, kết thúc, chấm dứt, bỏ dở  - (with sb) cắt đứt quan hệ, tuyệt giao với ai  + Break through: vượt qua, đột phá, chọc thủng  + Break forth: vỡ ra, nổ ra; bắn ra, tuôn ra |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “BRING"** | |
| + Bring about: làm xảy ra, mang đến  + Bring along: mang theo  + Bring back: mang trả lại, gợi lại  + Bring down: đem xuống, hạ xuống, làm tụt xuống; hạ, bắn rơi; hạ bệ, làm nhục ai  + Bring forward: đưa ra, đề ra, mang ra  + Bring in: đưa vào, đem vào, đem lại  + Bring off: cứu  + Bring sth off: thành công việc khó khăn)  + Bring on: dẫn đến, gây ra  + Bring out: đưa ra, mang ra; đem ra xuất bản; làm nổi bật, làm lộ rõ ra  + Bring round: làm tỉnh lại, làm cho trở lại | + Bring over: làm cho ai thay đổi lối suy nghi, thuyết phục, đưa ai đến chơi  + Bring sb round (to sth): làm thay đổi ý kien theo  + Bring through: giúp vượt qua khó khăn  + Bring together: gom lại, nhóm lại, họp lại; kết thân (2 người với nhau)  + Bring to: dẫn đến, đưa đến (1 tình trạng nào)  + Bring sth to light: đưa ra ánh sáng, khám phá  + Bring under: làm cho vào khuôn phép, làm cho ngoan ngoãn vâng lời, làm cho phục tùng  + Bring up: nuôi nấng, dạy dỗ; ngừng lại, đỗ lại, lưu ý về, đề cập đến |
| **PHRASAL VERB WITH "CATCH"** | |
| Catch at: bắt lấy, nắm lấy cái gì  + Catch out  - lừa, đánh lừa  - chứng minh, phát hiện ra ai đang nói dối  - (bị động) đặt ai trong 1 tình huống khó khăn  + Catch on:  - nổi tiếng, trở thành mốt, được ưa chuộng  - hiểu được, nắm được  - cuối cùng cũng hiểu cái gì | + Catch up: đuổi kịp, theo kịp, bắt kịp, ngắt lời; nhiễm (thói quen)  + Catch up in: Bị liên quan, dính líu đến cái gì  + Catch up on:  - Làm bù, học bù để bắt kịp phần đã lỡ  - Ôn lại kỉ niệm cũ  + Catch up with:  - Tìm ra ai đó (sau một khoảng thời gian)  - Trừng phạt ai vì đã làm sai điều gì  - Học cái gì mới mà đã nhiều người biết |
| **PHRASAL VERB WITH “COME"** | |
| + Come aboard: lên tàu  + Come about: xảy ra, đổi chiều  + Come across: tình cờ gặp  + Come after theo sau, nối nghiệp  + Come again: trở lại  + Come against: đụng phải, va phải  + Come along: đi cùng, xúc tiến, cút đi  + Come apart: tách khỏi, rời ra  + Come around: đi quanh, làm tươi lại, ghé thăm, đạt tới, xông vào, tỉnh lại  + Come at: đạt tới, nắm được, thấy  + Come away: đi xa, rời ra.  + Come back: trở lại, được nhớ lại, cải lại  + Come before: đến trước  + Come between: đứng giữa, can thiệp vào  + Come by: đến bằng cách, đi qua, có được  + Come clean: thú nhận  + Come down: sụp đổ, được truyền lạ | + Come down on: mắng nhiếc, trừng phạt  + Come down with: góp tiền, bị ốm  + Come easy to: không khó khăn đối với ai  + Come forward: đứng ra, xung phong  + Come from: đến từ, sinh ra  + Come full ahead: tiến hết tốc độ  + Come in: đi vào, về đích, dâng lên, bắt đầu  + Come in for: có phần, nhận được  + Come into: ra đời, thừa hưởng  + Come into account: được tính đến  + Come into effect: có hiệu lực  + Come into existence: ra đời, hình thành  + Come into force: có hiệu lực  + Come on: tiếp tục, đi tiếp, liên tiếp  + Come over: vượt (biển); chợt thấy  + Come round: đi nhanh, đi vòng  + Come under: rơi vào loại, nằm trong loại  + Come up with: tìm ra, nảy ra |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “DO”** | |
| + Do again: làm lại, làm lại lần nữa  + Do away: bỏ đi, huỷ bỏ, gạt bỏ, làm mất đi  + Do away with: xóa bỏ, ngưng sử dụng  + Do by: xử sự, đối xử  + Do for:  - chăm nom công việc gia đình cho, lo việc nội trợ cho (ai)  - Khử đi, phá huỷ, huỷ hoại di; làm tiêu ma đi sự nghiệp, làm thất cơ lỡ vận  + Do off: bỏ cởi ra (mũ| áo); bỏ (thói quen)  + Do on: mặc (áo) vào  + Do out of: ngăn cản ai có được cái gì, nhất là bằng cách gian lận hay không lương thiện | + Do in:  - bắt, tóm cổ (ai); tống (ai) vào tù  - rình mò theo dõi (ai)  - khử (ai); làm mệt lử, làm kiệt sức  + Do over:  - làm lại, bắt đầu lại (khi lần đầu làm không tốt)  - trang hoàng, dọn dẹp  + Do up: gói, bọc, tân trang, sửa chữa (cái mũ, gian phòng...), cài, thắt, ... (quần áo, ...)  + Do with: vui lòng, vừa ý với, ổn, được, chịu được, thu xếp được, xoay sở được  +Do without: bỏ được, bỏ qua được, nhịn được, không cần ĐẾN |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “DRAW"** | |
| + Draw back: Rút lui, lùi lại  + Draw down:  - Giảm  - Xin vốn, xin trợ cấp  -Cạn kiệt bởi sự tiêu dùng, sử dụng lớn  + Draw in:  -(mùa đông) trời tối sớm  - (tàu) đến nhà ga  + Draw up:  - soạn thảo, chuẩn bị hợp đồng, văn kiện, ...)  - (xe) đỗ lại, dừng lại | + Draw on  - (thời gian) trôi qua chậm chạp  - nuốt, hít khói từ điếu thuốc, điếu xì gà, ...  - rút tiền từ tài khoản ngân hàng bằng viết séc  + Draw out:  - kéo dài cái gì hơn cần thiết  - làm cho 1 người nhút nhát trở nên hoạt bát hơn  + Draw upon: sử dụng kiến thức, kĩ năng, thông tin cho một mục đích cụ thể  + Draw into: cuốn vào, liên quan vào  + Draw even: Về hòa với đối thủ |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “DROP"** | |
| + Drop around:  - Thăm ai đó, thường không hẹn trước  - Giao, phân phối, phân phát  + Drop away: Giảm dần (về số lượng)  + Drop back/ behind: Bị bỏ lại, tụt lại sau  + Drop by/ in/ round/ over: Tạt vào thăm, nhân tiện vào thăm  + Drop sb in it: Đặt ai vào tình trạng khó khăn | + Drop off:  -Đưa ai, cái gì đến một nơi nào đó và để họ hoặc nó ở đó  - Ngủ, thiu thiu ngủ  -Giảm (về số lượng, số đếm)  + Drop out: Bỏ học giữa chừng  + Drop through: Chắng đi đến đâu, chẳng ra kết quả gì Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425) |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “FALL"** | |
| + Fall about: Cười nhiều  + Fall apart:  - Vỡ thành những miếng nhỏ  - Cảm xúc hỗn loạn và không thể hành xử bình thường  + Fall back: Rút lui, rút quân  + Fall back on: Có thể dùng trong trường hợp khẩn  + Fall behind: Tụt lại phía sau  + Fall down: - Ngã trên mặt đất -Có điểm yếu | + Fall for:  - Say mê ai đó  - Tin vào một lời nói dối  + Fall in: Đổ, đổ sập  + Fall into: Bắt đầu làm gì đó mà không có kế hoạch trước  + Fall off: Giảm sút  + Fall out  - Tranh cãi và có quan hệ xấu với ai đó  - Rụng tóc  + Fall over: Ngã trên mặt đất  + Fall through: Không thành công, thất bại |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GET"** | |
| + Get about: lan truyền  + Get ahead: tiến bộ  + Get at sth: tìm ra, khám phá ra  + Get at sb: chỉ trích, công kích  + Get away (from): trốn thoát, lẩn tránh  + Get away with thoát khỏi sự trừng phạt)  + Get back: trở về, quay lại  + Get sth back: lấy lại  + Get behind: chậm trễ  + Get down: làm nản lòng  + Get down to sth: bắt tay vào việc gì  + Get in/into sth: được nhận vào  + Get off: rời khỏi, xuống xe, máy bay)  + Get on: lên ( tàu xe..)  +Get on (well) with/ get along with sb: hòa thuận  + Get out: lộ ra ngoài ( tin tức... )  + Get out of: lẫn tránh  + Get over: phục hồi, vượt qua  + Get through: vượt qua, hoàn thành | + Get through to sb: làm ai hiểu được điều gì  + Get together: tụ họp  + Get up to: gây ra  + Get up: thức dậy  + Get up st: từ bỏ cái gì đó  + Get used to: trở lên quen với  + Get rid of: loại bỏ, tháo rỡ, vứt bỏ, ném đi  + Get (be/keep) in touch with sb: giữ liên lạc  + Get sb st/ st for sb: lấy cho ai cái gì  + Get along: tiến bộ, sống ổn định, vui vẻ  + Get lost: lạc đường, biến mất  + Get even with: trả đũa, trả miếng  + Get the better of: thắng, thắng thế  + Get over: lành bệnh, vượt qua, gượng dậy  + Get to: bắt đầu, đạt đến, đi đến  + Get better, worse: trở lên tốt hơn, xấu hơn  + Get sick, tired, busy... bị bệnh, mệt, bận  + Get a rise out of: khiêu khích  + Get off one's chest: diễn tả cảm xúc của mình |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GIVE"** | |
| + Give away:  - Nói ra một bí mật, thường là vô ý  - Phân phát thứ gì đó miễn phí  - Cho đi mà không mong được báo đáp lại  - Phản bội, báo cho cơ quan chức trách  + Give back  - Trả lại thứ gì đó mà bạn đã mượn  - Trả lại thứ gì đó mà ai đó bị mất  + Give in  - Dùng làm gì vì nó quá khó quá mất sức  - Gửi bài tập về nhà  - Đầu hàng, chấp nhận thất bại  - Đưa ra hoặc đệ trình để xem xét, phê duyệt  + Give in to  - Đồng ý với thứ mà bạn không thích  - Bùng phát cảm xúc  + Give it to: Chỉ trích thậm tệ, phạt ai đó  + Give it up for/ to: Hoan nghênh  + Give of: Đóng góp mà không mong được báo đáp lại, thường là thời gian hoặc tiền  + Give off: Bốc mùi, tỏa mùi; mở rộng | + Give onto: Mở hướng ra một địa điểm  + Give out  - Phân phát  - Ngừng làm việc vì tuổi già hoặc quá hạn  - Công bố, công khai, phát ra  - Tạo âm thanh hoặc tiếng ồn  - Than phiền, rên rỉ  + Give out to: Mắng, cằn nhằn  + Give over:  - Dừng làm gì đó xấu, phiền  -Uỷ thác, chuyển giao trách nhiệm  - Dùng một hoạt động  + Give over to: Cống hiến, chuyển trách nhiệm  + Give up: từ bỏ, ngừng một thói quen  + Give up on: Mất niềm tin vào ai đó, hoặc thứ gì đó thôi hi vọng  + Give up to: Báo cáo với cơ quan chức trách  + Give yourself up: Đầu thú trước cảnh sát, cơ quan chức trách  + Give yourself up to: Dành thời gian, năng lượng cho một cái gì đó |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GO"** | |
| + Go after sb/st: đuổi theo, đi theo sau  + Go ahead: đi về phía trước, tiến lên  + Go along with sb) (to swh): đi cùng ai đến nơi nào  + Go away: đi nơi khác, đi khỏi, rời  + Go back on one's word: không giữ lời  + Go beyond st: vượt quá, vượt ngoài  + Go by: đi qua, trôi qua thời gian)  + Go down: giảm, hạ (giá cả)  + Go down with: mắc bệnh nhiễm bệnh  + Go for st: cố gắng, chọn, giành được  + Go in for = take part in: tham gia  + Go into: điều tra, hỏi thông tin, kiểm tra  + Go off: nổi giận, hỏng/thối rữa (thức ăn)  + Go on = Continue: tiếp tục | + Go off with (sb/st) = Give away with: mang đi theo, cuỗm theo  + Go over st: kiểm tra, xem xét kỹ lưỡng  + Go out: đi ra ngoài, lỗi thời  + Go out with sb: hẹn hò với ai  + Go through: trải qua, thực hiện công việc  + Go through with (st): kiên trì, bền bỉ, chịu đựng, trải qua cái gì đó khó khăn/ không dễ chịu  + Go together: đi cùng nhau, tồn tại cùng nhau  + Go round: xoay, xoay quanh, có đủ thức ăn  + Go under: chìm  + Go up: tăng  + Go without: nhịn, chịu thiếu, tình trạng không có thứ gì đó mà bạn thường có |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH "KEEP"** | |
| + Keep away: để xa ra, cất đi  + Keep back: giữ lại, làm chậm lại, chặn lại, cản lại, cầm lại  + Keep down/ in: cầm lại, nén lại, dằn lại  + Keep from/ off: nhịn, kiêng, nén, tự kiềm chế được, tránh xa  + Keep in with sb: vẫn thân thiện với ai  + Keep on: tiếp tục | + Keep out: không đi vào, ở lại bên ngoài, tránh  + Keep (sb) out of st: tránh xa, không để cho  + Keep together: kết hợp với nhau, gắn bó với nhau, không rời nhau  + Keep up: duy trì, giữ vững  + Keep up with: theo kịp, ngang bằng  + Keep under: đè nén, thống trị, bắt quy phục, kiềm chế |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “MAKE"** | |
| + Make after: Theo đuổi, đuổi theo  + Make away off with: Ăn trộm, ăn cắp  +Make do with: Miễn cưỡng chấp nhận điều gì đó vì không có sự thay thế  + Make for:  - Đi theo một hướng nhất định  - Đưa ra kết quả hay tình huống  + Make into: Chuyển cái này thành cái khác  + Make it: Đi đến hoặc nhận kết quả  + Make it up to: Cố gắng đền bù điều gì đó  + Make of: Hiểu hoặc có ý kiến  + Make off: Rời khỏi nơi nào đó một cách vội vàng + Make with: Đưa cho (thường bị bắt buộc) | + Make out  - Có thể thấy hoặc nghe cái gì đó  - Hiểu được bản chất hoặc tính cách của ai đó  + Make over:  Thay đổi diện mạo  - Đưa tiền hoặc tài sản cho ai đó một cách hợp pháp  + Make up - (with) Làm lành  - Trang điểm  - Bịa ra một câu chuyện  + Make up for: Bồi thường, bù đắp  + Make up to: Tăng số tiền nhận được lên một con số cao hơn |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “PUT"** | |
| + put aside: để dành, dành dụm  + put back: để lại (vào chỗ cũ); vặn (kim đồng hồ) lùi lại  + put forward: trình bày, đề xuất, đưa ra, nếu ra; vặn (kim đồng hồ) tiến lên  + put oneself forward: tự đề cao mình, tự làm cho mình nổi bật  +put by: để sang bên, lảng tránh (vấn đề, câu hỏi,...)  + put down: để xuống, đàn áp, tước quyền, giáng chức, hạ cánh (máy bay, người trong máy bay), đào giếng)  + put in: đệ đơn, đưa ra chứng cớ, thi hành, thực hiện | + put in for: đòi, yêu sách, xin  + put off: cởi (quần áo, mũ nón, giày dép) ra; hoãn lại, để chậm lại  + put on: mặc (quần áo), đội (mũ nón), đi (giày, dép) vào; làm ra vẻ, làm ra bộ  + put the blame on sb: đổ tội lên đầu ai  + put out: tắt, thổi tắt, dập tắt; sản xuất ra; đuổi ra ngoài, lè (lưỡi) ra; quấy rầy, làm phiền  + put up: để lên, đặt lên, cho ở trọ, trọ lại, búi (tóc) lên; giương (ô ) lên; xây dựng, lắp đặt, đem trình diễn, cầu kinh; đề cử, tiến cử  + put up to: cho hay, báo cho biết  + put up with: kiên nhẫn chịu đựng; tha thứ |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “TAKE"** | |
| + Take advantage of: tận dụng, lợi dụng  + Take after: giống, y hệt  + Take along: mang theo, đem theo  + Take aside: đưa ra một chủ đề nói riêng  + Take away: mang đi, lấy đi, đem đi, cất di  + Take account of: xem xét, quan tâm  + Take down:  - tháo ra, dỡ ra, dời đi, hạ xuống -ghi chép  - làm nhục, sỉ nhục  + Take back: rút lại (lời nói), lấy lại  + Take from: giảm bớt, làm yếu  + Take in hand: đảm trách  + Take in:  - tiếp đón; nhận cho ở trọ  – thu nhỏ, làm hẹp lại  – hiểu, nắm được đánh giá đúng  - lừa phỉnh, lừa gạt, cho vào tròng  - hấp thụ | + Take off:  - bỏ (mũ), cởi quần áo); giật ra, lấy di, cuốn di  - (hàng không) cất cánh  + Take into account: xem xét, để ý tới  + Take on:  - đảm nhiệm, nhận làm, gách vác  - tuyển, tuyển dụng  + Take oneself off: bỏ trốn  + Take up:  - nhặt, cầm lên, đưa lên, dẫn lên, mang lên  - thu hút, choán, chiếm (thời gian, tâm trí...)  - chọn (nghề); đảm nhiệm, gánh vác (công việc)  + Take out: Lấy ra; xoá sạch, làm mất đi  + Take up with: giao du với  + Take over: tiếp quản, kế tục, nối nghiệp  + Take place: thay thế, thay đổi, diễn ra  + Take to  - dùng đến, nhờ cậy đến, cần đến  - bắt đầu ham thích, bắt đầu say mê, tập, như |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “ASK”** | |
| Ask about : hỏi về  Ask after: hỏi thăm  Ask for : xin  Ask sb out : mời ai đó đi ăn/đi chơi | |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “BLOW”** | |
| Blow about : lan truyền, tung ra  Blow down :thổi ngã, làm đổ rạp xuống  Blow in : thổi vào, đến bất chợt, đến thình lình  Blow off : thổi bay đi, làm xì hơi ra, tiêu phí | Blow out :thổi bay đi, làm xì hơi ra, tiêu phí, phung phí  Blow over :bỏ qua, quên đi  Blow up :bơm căng lên |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “CALL”** | |
| Call out : gọi to  Call on/upon : kêu gọi, yêu cầu, tạt qua thăm  Call for : gọi, tìm đến ai để lấy cái gì  Call at : dừng lại, đỗ lại, ghé thăm | Call in : mời đến, triệu đến  Call off : hoãn lại, đình lại  Call up : gọi tên, gọi điện, gọi dậy, gọi nhập ngũ |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “CUT”** | |
| Cut away : cắt, chặt đi  Cut back : tỉa bớt, cắt bớt  Cut down : nói xen vào, chen ngang  Cut in : nói xen vào, chen ngang | Cut off : cắt, cúp, ngừng hoạt động  Cut out : cắt ra, bớt ra  Cut up : chỉ trích gay gắt, phê bình nghiêm khắc  Cut down on : cắt giảm |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “CARRY”** | |
| Carry away : mang đi, cuốn đi, bị làm cho mê say  Carry off : chiếm đoạt, làm cho chấp nhận được  Carry on : tiếp tục | Carry out : thực hiện, tiến hành  Carry over : mang sang bên kia  Carry through : hoàn thành, vượt qua |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “DIE”** | |
| Die of : chết vì bệnh gì  Die for : hi sinh cho cái gì  Die down : chêt dần, chêt mòn | Die off : chết lần lượt  Die out : tuyệt chủng |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “FILL”** | |
| Fill in : điền đầy đủ thông tin  Fill out : làm căng ra, làm to ra, mập ra  Fill up : đổ đày, lấp đầy | |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “HOLD”** | |
| Hold back : ngăn lại  Hold down : giữ  Hold forth : đưa ra, nêu ra  Hold in : nén lại, kìm lại  Hold off : giữ không cho lại gần, nán lại | Hold on : nắm chặt, giữ chặt  Hold out : đưa ra  Hold over : đình lại, hoãn lại  Hold up : tắc nghẽn |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “HANG”** | |
| Hang about : đi lang thang, đi la cà, sắp đến  Hang back : do dự, lưỡng lự  Hang behind : tụt lại đằng sau  Hang down : rủ xuống, xoã xuống | Hang on : dựa vào, bám vào  Hang out : đi lang thang, la cà  Hang up : treo lên |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “LOOK”** | |
| Look about : đợi chờ  Look after : chăm sóc  Look at : ngắm nhìn  Look away : quay đi  Look back : quay lại, ngoái cổ lại  Look back upon : nhìn lại cái gì đã qua  Look down : nhìn xuống  Look down on : coi thường  Look up to : kính trọng  Look for : tìm kiếm | Look forward to : mong đợi  Look in : nhìn vào, ghé qua thăm  Look into : xem xét kĩ, nghiên cứu  Look on : đứng xem  Look out : để ý, coi chừng  Look out for St : trông chừng cái gì  Look over : xem xét, kiểm tra, tha thứ, bỏ qua  Look round : nhìn quanh  Look through : lờ đi, xem lướt qua  Look up : lờ đi, xem lướt qua |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “LAY”** | |
| Lay aside : gác sang một bên, không nghĩ tới  Lay down : để xuống, xác lập, đề ra  Lay for : nằm đợi  Lay in : dự trữ, để dành | Lay sb off : cho ai nghỉ việc  Lay on : đánh, giáng đòn  Lay out : sắp đặt, bố trí, đưa ra  Lay over : trải lên, phủ lên |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “LET”** | |
| Let by : để cho đi qua  Let down : làm cho ai đó thất vọng  Let in : cho vào  Let off : tha thứ | Let on : để lộ, tiết lộ  Let out : để cho đi ra, để cho chạy thoát  Let up : dịu, ngớt |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “PASS”** | |
| Pass away : qua đời  Pass sb/st by : lờ đi, làm ngơ  Pass for : được coi là, có tiếng là  Pass off : mất đi, biến mất (cảm giác)  Pass on : truyền lại | Pass out : mê man, bất tỉnh  Pass over : băng qua  Pass round : chuyền tay, chuyền theo vòn  Pass through : trải qua, kinh qua  Pass up : từ bỏ, khước từ |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “PICK”** | |
| Pick at : chế nhạo, chế giễu, rầy la  Pick off : nhổ đi  Pick up : nhặt, đón | |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “TURN”** | |
| Turn away : ngoảnh mặt đi  Turn back : quay lại  Turn down: vặn nhỏ, từ chối  Turn into: biến thành  Turn off: tắt đi | Turn on : bật lên  Turn out : hoá ra  Turn over: lật, dở  Turn up = show up = arrive : đến, xuất hiện |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “TRY”** | |
| Try on : thử đồ  Try out = : test kiểm tra xem có hoạt động được hay không | |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “TELL”** | |
| Tell against : nói điều chống lại  Tell off : rầy, la mắng  Tell on : mách | Tell over đếm  Tell sb/st apart: phân biệt ai/cái gì |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “SEE”** | |
| See about : đảm đương  See after : săn sóc, để ý tới  See off : tiễn | |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “SET”** | |
| Set against : so sánh, đối chiếu  Set apart : dành riêng ra  Set back : vặn chậm lại | Set down : ghi lại, chép lại  Set off/out : khởi hành  Set up : thành lập |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “STAY”** | |
| Stay away : không đến, vắng mặt  Stay in : không ra ngoài  Stay out : ở ngoài, không về nhà | Stay on : ở lâu hơn dự định  Stay up : thức |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “STAND”** | |
| Stand by : đứng cạnh  Stand for : viết tắt, tượng trưng cho  Stand in : đại diện cho  Stand in with : đại diện cho  Stand off : tránh xa, lảng xa  Stand on : giữ đúng, khăng khăng đòi | Stand out : nổi bật  Stand over : bị hoãn lại  Stand up : đứng dậy  Stand up for : về phe, ủng hộ  Stand up to : dũng cảm đương đầu  Stand in for : thay thế chỗ của ai |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “RUN”** | |
| Run after : theo đuổi ai  Run against : đi ngược lại, chống đối, phản đối  Run along : rời đi, tránh ra xa  Run down : hao mòn, tiền tuỵ  Run out : hao mòn, tiền tuỵ | Run out of : hết sạch cái gì  Run on : chạy bằng cái gì  Run over : cán lên, đè lên  Run through : tiêu xài phung phí |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “WATCH”** | |
| Watch after : dõi theo, nhìn theo  Watch for : chờ, đợi | Watch out : đề phòng, coi chừng  Watch over : trông nom, canh gác |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “WEAR”** | |
| Wear away : làm mòn dần, làm mất dần  Wear down : làm kiệt sức dần | Wear off : làm mòn mất  Wear out : làm rách, làm sờn, làm mệt lử |
| **PHRASAL VERBS WITH “WIPE”** | |
| Wipe at : quật, giáng cho một đòn  Wipe away : tẩy, lau sạch  Wipe out : xoá sạch | |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. We are going for a drink now. Why don’t you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ?

A. Follow up B. follow after C. come along D. come with

1. Sally decided to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ up with Jason for the dance contest.

A. pair B. team C. fed D. Both A, B are correct

1. We had lots of good applicants for the job, but one \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_from the rest.

A. stood out B. went along C. got back D. threw away

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, I admit I didn't always do the right thing.

A. Looking round for B. Looking forward to

C. Looking back D. Looking on with

1. Our car broke\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ and we had to push it off the road.

A. off B. down. C. with D. out in

1. They're\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_all men and boys over the age of 14 to join the army.

A. getting off B. giving out C. taking up D. calling on

1. A city council member said that the proposals for the new shopping centre were\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ unlikely to.

A. warm up B. fall over C. go through D. find out

1. Tomorrow's match has been \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ because of the icy weather.

A. called off B. turned off C. set off D. seen off

1. Fighting \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the stands five minutes before the end of the match.

A. cut off B. caught up with C. broke out D. grew up

1. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_some of his old love letters in his wife's desk.

A. warmed up B. turned away C. backed up D. came across

1. The firm was badly in need of restructuring when she \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. put down B. cleared up C. took over D. carried out

1. She\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a bit of money when her grandfather died.

A. came into B. went over C. moved on D. thought over

1. When the truth \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, there was public outrage.

A. dropped by B. called for C. came out D. checked out

1. Traffic was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for several hours by the accident.

A. checked in B. got by C. held down D. held up

1. The alarm should \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_automatically as soon as smoke is detected.

A. go on B. go off C. go with D. go under

1. I hoped to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the idea that a community is more than just a bunch of people living in one place.

A. show up B. look back on С. keep up D. get across

1. The photographs brought\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ many pleasant memories of my childhood.

A. on B. in C. back D. off

1. When you're \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a crisis, it often helps to share with someone.

A. coming up B. going through C. taking on D. running away

1. According to one witness, a worker who was standing next to her, the driver deliberately\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. ran Clark down B. ran Clark into C. came into Clark D. collided into Clark

1. A special show is being \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to raise money for famine victims in Africa.

A. put off B. put through C. put on D. put up

1. Repairing this damage, and returning to the centre ground, seem like an almost impossible, and thankless task, for whoever \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. does it up B. takes it on C. puts it out D. makes it off

1. Tim had a severe, chronic problem with alcoholism, which eventually \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. broke the couple up B. ended the couple up

C. integrated the couple D. reconciled the couple

1. A: "Do you want to stay at our place while you're in town?" - B: "That would be great. So long as it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. put out up B . put you out C. hurt D. let you down

1. America's political climate is changing; among other things, the 2016 presiden election\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the issue of wealth inequality in this country and made people consider closely the structural forces that define class here.

A. brought up B. developed C. bring about D. bring around

1. Ms. Hai is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_an information sheet about the art show.

A. passing out B. getting around C. doing up D. going along with

1. It's the sort of work that\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a high level of concentration

A. catches on B. turns back C. puts down D. calls for

1. It took hours of negotiations to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a reconciliation between the two sides.

A. bring up B. bring about C. bring on D. bring forward

1. We put some money\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_every month for our retirement.

A. forward B. on C. off D. aside

1. Politicians are already. up for the next election.

A. putting B. gearing C. taking D. standing

1. If you tell them what happened I will bear you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ (on it).

A. with B. off C. out D. about

1. In one year she turned from a problem child\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a model student.

A. off В. up C. out D. into

1. He has put himself \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for a place on the national executive.

A. up with B. up to C. towards D. forward

1. He hadn't been asked to the party and was feeling very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. left out B. delighted in C. broken away D. belonged

1. These new demands may be hard for traditional managers to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. speed up B. take on C. pick up D. go up

1. We wanted the baby to be born at home, but it didn't quite turn\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as planned

A. over B. out C. round D. down

1. She was told to go to the washroom and take her lipstick.

A. in B. over C. off D. back

1. When there is too little space, a tent is\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in front of people's homes for the guests.

A. put through B. put down C. put on D. put up

1. The editor's primary responsibility would be the tedious business of bringing the paper \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_every week.

А. up B. down C. out D. down

1. All the worry and anxiety had been too much for her, and she suddenly broke \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in tears.

A. up B. in C. into D. down

1. If you find a piece of music hard to play, break it\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ into small sections and practice each one slowly.

A. on B. over C. down D. into

1. He was upset enough because it was the first day of his swimwear sale and Astrid had called \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_sick.

A. for B. up C. in D. down

1. For me, the film didn’t \_\_\_\_\_\_ all the enthusiastic publicity it received.

A. Come up B. live up C. turn up to D. live up to

1. Jack and Linda \_\_\_\_\_\_ last week. They just weren’t happy together.

A. Broke up B. broke into C. finished off D. ended up

1. I’m \_\_\_\_\_\_ Tom’s address. Do you know it?

A. Looking on B. finding out C. looking for D. getting for

1. I can \_\_\_\_\_\_ with most things but I can’t stand noisy children.

A. Put aside B. put on C. put up D. put off

1. If we don’t do something now, the birds are going to \_\_\_\_\_\_ soon.

A. Die of B. die with C. die out D. die on

1. If you really want to lose weight, you need to \_\_\_\_\_\_ eating desserts.

A. Give away B. give up C. put off D. take off

1. I had to \_\_\_\_\_\_ her request for a loan. Her credit was just not good enough

A. Turn on B. turn off C. turn down D. turn into

1. I need to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ from work and take a holiday.

A. Go away B. get away C. relax on D. run on

1. It \_\_\_\_\_\_ to be a beatiful night tonight!

A. Turned into B. turned out C. turned on D. turned off

1. I want you to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ every bad word you’ve said about my brother.

A. Take back B. say again C. take off D. give off

1. When I was turning out my cupboard I \_\_\_\_\_\_ this photograph of my uncle

A. Came over B. came round C. came across D. came into

1. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ in German, but moved to the US at the age of 18.

A. Brought to B. grew up C. turned off D. went to

1. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ the club on recommendation from his friend Jack.

A. Got in B. got on C. got by D. got into

1. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ unleaded gas and left on his journey.

A. Poured on B. filled up with C. filled up D. poured with

1. He spent the entire night thinking and in the end \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a brilliant idea.

A. Received with B. got up C. came up with D. came out

1. We’re not ready yet, we are going to have to \_\_\_\_\_\_ the meeting until next week.

A. Take off B. put off C. take on D. go off

1. Let’s \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the grammar one more time before the test.

A. Go through B. come over C. go on D. go over

1. Look Jack, I’ve \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ your bad behavior long enough!

A. Put up B. put through C. put up with D. get on well

1. Make sure to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ pick-pockets when you go to the market.

A. Watch out for B. come along C. take to D. look at

1. My sister \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ my cats while I was away on vacation.

A. Looked after B. looked for C. looked at D. looked on

1. Our flight was delayed, but we finally \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ shortly after midnight.

A. Took off B. took on C. took up D. put off

1. Our school \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for the summer holidays on the 10th of July.

A. Breaks up B. breaks down C. breaks off D. breaks in

1. She promised to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ her cigarette smoking to five a day.

A. Cut down B. give up C. give away D. cut up

1. “Let me check the directions," he said, reaching in his pocket to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a little booklet.

A. pick up B. get over C. take out D. do away with

1. This \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to be a hard job, as the island seems to be inhabited only by shepherds and smugglers.

A. drops out B. comes out C. turns out D. ends up

1. Can you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_for me on the conference call? I have to leave early today for a doctor's appointment

A. drop off B. fill in C. pick up D. call on

1. He will be able to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the multinational forces, if he deems it necessary to have them deal with a problem.

A. sack B. turn out C. call on D. take over

1. The bus only stops here to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ passengers.

A. Get off B. pick up C. alight D. get on

1. Most of the afternoon was\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in Oxford, where I had a hair appointment.

A. taken on B. taken up C. depended on D. called up

1. In some cases, companies give\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ goods or refund purchases in return for glowing reviews.

A. off B. away C. in D. up

1. Check it with your boss before you do anything.

A. out B. in C. on D. up

1. Yet these organizations bring women \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the family in ways that do not fundamentally challenge their traditional roles.

A. up B. out C. forward D. in

1. The child was \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by a lorry on the safety crossing in the main street.

A. Knocked out B. knocked down C. run out D. run across

1. The exact questions she had prepared perfect answers for \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in the exam.

A. Came out B. came in C. came through D. came up

1. There is just too much work to be done. We’ll have to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ some new employees.

A. Get on B. take on C. take off D. get off

1. When you go to New York, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the bad restaurants offering cheap food.

A. Look for B. look out for C. look head D. look on

1. Don’t worry about trying to catch the last train home, as we can easily \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you up for the night.

A. Take B. set C. put D. keep

1. I am late because my alarm clock didn’t \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ this morning.

A. Come on B. ring out C. go off D. turn on

1. He furiously told the beggar to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. Clear up B. clear off C. clear away D. clear after

* **MODULE 24 : COLLOCATIONS**
* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **MỘT SỐ CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ** | |
| **Collocations with DO** | |
| + do one's best: cố hết sức, làm hết khả năng của bản thân  + do damage/harm to sb/st: gây ra thiệt hại, phá huý  + do more harm than good: hại nhiều hơn lợi  + do exercise/ aerobics /yoga karate: tập thể dục/thể dục nhịp điệu/yoga/karate  + do someone a favour /a good turn: giúp đồ ai đó, làm một điều gì cho ai đó  + do household chore/housework: làm việc nhà  + do accountancy / engineering / law / economics: học nghề kế toán, kĩ sư, luật / kinh tế  + do the shopping/cooking/gardening: đi mua sắm/nấu ăn/làm vườn  + do/ run/start/build/expand a business: làm/ bắt đầu mở rộng kinh doanh  + do away with: loại bỏ, giết (= kill/get rid of); bãi bỏ (= abolish) | + do a crossword: chơi trò ô chữ .  + do/take/attend a course: học một khoá học  + do a deal: thoả thuận (trong kinh doanh) + do (= wash) the dishes: rửa bát  + do (= arrange) the flowers: cắm hoa vào lọ  + do for a living: kiếm sống  + do impression of sb: bắt chước (cho giống  với ai đó) # make impression on sb: gây ấn tượng với ai  + do a good/great/terrible job: làm tốt/tệ  + do/conduct/carry out/undertake research: làm/tiến hành/thực hiện nghiên cứu  + do sth right/wrong: làm điều gì đúng/sai  + do sums: thực hiện phép toán  + do/perform/fullfil/take on one's duty: làm nhiệm vụ  + do military service: thực hiện nghĩa vụ quân sự |
| **COLLLOCATION WITH MAKE** | |
| Collocations + make a difference: tạo nên sự khác biệt  + make a fortune: trở nên giàu có  +make history: làm nên lịch sử  + make friends: kết bạn  + make a noise/mess/fuss: làm ổn/làm rối, làm bề bộn/làm ầmĩ  + make an appointment: hen gặp  + make a suggestion: đưa ra một đề xuất  + make a mistake: mắc lỗi  + make a profit: kiếm lãi  + make preparations (for): chuẩn bị  + make a decision: ra một quyết định  + make an effort/attempt: nỗ lực, gắng hết sức  + make a list: làm một danh sách  + make room for sth: tạo chỗ trống  + make an observation: quan sát  + make up/invent a story: bịa ra 1 câu chuyện  + make a reservation: đặt chỗ  + make a go of it: thành công trong việc gì | + make/keep/break a promise: hứa/giữ lời hứa/phá vỡ lời hứa  + make (full) use of/take advantage of: tận dụng (tối đa)  + make a discovery: khám phá ra  + make an excuse: kiếm cớ  + make money/a living: kiếm tiền/kiểm sống  + make a phone call: gọi điện  + make a journey: thực hiện một hành trình  + make progress (in/on): tiến bộ  + make sense: có ý nghĩa  + make a complaint: phàn nàn make a comment/statement/announcement: bình luận/tuyên bố/báo cáo  + make a connection: tạo ra một kết nối  + make/meet the deadline: hoàn thành đúng hạn  + make a discovery: thực hiện khám phá  + make contribution (to): góp phần vào |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH TAKE** | |
| + take a nap: đánh một giấc ngủ trưa  + take a closer look (at): xem xét kĩ lưỡng  + take a break/ rest: nghỉ giải lao, nghỉ ngơi  + take a picture/ photo (of sb): chụp ảnh  + take a seat: tìm một chỗ ngồi  + take a test/ exam: tham gia kỳ thi  + take a bow: cúi đầu  + take medicine: uống thuốc  + take action: hành động  + take a strong/strict/drastic measure: thực hiện biện pháp mạnh mẽquyết liệt  + take a beating: chịu một trận đòn  + take an obstacle: vượt qua một điều trở ngại  + take one's temperature: đo nhiệt độ cho ai  + take a risk: gây nguy hiểm  + take (sb) to court: đưa ai đó ra tòa  + take pride in = be proud of: tự hào về  + take turns: thay phiên  + take after sb (=resemble): giống (với ai đó) | + take notes: ghi chép  + take one's time: ung dung, từ từ, thong thả  + take a chance/ the opportunity tận dụng cơ hội  + take/catch/grab a taxi: bắt taxi  + take control of: kiểm soát  + take care of (=look after/care for): chăm sóc  + take part in/participate in st: tham gia  + take advantages of: tận dụng lợi dụng  + take pleasure in: thích thú với việc gì  + take someone's place: thế chỗ ai  + take precautions: thực hiện biện pháp phòng ngừa  + take effect: có hiệu lực  + take notice of: chú ý, để ý đến, nhận thấy việc gì  + take/shoulder/carry/assume the responsibility for sth: chịu trách nhiệm |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH GET** | |
| + get lost: bị lạc  + get a job: có một công việc  + get married/divorced: kết hôn/ly hôn  + get the message/cue: hiểu ý; thẩm ý  + get a life: có được một cuộc sống  + get ready for st: chuẩn bị cho  + get/earn a living: kiếm sống  + get fame: nổi tiếng  + get/learn sth by heart: học thuộc lòng  + get alongjon (with sb): sống hòa thuận với  + get over difficulties/illness: vượt qua khó khăn/khỏi bệnh | + get home: về nhà  + get fired/sacked/the axe: bị đuổi  + get into debt/a habit: mắc nợ/nhiễm một thói quen  + get permission: xin phép  + get a picture: chụp ảnh  + get a promotion: được thăng chức  + get a ticket: mua một cái vé  + get access to: có quyền/được truy cập vào  + get across an idea: trình bày ý kiến một cách khúc chiết |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH GO** | |
| + go bald: bị hói đầu  + go crazy insane/mad: nổi điên, trở nên khùng  + go missing: mất tích, thất lạc  + go on a journey/tour/trip/cruise: thực hiện một hành trình/chuyến đi/du ngoạn trên biển  + go on foot: đi bộ  + go online: lên mạng  + go on a holiday/date/picnic/strike: đi nghỉ/hẹn hò/dã ngoại/đình công  + go blind/deaf/bald: bị mù/điếc/hói đầu | + go abroad/ overseas: đi ra nước ngoài  + go astray: đi lạc đường, lạc lối, thất lạc  + go/come/take into effect: có hiệu lực  +go out of business/bankrupt: làm ăn thua lỗ, đóng cửa/phá sản  + go shopping/fishing/camping/climbing: đi mua sắm/câu cá/cắm trại/leo núi  + go native: trở thành như người địa phương  + go back on (upon) one's word: không giữ lời hứa  +go for a walk/swim/drink: đi dạo/bơi/uống |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH GAIN** | |
| Collocations +gain weight: tăng cân  +gain access to: truy cập/tiếp cận với  +gain control of: giành được quyền kiểm soát  +gain a reputation for: nổi tiếng vì  + gain popularity/acceptance: phổ biến/được chấp nhận  + gain market share: giành được thị phần | + gain experience/understanding/support: thu được/có được kinh nghiệm/sự hiểu biết/sự hỗ trợ  + gain one's living: kiếm sống  +gain an insight into: có cái nhìn thấu đáo  + gain an advantage over sb: có lợi thế hơn ai  + gain purpose: đạt được mục đích |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH GIVE** | |
| +give permission: cho phép  + give sb a chance: cho ai đó cơ hội  + give advice: đưa ra lời khuyên  +give sb a lift: cho ai đó đi nhờ xe .  +give sb a call: gọi cho ai đó  + give preference to sb: ưu tiên ai đó  + give a lecture/speech/ performance: thuyết giảng/phát biểu/ biểu diễn  + give rise to: làm phát sinh, gia tăng  + give thought (to): suy nghĩ về | + give sb a headache: làm ai đó cảm thấy cực kì phiền phức (nghĩa đen: làm ai đó thấy đau đầu)  + give information: đưa ra chỉ dẫn, cung cấp thông tin  + give sb a hand: giúp đỡ ai đó  + give the impression that: làm ai đó  nghĩ/cảm thấy theo một chiều hướng nhất  định  + give birth (to): sinh, đẻ ra  + give an example: đưa ra ví dụ |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH BREAK** | |
| + break the news to sb: báo tin cho ai (tin buồn)  + break one's heart: làm ai đau lòng  + break a record: phá kỷ lục  + break the rules/promise/appointment: phá vỡ những quy luật không giữ lời hứa/không giữ hẹn  + break the peace: làm rối trật tự chung  + break a sleep: giải mê, giải bùa  + break out of prison: vượt ngục | + break a habit: từ bỏ một thói quen  + break the ice: bắt đầu làm quen với nhau  + break a leg: làm gãy chân #break a leg! chúc may mắn  + break the silence: phá tan sự yên lặng  + break one's health/ couragel will: làm ai mất sức/ can đảm/ ý chí  + break for lunch: nghỉ ăn trưa  + break off with sb: cắt đứt quan hệ |
| **COLLOCATION WITH COME** | |
| + come up to: đạt đới (expectation/success)>< fall short of: không đạt tới  + come in for: hưởng (tài sản); hứng chịu (chỉ trích)  + come prepared: đến có chuẩn bị, sẵn sàng  + come up with (ideas/sollutions): nảy ra, nghĩ ra ý tưởng giải pháp)  + come to terms with: nhìn nhận sự thật  + come to a standstill: đi đến một bế tắc  + come across/bump into sb: tình cờ gặp ai | + come to/reach an agreement: đi đến thỏa thuận  + come to/reach/arrive at a decision: đi đến quyết định  + come to an end: đi đến kết thúc  + come into effect: có hiệu lực  + come forward: đứng ra, xung phong  +in years to come: trong những năm tới  + come under attack: bị tấn công  + come to a compromise: đi đến 1 thỏa hiệp |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH HAVE** | |
| + have a meeting: có một cuộc họp  + have a party: tổ chức một bữa tiệc  + have a baby: có em bé  + have difficulty/trouble (in sth): gặp khó khăn, rắc rối  + have sth in common: Có điểm chung  + have a good time: đi chơi vui vẻ nhé  + have a problem: gặp một trở ngại, rắc rối  + have sympathy: có sự thương cảm  + have a splitting headache: đau đầu như búa bổ | + have a fight: có một cuộc chiến  + have a conversation: Có một cuộc trò chuyện  + have an interview: có một cuộc phỏng vấn  + have breakfast/lunch/dinner: ăn sáng/trưa/tối  + have fun: vui vẻ, vui chơi  + have an argument/a row: cãi vã, tranh luận  + have a break: nghỉ mệt, thư giãn  + have a drink: uống một cốc (rượu...)  + have a go (at sth/to do sth): thử làm gì đó  + have/undergo an operation: phải/trải qua |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH CATCH** | |
| + catch fire: bắt lửa, cháy  + catch a bus/ train/flight: bắt xe buýt/ tàu/máy bay  + catch a ball: bắt bóng  + catch a cold/the flu: nhiễm lạnh/ cảm cúm  + catch a thief: bắt một tên trộm  + catch in the act/ red-handed: bắt quả tang  + catch/take sb by surprise: làm ai đó sủng sốt/bất ngờ | + catch one's breath: nín thở  + catch one's eyes catch one's attention: thu hút được sự chú ý  + catch a habit: nhiễm một thói quen  + catch the public: lôi cuốn được công chúng  + catch a sight/glimpse of sb/sth: nắm lấy/tóm lấy/thấy ai/ cái gì  + catch someone's meaning: hiểu được ý ai muốn nói gì |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH PAY** | |
| + pay one’s (last) respects to/for: thể hiện sự kính trọng (cuối cùng) đối với ai đó  + pay heed/attention to sb/st: chú ý tới ai/ điều gì  + pay the price: trả giá  + pay a bill /fine /subscription: thanh toán hoá đơn/tiền phạt/tiền đặt mua dài hạn  + pay in cash/by cheque: trả tiền mặt/ngân phiếu  + pay one's debt: trả nợ, thanh toán nợ  + pay off: có hiệu lực, thành công (chính sách/kế hoạch) . | + pay the bill: thanh toán hóa đơn  + pay by credit card: trả bằng thẻ tín dụng  +pay someone a visit: ghé thăm ai  + pay sb a compliment: ngỏ lời khen ngợi ai  + pay a sum: trả một số tiền  + pay off one's debts /a loan la mortgage: trả hết nợ/khoản vay/khoản cầm cố  + pay sb back for sth: trả thù ai về điều gì  + pay through the nose (for sth): trả 1 giá quá đắt  + pay tribute to sb: kính trọng/ngưỡng mộ ai |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH KEEP** | |
| + keep calm/ one's temper: giữ bình tĩnh  + keep quiet/ silent: giữ im lặng  + keep control: giữ kiểm soát  + keep a secret: giữ bí mật  + keep the laws: tuân giữ pháp luật  + keep a shop: quản lý một cửa hiệu  + keep an eye on: để mắt vào, trông giữ  + keep tabs on: kiểm tra, kiểm soát; theo dõi  + keep pace with: bắt kịp, theo kịp  + keep peace with: giữ mối quan hệ tốt | + keep/stay/be in touch/contact (with sb): giữ liên lạc (với ai)  + keep one's promise (word): giữ lời hứa  + keep the change: giữ lại tiền thừa  + keep an appointment: y hẹn  + keep st in mind: ghi nhớ điều gì  + keep the cash: giữ két  + keep/raise/bring up/rear a family/a: nuôi nấng gia đình  + keep someone waiting: bắt ai chờ đợi  + keep good time: đúng giờ (đồng hồ |
| **COLLOCATIONS WITH SAVE** | |
| + save energy/ electricity/money/time/ space: tiết kiệm năng lượng điện/ tiền/ thời gian/ không gian + save one's life: cứu mạng ai đó  + save the situation: cứu vãn tình thế  + save one's breath: làm thinh | + save one's strength: giữ sức  + save someone a seat: giữ chỗ, dành một chỗ  + Save oneself the trouble: đỡ mất công  + save one's soul: cứu vớt linh hồn ai  + save a file: lưu tập tin |
| **MỘT SỐ CỤM TỪ CỐ ĐỊNH THÔNG DỤNG KHÁC** | |
| + carry out/do/handle the chores: thực hiện/ làm công việc vặt trong nhà  + divide/split/share the chores: phân chia/ chia sẻ công việc vặt trong nhà  + do the heavy lifting: làm việc nặng  + not see the point of: không thấy rõ được mục đích, tầm quan trọng của ...  + maintain eye contact with sb: duy trì giao tiếp mắt với ai  + get rid of/ kick/break a bad habit: vứt bỏ thói xấu  + have a smash/big/huge/great hit: có được sự thành công, thắng lợi bất ngờ  + make a commitment to st/ V+ing: tận tụy (cống hiến thời gian, công sức vào việc gì đó)  + lack of commitment: thiếu sự tận tâm  + demand/require/ demonstrate a high level of commitment: đòi hỏi/thể hiện mức độ quyết tâm cao  + on a regular basic = frequently/regularly: đều đặn, thường xuyên  + play an important part/role in st: đóng một phần/vai trò quan trọng trong ...  + a key/leading central/crucial/vital/ major/ significant role: một vai trò quan trọng/hàng đầu/trung tâm/chính  + set/establish/keep/hold/break/beat a record: lập/giữ/phá một kỷ lục  + make/turn/earn a profit: kiếm lời  + carry on/have/hold a conversation with sb: chuyện trò với ai, đàm luận với ai  + follow in one's footsteps: làm theo ai, theo gương ai, theo gót ai  + come true = become reality: trở thành hiện thực  + Fulfill /meet/satisfy the criteria/ requirement/demand/need: đáp ứng các tiêu chí/yêu cầu  + take action/measure: hành động/đưa ra biện pháp  + have difficulty in V+ing: gặp khó khăn  + have/make/cause/spell trouble for sb: gặp/gây rắc rối  + come/enter into force (of a law, rule, etc.) = Come into effect có hiệu lực  + bring/carry into effect = to come into use; to begin to apply: thực hiện, thi hành  + come into power: nắm quyền  + attract/catch/grab/draw one's attention = catch one's eye = bring st to the attention of sb/st: thu hút sự chú ý của ai  + pay close attention to sb/st = take notice of: chú ý tới ai/cái gì  + the centre of attention: trung tâm của sự chú ý  + be on the verge of: trên bờ vực của ...  + drive/bring sb/st to the verge/brink of st: đẩy ai/cái gì đến bờ vực của ...  + come to/lead to/arrive at/reach/draw a conclusion: đi tới/dẫn tới/rút ra kết luận  + tell the difference = distinguish: phân biệt | + get up the nerve: lấy hết can đảm = pluck up/get up/wake up the courage to V  + keep/hold one's nerve: giữ can đảm/tâm lý  + lose one's nerves: mất tinh thần, hoảng sợ  + take/have a nap: đánh một giấc ngủ trưa  + in an attempt to V: nỗ lực làm gì  + at the (first, second, last....) attempt: trong lần cố gắng, lần thử (thứ nhất, thứ hai, ...) |  + make noan attempt/effort to V: không có cố gắng làm gì  + go through/have a difficult period: trải qua/có một thời kỳ khó khăn  + open the door of knowledge to sb: mở ra cánh cửa tri thức đối với ai  + a thirst for knowledge: khát khao tri thức  + to the best of your knowledge/ belief = as far as you know: theo như bạn được biết  + common/public knowledge: kiến thức chung  + have a huge/big heart for sb: hào hiệp phóng khoáng, rộng lượng  + set a good/shining/great/inspiring example for sb: nêu gương tốt/sáng chói/tuyệt vời, đây cảm hứng cho ai  + lead by example: gương mẫu đi đầu  + without example: chưa hề có tiền lệ  + put an end to (=stop): chấm dứt, bãi bỏ  + come to an end (= finish): hoàn thành  + bring st to the end: chấm dứt cái gì  + change one's mind: thay đổi ý kiến, suy nghĩ  + make up one's mind: đưa ra quyết định  + be made redundant: bị cho nghỉ việc  + be sacked for st: bị sa thải, bị cách chức vì  + give/get sb the sack/the axe: đuổi ai/bị sa thải  + get fired/dismissed from a job = fire sb from a job: bị sa thải  + make a donation: quyên góp, cho tặng  + a generous/large/ sizeable/small donation: một khoản đóng góp hào phóng/lớn/nhỏ  + in the fight/struggle against/for st: trong cuộc chiến chống lại/giành thứ gì ...  + be in need of st: cần  + There's no need to V: không cần phải làm gì  + raise/heighten/increase awareness of: nâng cao nhận thức về  + a greater/a growing/an increasing awareness of st: nhận thức ngày càng cao về điều gì  + face/deal with many challenges: đối mặt với nhiều thử thách  +issue/send a challenge: thách, thách thức  + pose huge challenges to sb/st: đặt ra những thách thức lớn đối với...  + meet the challenge of st: đáp ứng thách thức của  +pose a threat to sb/st: đặt ra một mối đe dọa với ai  + under threat of: bị đe dọa + try/wait/be in vain: cố gắng/chờ đợi/trong vô vọng  + Raise/pose/put a question: nêu lên vấn đề |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. Don’t \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to conclusions, we don’t yet know all the relevant facts.

A. hurry B. jump C. rush D. run

1. I wonder if you could \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ me a small favour, Tom?

A. bring B. make C. give D. do

1. Sicientists warn that many of the world’s great cities are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ flooding.

A. being B. at risk C. in danger of D. endangered

1. The boy’s strange behavior aroused the \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the shop assistant.

A. thought B. consideration C. exectations D. suspicions

1. The young should \_\_\_\_\_themselves in social activities.

A. determine B. serve C. involve D. promote.

1. I know from \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_that everything will be all right.

A. conscience B. experience C. wisdom D. care

1. Your second essay \_\_\_\_\_\_improvement on the first one.

A. showed B. made C. cast D. presented

1. The Women’s World Cup is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ in popularity.

A. competing B. establishing C. advancing D. growing

1. Our class team has won four \_\_\_\_\_\_ football matches.

A. successful B.unsuccessful C. success D. successive

1. We interviewed a number of candidates buit none of them \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ us.

A. enlivened B. encouraged C. delighted D. mpressed

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to British univerities depends on examnation results.

A. Admission B. Admittance C. Permission D. Permit

1. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_\_\_jobs because I don’t like keep on moving and changing all the time.

A. demanding B. challenging C. steady D. secure

1. The investment has had \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on the development of our project.

A. results B. progress C. interruptions D. effects

1. In China, there are still a lot of \_\_\_\_ families sharing the same house.

A. extent B. extension C. extended D. extensive

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, the number of people at the first New York show equaled the entire car population of the United States at that time.

A. By design B. On purpose C. For example D. By happenstance

1. Negotiating is the process of communicating back and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for the purpose of reaching an agreement.

A. next B. forth C. again D. over

1. At her trial in 1431, Joan was accused of being in\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_with the devil.

A. cooperation B. association C. league D. conjunction

1. You've all\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the point. The film itself is not racist - it simply tries to make us question our own often racist attitude.

A. mistaken B. misunderstood C. missed D. lost

1. It never\_\_ my head that such a terrible thing would happen.

A. struck B. dawned C. occurred D. entered

1. My mother often\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_our mistakes, whereas my father is very strict and punishes us for even the slightest one.

A. neglects B. overlooks C. avoids D. passes

1. After congratulating his team, the coach left, allowing the players to let their \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ down for a while.

A. hearts B. hair C. souls D. heads

1. Alice said: "That guy is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ gorgeous. I wish he would ask me out."

A. dead-centre B. drop shot C. jumped-up D. drop-dead

1. The party leader travelled the length and \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the country in an attempt to spread his message.

A. width B. distance C. diameter D. breadth

1. Vietnam U23 made not only Asia but also Europe keep a close eye on them. They \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ internationally.

A. have made headlines B. had made headlines

C. have done headlines D. did headlines

1. If we didn't \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ any measures to protect whales, they would disappear forever.

A. use B. make C. take D. do

1. People who take on a second job inevitably \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ themselves to greater stress.

A. offer B. subject C. field D.place

1. It is the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of stupidity to go walking in the mountains in this weather.

A. height B. depth C. source D. matter

1. Both universities speak \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of the programme of student exchange and hope to cooperate more in the future.

A. highly B. largely C. strongly D. widely

1. We were all in a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ mood because the weather was good and we were going on holiday the next day.

A. bad B. well C. excellent D. good

1. With this type of insurance, you're buying \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of mind.

A. peace B. satisfaction C. calmness D. contentment

1. Could you \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ me a lift into town?

A. give B. get C. do D. make

1. The players' protests \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ no difference to the referee's decision at all.

A. did B. made C. caused D. created

1. In a formal interview, it is essential to maintain good eye \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with the interviewers.

A. link B. connection C. touch D. contact

1. It was no accident that he broke my glasses. He did it \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ purpose.

A. with B. on C. by D. about

1. I read the contract again and again \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ avoiding making spelling mistakes.

A. in terms of B. by means of C. with a view to D. in view of

1. Please don't \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a word of this to anyone else, it's highly confidential.

A. speak B. pass C. mutter D. breathe

1. My advice is that you get straight to the point in the next report.

A. If I were you, I would go straight to the bush in the next report.

B. If I were you, I would have the next report got started.

C. If I were you, I would not beat around the bush in the next report.

D. If I were you, I would not point out the next report.

1. “How was your exam?” “A couple of questions were tricky, but on the \_\_\_\_\_ it was pretty easy.”

A. spot B.general C. hand D. whole

1. If you practice regularly, you can learn this language skill in short \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of a time.

A. period B. aspect C. arrangement D. activity

1. Students can \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of information just by taking an active part in class.

A. concern B. install C. appear D. memorize

1. A few years ago, a fire \_\_\_\_\_ much of an overcrowded part of the city.

A. battled B. devastated C. mopped D. developed

1. I have learned a lot about the value of labour form my \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ at home.

A. credit B. energy C. chores D. pot plants

1. Although he tried to hide it, it was \_\_\_\_\_\_that Peter didn’t like his birthday present.

A. foolish B. basic C. obvious D. vigorous

1. Environemental groups try to stop farmers from using harmful \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on their crops.

A. economy B. agriculate C. investments D. chemicals

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_\_ too much on study, you will get tired and stressed.

A. concentrate B. develop C. organize D. complain

1. Good heath and methods of study are very necessary, or \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for success in college.

A. avaible B. dependable C. essential D. efficicient

1. In order to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ their goals in college, students need to invest the maximum amount of time, money, and energy in their studies.

A. manage B. catch C. establish D. achieve

1. Before choosing a job, you should take into consideration several\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ including the supply and demand for professionals in any particular field.

A. turns B. factors C. ramarks D. sides

1. The deadline is coming, and we still have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ problems.

A. unsolving B. unsolved C. insolved D. solving

1. He recievec a medal in \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to his bravery.

A. turns B. response C. favour D. reward

1. He left the country \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ arrest of he retured.

A. in fear that B. with fear of C. under threat of D. with threat of

1. When you consider all the advantages you've gained I think you'll admit you had a good \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for your money.

A. run B. way C. earn D. drive

1. In a modern family the husband is expected to join hands with his wife to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the household chores.

A. do B. make C. run D. take

1. While everyone else in this class prefers working in groups, Alice likes working \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. on her own B. of her own C. on herself D. in herself

1. Foreign students who are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ a decision about which school to attend may not know exactly where the choices are located.

A. doing B. making C. taking D. having

1. Since he failed his exam, he had to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ for it again.

A. pass B. make C. take D. sit

1. It is very important for a film or a company to keep \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the changes in the market.

A. pace of B. track about C. touch with D. up with

1. My brother left his job last week because he did not have any \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to travel.

A. position B. chance C. ability D. location

1. I haven't read any medical books or articles on the subject for a long time, so I'm \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ with recent developments.

A. out of reach B. out of the condition

C. out of touch D. out of the question

1. I get quite depressed when I think about the damage we are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to the environment.

A. having B. taking C. making D. causing

**MODULE 25 : IDIOMS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **THÀNH NGỮ CHỨA MÀU SẮT** | | | |
| **STT** | **Thành ngữ** | | **Nghĩa** |
| **1** | The black sheep | | nghịch tử, phá gia chi tử |
| **2** | Blue in the face | | mãi mãi, lâu đến vô vọng |
| **3** | Red-letter day | | ngày đáng nhớ vì có chuyện tốt lành, ngày vui |
| **4** | White as a ghost/sheet | | trắng bệch, nhợt nhạt |
| **5** | With flying colors | | xuất sắc |
| **6** | Once in a blue moon | | năm thì mười hoạ, hiếm khi |
| **7** | Black and white | | rõ ràng |
| **8** | Catch sb red-handed | | bắt tại trận |
| **9** | Have a yellow streak | | có tính nhát gan |
| **10** | Get/give the green light | | bật đèn xanh |
| **11** | Out of the blue | | hoàn toàn bất ngờ |
| **12** | Paint the town red | | ăn mừng |
| **13** | Red tape | | nạn quan liêu |
| **14** | In the pink = in good health | | sức khoẻ tốt |
| **15** | Lend color to St | | chứng minh cái gì |
| **THÀNH NGỮ CHỨA CÁC DANH TỪ BỘ PHẬN** | | | |
| **STT** | | **Thành ngữ** | **Nghĩa** |
| **1** | | Break a leg | Good luck! (thường dùng để chúc may mắn) |
| **2** | | Scratch someone's back  =Help someone out with the assumption that they will return the favor in the future | giúp đỡ người khác với hi vọng họ sẽ giúp lại  mình |
| **3** | | Hit the nail/ on the head  = Do or say something exactly right | nói chính xác, làm chính xác |
| **4** | | Splitting headache = A severe headache | đau đầu như búa bổ |
| **5** | | Make someone's blood boil | làm ai sôi máu, giận dữ |
| **6** | | Pay through the nose  = To pay too much for something | trả giá quá đắt |
| **7** | | By the skin of one's teeth | sát sao, rất sát |
| **8** | | Pull someone's leg | chọc ai |
| **9** | | Fight tooth and claw/nail | đánh nhau dữ dội, cấu xé nhau |
| **10** | | Not bat an eye  = To not show any shock or surprise | không tỏ ra ngạc nhiên hay sốc |
| **11** | | Cost an arm and a leg | rất là đắt đỏ |
| **12** | | Go to one's head | khiến ai kiêu ngạo |
| **13** | | Get/have cold feet | mất hết can đảm, chùn bước |
| **14** | | Led somebody by the nose  = To control someone and make them do exactly what you want them to do | nắm đầu, dắt mũi ai |
| **15** | | Off one's head | điên, loạn trí |
| **16** | | Put one's foot in it | gây nhầm lẫn, bối rối, phạm một sai lầm gây bối rối |
| **17** | | Stay/keep/be on one's toe | cảnh giác, thận trọng |
| **18** | | Have in mind | đang suy tính, cân nhắc |
| **19** | | At heart | thực chất, cơ bản (basically, fundamentally) |
| **20** | | Face the music | chịu trận |
| **21** | | Like the back of one's hand | rõ như lòng bàn tay |
| **22** | | The twinkling of an eye | trong nháy mắt |
| **23** | | On the tip of tongue | dùng khi muốn diễn tả ai đó không thể nhớ ra  được điều gì mặc dù đã chắc chắn biết về nó |
| **24** | | Put one's foot in one's mouth | nói một điều ngu ngốc làm xúc phạm đến người  khác |
| **25** | | Stick one's nose into one's business | chúi mũi vào việc của người khác |
| **26** | | Feel St in one's bones | cảm nhận rõ rệt |
| **27** | | A real pain in the neck | sốc, nghiêm trọng |
| **28** | | Face to face | trực tiếp |
| **29** | | See eye to eye with sb = totally agree | đồng tình |
| **30** | | Keep one's head above the water | xoay xở |
| **31** | | Have egg on one’s face | xấu hổ |
| **32** | | Word of mouth | đồn đại, truyền miệng |
| **33** | | Heart to heart | chân thành |
| **34** | | Body and soul | hết lòng, hết dạ |
| **35** | | Flesh and blood | người có máu mủ ruột thịt |
| **36** | | Skin and bones | tiều tuỵ thảm thương, chỉ còn da bọc xương |
| **37** | | Lend an ear to sb/st | iắng nghe một cách chân thành |
| **38** | | Trip over one's big feet | tự vấp ngã |
| **39** | | In one's capable hands | trong quyền giải quyết |
| **40** | | Up to your eyes | rất bận |
| **41** | | Have a head for st | giỏi về cái gì |
| **42** | | A sweet tooth | người thích ăn đồ ăn ngọt |
| **43** | | Have st at one's fingertips  = To have the information, knowledge, etc. That is needed in a particular situation and be able to find it easily and use it quickly | nhận được thông tin/ kiến thức cần thiết một cách  dễ dàng và nhanh chóng |
| **THÀNH NGỮ CÓ CHỨA CÁC CON VẬT** | | | |
| **STT** | | **Thành ngữ** | **Nghĩa** |
| **1** | | Take the mickey out of sb = make fun of sb | chế nhạo, châm chọc ai |
| **2** | | Get butterflies in one's stomach | cảm thấy bồn chồn |
| **3** | | Have a bee in one's bonnet about St | ám ảnh về điều gì |
| **4** | | When pigs fly = something will never happen | điều vô tưởng, không thể xảy ra |
| **5** | | Teacher's pets | học sinh cưng |
| **6** | | Let the cat out of the bag | tiết lộ bí mật |
| **7** | | Huddle into a pen | lại gần nhau, túm tụm lại |
| **8** | | Kill two birds with one stone | một mũi tên trúng hai đích |
| **9** | | A big fish in a small pond | thằng chột làm vua xử mù |
| **10** | | Rain cats and dogs | mưa rất to |
| **11** | | Like a fish out of water | như cá ra khỏi nước (bơ vơ, xa lạ, ngớ ngẩn) |
| **12** | | Like water off a duck’s back | nước đổ đầu vịt |
| **13** | | Don't count yours the chicken before they hatch | đừng vội làm gì khi chưa chắc chắc |
| **14** | | Catch the worms | nắm bắt cơ hội |
| **15** | | Be in the doghouse | nếu bạn đang "in the doghouse", tức là ai đó đang  khó chịu với bạn vì điều bạn đã làm |
| **16** | | Don't look a gift horse in the mouth | đừng đòi hỏi về giá trị khi nhận được một món quà |
| **17** | | Cock- and –bull | bịa đặt, vẽ vời ra |
| **18** | | Change horse in midstream | thay ngựa giữa dòng (ý nói thay đổi giữa chừng) |
| **THÀNH NGỮ VỀ CUỘC SỐNG** | | | |
| **STT** | | **Thành ngữ** | **Nghĩa** |
| **1** | | To be in deep water | rơi vào tình huống khó khăn |
| **2** | | To be in hot water | gặp rắc rối |
| **3** | | Better safe than sorry | cẩn tắc vô áy náy |
| **4** | | Money is the good servant but a bad master | khôn lấy của che thân, dại lấy thân che của |
| **5** | | The grass are always green on the other side of the fence | đứng núi này trông núi nọ |
| **6** | | One bitten, twice shy | chim phải đạn sợ cành cong |
| **7** | | In Rome do as the Romans do | nhập gia tuỳ tục |
| **8** | | Honesty is the best policy | thật thà là thượng sách |
| **9** | | A woman gives and forgives, a man gets and forgets | đàn bà cho và tha thứ, đàn ông nhận và quên |
| **10** | | No roses without a thorn | hồng nào mà chẳng có gai, việc nào mà chẳng có vài khó khăn! |
| **11** | | Save for the rainy day | làm khi lành để dành khi đau |
| **12** | | It's an ill bird that fouls its own nest | vạch áo cho người xem lưng / Tốt đẹp phô ra xấu xa đậy lại |
| **13** | | Don't trouble trouble till trouble troubles you | sinh sự sự sinh |
| **14** | | Still water run deep | tẩm ngẩm tầm ngầm mà đấm chết voi |
| **15** | | Men make house, women make home | đàn ông xây nhà, đàn bà xây tổ ấm |
| **16** | | Penny wise pound foolish | tham bát bỏ mâm |
| **17** | | Make the mare go | có tiền mua tiên cũng được |
| **18** | | Like father, like son | con nhà tông không giống lông thì cũng giống  cánh |
| **19** | | The die is cast | bút sa gà chết |
| **20** | | Two can play that game | ăn miếng trả miếng |
| **21** | | Practice makes perfect | có công mài sắt có ngày nên kim |
| **22** | | Ignorance is bliss | không biết thì dựa cột mà nghe |
| **23** | | No pain, no gain | có làm thì mới có ăn |
| **24** | | A bad beginning makes a bad ending | đầu xuôi đuôi lọt |
| **25** | | A clean fast is better than a dirty breakfast | giấy rách phải giữ lấy lề |
| **26** | | Beauty is but skin-deep | cái nết đánh chết cái đẹp |
| **27** | | Calamity is man's true touchstone | lửa thử vàng, gian nan thử sức. |
| **28** | | Diamond cut diamond | vỏ quýt dày có móng tay nhọn |
| **29** | | Diligence is the mother of success | có công mài sắt có ngày nên kim |
| **30** | | Don't put off until tomorrow what you can do today | việc hôm nay chớ để ngày mai |
| **31** | | A hot potato = something that is difficult or dangerous to deal with | vấn đề nan giải |
| **32** | | A lost cause | hết hi vọng, không thay đổi được gì |
| **33** | | It never rains but it pours = good or bad things do not just happen a few at a time, but in large numbers all at once | hoạ vô đơn chí |
| **THÀNH NGỮ LÀ CÁC CỤM DANH TỪ KHÁC** | | | |
| **STT** | | **Thành ngữ** | **Nghĩa** |
| **1** | | A blind date | cuộc hẹn giữa hai người chưa hề quen biết |
| **2** | | Golden handshake | món tiền hậu hĩnh dành cho người sắp nghỉ việc |
| **3** | | One's cup of tea | thứ mà ai đó thích |
| **4** | | Odds and ends | linh tinh, vụn vặt |
| **5** | | Leaps and bounds | nhảy vọt, vượt trội |
| **6** | | Between two stools = on the horns of a dilemma = when someone finds it difficult to choose between two alternatives | tiến thoái lưỡng nan |
| **7** | | On the house | không phải trả tiền |
| **8** | | Off the peg | hàng may sẵn |
| **9** | | Off the record | không chính thức, không được công bố |
| **10** | | Part and parcel | thiết yếu, quan trọng |
| **11** | | A shadow of a doubt | sự nghi ngờ |
| **12** | | Beyond the shadow of a doubt | không hề nghi ngờ |
| **13** | | The last straw = a nail in one's coffin | giọt nước tràn ly |
| **14** | | The apple of one's eye | bảo bối của ai |
| **15** | | Good egg | người có nhân cách, đáng tin cậy |
| **16** | | Close shave = narrow escape | thoát chết trong gang tấc |
| **17** | | Wet blanket | người phá đám |
| **18** | | A kick in the pants | một bài học để ứng xử tốt hơn |
| **19** | | An open-and-shut case | vấn đề dễ giải quyết |
| **20** | | A shot in the dark | một câu đố |
| **21** | | A big cheese | nhân vật tai to mặt lớn, người có vai vế, quyền lực |
| **22** | | Ups and downs | lúc thăng lúc trầm |
| **23** | | Ins and outs | những đặc tính và sự phức tạp |
| **24** | | The tip of the iceberg | phần nhìn thấy |
| **25** | | Compulsive liar | kẻ nói dối chuyên nghiệp |
| **THÀNH NGỮ LÀ CÁC CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ KHÁC** | | | |
| **STT** | | **Thành ngữ** | **Nghĩa** |
| **1** | | To pour cold water on something | dội nước lạnh vào... |
| **2** | | To blow something out of the water | đánh bại, vượt |
| **3** | | To sell/go like hot cakes | đắt đỏ, đắt như tôm tươi |
| **4** | | To get in hot water = be in trouble/ have difficulty | gặp khó khăn |
| **5** | | To hit the books = to study | học |
| **6** | | To hit the roof = to hit the ceiling = to suddenly become angry | giận dữ |
| **7** | | To hit it off | tâm đầu ý hợp |
| **8** | | To make good time | di chuyển nhanh, đi nhanh |
| **9** | | To chip in | góp tiền |
| **10** | | To run an errand | làm việc vặt |
| **11** | | To fly off the handle | dễ nổi giận, phát cáu |
| **12** | | To cut it fine | đến sát giờ |
| **13** | | To jump the traffic lights | vượt đèn đỏ |
| **14** | | To put on an act | giả bộ, làm bộ |
| **15** | | To come to light | được biết đến, được phát hiện, được đưa ra ánh sáng. |
| **16** | | To pull one's weight | nỗ lực, làm tròn trách nhiệm |
| **17** | | To make ends meet | xoay xở để kiếm sống |
| **18** | | To get the hold of the wrong end of the stick | hiểu nhầm ai đó |
| **19** | | To cut and dried | cuối cùng, không thể thay đổi, rõ ràng, dễ hiểu |
| **20** | | To know by sight | nhận ra |
| **21** | | To take pains | làm việc cẩn thận và tận tâm |
| **22** | | To drop sb a line/note | viết thư cho ai |
| **23** | | To turn over a new leaf | bắt đầu thay đổi hành vi của mình |
| **24** | | To weigh up the pros and cons | cân nhắc điều hay lẽ thiệt |
| **25** | | To burn the midnight oil = to stay up working, especially studying late at night | thức khuya làm việc, học bài |
| **26** | | To put sb/st at one's disposal | cho ai tuỳ ý sử dụng |
| **27** | | To bring down the house | làm cho cả khán phòng vỗ tay nhiệt liệt |
| **28** | | To beat about the bush | vòng vo tam quốc |
| **29** | | To find fault with | chỉ trích, kiếm chuyện, bắt lỗi |
| **30** | | To take it amiss = to understand as wrong or insulting, or misunderstand | hiểu lầm |
| **31** | | To break the news | thông báo |
| **32** | | To drop a brick | lỡ lời, lỡ miệng |
| **33** | | To take st for granted | coi là hiển nhiên |
| **34** | | To break the ice | Thành ngữ này thường dùng để diễn tả làm một việc gì đó để giúp mọi người thư giãn và thoải mái, đặc biệt khi mới gặp |
| **35** | | To blow one's own trumpet | khoe khoang, khoác lác |
| **36** | | To miss the boat | lỡ mất cơ hội |
| **37** | | To put one's card on the table | thẳng thắn |
| **38** | | To call it a day = stop working | nghỉ, giải lao |
| **39** | | To hear a pin drop | im lặng, tĩnh lặng |
| **40** | | To blow hot and cold | hay thay đổi ý kiến, dao động |
| **41** | | To call the shots | chỉ huy, quyết định về những việc cần làm |
| **42** | | To draws the line | đặt giới hạn cho việc gì; phân biệt giữa hai thứ tương tự nhau |
| **43** | | To foot the bill | thanh toán tiền |
| **44** | | To carry the can | chịu trách nhiệm, chịu sự chỉ trích |
| **45** | | To throw the baby out with the bathwater | vứt bỏ những thứ đáng giá cùng lúc với rũ bỏ với thứ gì không còn cần |
| **46** | | To go with the flow | làm theo mọi người |
| **47** | | To keep his shirt on | bình tĩnh |
| **48** | | To let off steam | xả hơi |
| **THÀNH NGỮ LÀ CỤM TÍNH TỪ/ TRẠNG** | | | |
| **STT** | | **Thành ngữ** | **Nghĩa** |
| **1** | | At the drop of a hat = immediately, instantly | ngay lập tức |
| **2** | | Off and on/ on and off | không đều đặn, thỉnh thoảng |
| **3** | | High and low = here and there = everywhere  = far and wide | đó đây, khắp mọi nơi |
| **4** | | Spick and span | ngăn nắp, gọn gàng |
| **5** | | On the spot = immediately | ngay lập tức |
| **6** | | At the eleventh hour | vào phút chót |
| **7** | | On the top of the world = walking on the air  = over the moon= like a dog with two tails = happy | vui sướng, hạnh phúc |
| **8** | | In vain | vô ích |
| **9** | | A piece of cake | dễ như ăn cháo |
| **10** | | Down the drain | công cốc, đổ ra sông ra biển |
| **11** | | Under the weather = off color | không được khoẻ |
| **12** | | The end of the world | đáng để bận tâm |
| **13** | | As fit as a fiddle | khoẻ như vâm |
| **14** | | On probation | trong thời gian quản chế, tập sự (công việc) |
| **15** | | Home and dry = with flying colors | thành công |
| **16** | | Apples and oranges = chalk and cheese | rất khác nhau, khác một trời một vực |
| **17** | | As long as your arm | rất dài |
| **18** | | As high as a kite | quá phấn khích, thường là do bị ảnh hưởng bởi đồ uống có cồn hoặc ma tuý |
| **19** | | In the same boat | ở trong cùng một hoàn cảnh |
| **20** | | Hot under the collar | điên tiết, cáu tiết |
| **21** | | As red as a beetroot | đỏ như củ cải đường/ngượng |
| **22** | | For good = permanently = forever | mãi mãi |
| **23** | | Now and then = once in a while = sometimes  = every so often = occasionally | thỉnh thoảng |
| **24** | | Full of beans | hăng hái, sôi nổi, đầy năng lượng |
| **25** | | At a loose end = free | rảnh rỗi |
| **26** | | A tall story = unbelievable | khó tin |
| **27** | | As cool as cucumber | bình tĩnh, không nao núng |
| **28** | | Peace and quiet | bình yên và tĩnh lặng |
| **29** | | Behind closed doors | kín, không công khai |
| **30** | | High and dry = in a difficult situation, without help or money | trong tình huống khó khăn |
| **31** | | Prim and proper = always behaving in a | kĩ lưỡng (quá mức), có chút bảo thủ |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions***

1. I wanted to ask her what she thought of her ex-husband, but I figured it was better to let sleeping……………. lie."

A. cat B. dog C. fish D. cow

1. "I have to run to the bathroom. Can you keep an eye ………….. my suitcase while I am gone?"

A. on B. at C. off D. in

1. "Her husband is awful; they fight all the time but I think it takes ………….. to tango."

A. one B. two C. three D. four

1. "I have decided that this summer I am going to learn how to scuba dive." -- "Me too! I have already paid for the course. Great minds …………….. alike!"

A. think B. hear C. listen D. tell

1. "When my girl friend and my brother got in a fight I had to help my brother because blood is ……..than water."

A. thinner B. thicker C. better D. more

1. I think the main problem in this area is the lack of a good bus service.

- You're right. You've hit the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ on the head.

A. nail B. wall C. lips D. hand

1. She is walking on the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. She doesn't know how to say.

A. air B. road C. street D. garden

1. When you do something, you should \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. pay through the nose B. turn over a new leaf

C. weigh up the pros and cons D. huddle into a pen

1. Someone who is inexperienced is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. red B. blue C. black D. green

1. The year-end party was **out of this world**. We had never tasted such delicious food.

A. enormous B. terrific C. strange D. awful

1. The nominating committee always meet **behind closed doors**, lest its deliberations become known prematurely.

A. privately B. safely C. publicly D. dangerously

1. She's so \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_; you really have to watch you say or she'll walk out of the room.

A. high and dry B. prim and proper C. rough and ready D. sick and tired

1. "Whenever that professor says something I don't like, I have to bite my …………………….."

A. tougue B. mouth C. lips D. eyes

1. "Sorry I was late for the meeting today; I got stuck in traffic." -- "That's okay; better late than …….."

A. never B. no C. not D. none

1. "If you want to ask me, just ask; don't beat ……………. the bush."

A. for B. around C. round D. towards

1. "Don't tell me how to do this; show me because Actions speak louder than ……..."

A. words B. speech C. work D. jobs

1. The time we spend apart has been good for us because absence makes the heart grow ……."

A. fonder B. founder C. louder D. sounder

1. At every faculty meeting, Ms. Volatie always manages to **put her foot in her mouth.**

A. move rapidly B. trip over her big feet

C. fall asleep D. say the wrong thing

1. If you are **at a loose end** this weekend, I will show you around the city.

A. free B. confident C. occupied D. reluctant

1. Thanks to her regular workouts and sensible diet she certainly strikes me as in the pink.

A. in absolute health B. in good health C. in clear health D. in extreme health

1. That the genetic differences make one race superior to another is nothing but **a tall story.**

A. cynical B. unbelievable C. untrue D. exaggeration

1. You should accept the Nokia mobile phone as a 16-birthday present from your parents delightedly. Don't \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. look gift horse in the mouth B. buy it through the nose

C. pull my leg D. take it for granted

1. "Do you think you will win your tennis match today?" - "It will be a piece of ………….."

A. cake B. sweet C. candy D. bitcuit

1. I'd like to do something to change the world but whatever I do seems like a drop in the……"

A. bucket B. garbage C. rubbish D. river

1. Jack has egg \_\_\_\_\_\_ because he couldn't remember how to spell "Batman"!

A. on his teeth B. on his face C. on his shirt D. on his fingers

1. Oh, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have said that. I guess I really put my \_\_\_\_\_ in my mouth.  
   A. foot B. hand C. elbow D. knee
2. Sharon always sticks her …………….into everyone else’s business.

A. head B. lips C. nose D. mouth

1. In Florida, the temperature drops below freezing only once in a ………. moon.

A. green B. purple C. blue D. middle

1. Brady’s surprise party is going to be great if you don’t let the …….out of the bag.

A. dog B. mouse C. bat D. cat

1. We don't go there often - just …….and on.

A. of B. off C. on D. over

1. He argued with her until he was ….. in the face.

A. black B. grey C. yellow D. blue

1. It was a ….-letter day when she finally received her graduation diploma.

A. black B. grey C. red D. white

1. My sister became …. as a ghost when she saw the man at the window.

A. black B. grey C. yellow D. white

1. She passed her exam with flying ….. and now wants to go out and celebrate.

A. colors B. colours C. bays D. objects

1. My sister was always the teacher's …. when she was in the first grade at school.

A. pets B. cats C. dogs D. doves

1. Jose had a hard time comparing the iPhone to the Samsung phone because to him they were **apples and oranges.**

A. containing too many technical details B. very similar

C. completely different D. very complicated

1. Peter is **the black sheep** of the family, so he is never welcomed there.

A. a beloved member B. a bad and embarrassing member

C. the only child D. the eldest child

1. There's a list of repairs as long as \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. your arm B. a pole C. your arms D. a mile

1. I tried to talk to her, but she was as high as a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. kite B. house C. sky D. wall

1. We're over the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_! Who wouldn't be? We've just won £1 million!

A. planet B. clouds C. stars D. moon

1. I've never really enjoyed going to the ballet or the opera; they're not really my \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. piece of cake B. sweets and candy C. biscuit D. cup of tea

1. You never really know where you are with her as she **just blows hot and cold**.

A. keeps going B. keeps taking things

C. keeps changing her mood D. keeps testing

1. "Edwards seems **like a dog with two tails** this morning." - "Haven't vou hear the news? His wife gave birth a baby boy early this morning."

A. extremely happy B. extremely disappointed

C. exhausted D. very proud

1. Thomas knows Paris like the back of his \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. He used to be a taxi driver there for 2 years.

A. head B. mind C. hand D. life

1. Josh may **get into hot water** when driving at full speed after drinking.

A. get into trouble B. stay safe C. fall into disuse D. remain calm

1. You have to **be on your toes** if you want to beat her.

A. pay all your attention to what you are doing

B. upset her in what she is doing

C. get involved in what she is doing

D. make her comply with your orders

1. By appearing on the soap powder commercials, she became a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ name.

A. housekeeper B. housewife C. household D. house

1. When his parents are away, his oldest brother \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. knocks it off B. calls the shots C. draws the line D. is in the same boat

1. Hearing about people who mistreat animals makes me go hot under the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. chin B. collar C. sleeves D. vest

1. **Shake a leg** or you will miss the train.

A. Hurry up B. Slow down C. Watch out D. Put down

1. I'm going on business for a week, so I'll be leaving everything \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. on your guards B. up to your eyes

C. in your capable hands D. under the care of you

1. My father **hit the roof** when he found that I'd damaged the car.

A. was over the moon B. burst with anger

C. went with the flow D. kept his shirt on

1. I refuse to believe a word of it; it's a cock-and- \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ story.

A. hen B. goose C. bull D. duck

1. William was as \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ as a cucumber when the harsh punishment was meted out to him by the judge.

A. cool B. cold C. placid D. impassive

1. I know you are upset about breaking up with Tom, but there are plenty more \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. horses in the stable B. cows in the shed

C. tigers in the jungle D. fish in the sea

1. I'll have to go to the funeral of Ms. Jane, a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ of mine.

A. heart to heart B. body and soul C. flesh and blood D. skin and bones

1. What I've got to say to you now is strictly \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ the record and most certainly not for publication, said the government official to the reporter.

A. off B. on C. in D. at

1. I can't give you the answer on the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_; I'll have to think about it for a few days.

A. place B. minute C. scene D. spot

1. Someone is going to have to take responsibility for this disaster. Who is going to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. foot the bill B. carry the can C. hatch the chicken D. catch the worms

1. I am sure your sister will lend you a sympathetic \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ when you explain the situation to her.

A. eye B. ear C. arm D. finger

**MODULE 26 : COMMUNICATION SKILLS**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**I. MẪU CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ NGƯỜI KHÁC GIÚP: (Making request)**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Đề nghị** | **Trả lời** | |
| **Đồng ý** | **Không đồng ý** |
| - V-inf…!  - V-inf…., please!  - Please + V-inf …!  - Can you + V-inf…?  - Could you + V-inf…?  - Would you please + V-inf…?  - Will you + V-inf…?  - I wonder if you’d/could + V-inf …? | - Certainly.  - Of course.  - Sure  - No problem.  - What can I do for you?  - How can I help you?  - By all means.  - Yes, with pleasure | - I’m sorry. I can’t. I’m busy. (I have something else to do.)  - I’m sorry. I don’t know how to do it. |
| **\*** Riêng với mẫu:  - Would/Do you mind + V-ing…? | - No, I don’t mind.  - No, of course not.  - Not at all. |

**II. MẪU CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ GIÚP NGƯỜI KHÁC: (Making offer)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Đề nghị** | **Trả lời** |
| - Can I help you?  - Shall I + V-inf…?  - What can I do for you?  - May I help you?  - Do you need any help?  - Let me help you | - Yes/No. Thank you  - That’s very kind of you.  - Don’t worry! I’ll do it.  - That would be great.  - Oh, would you really? Thanks a lot.  - Well, that’s very kind of you, but I think I can manage, thanks.  - No, thank you. I can manage. |

**III. MẪU CÂU XIN PHÉP NGƯỜI KHÁC: (Asking for permission)**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Xin phép** | | - May I + V-inf …?  - Can I + V-inf …?  - Would you mind if I + V (chia quá khứ đơn)?  - Do you mind if I + V (chia hiện tại đơn)?  - Excuse-me! May I + V-inf…?  - Do you think I could + V-inf…?  - I wonder if I could + V-inf…?  - Is it all right if I could/can + V-inf …? |
| **Trả lời** | **Đồng ý** | - Certainly.  - Of course.  - Please do.  - Please go ahead.  - Sure. |
| **Không đồng ý** | - I'd rather you didn't.  - I'd prefer you didn't.  - No, I'm afraid you can't.  - I'm sorry, but you can't. |

**IV. MẪU CÂU "RỦ"/GỢI Ý: (Making suggestion)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Câu "rủ"/gợi ý** | **Trả lời** |
| - Let's + V-inf …?  - Why don't we + V-inf …?  - Shall we + V-inf …?  - How about + V-ing…?  - What about + V-ing…?  - I think we should + V-inf…  - I suggest that we + V-inf…  - It might be a good idea if we + V-inf…  - I think the best way of dealing with this situation would  be + to V-inf…  - If you ask me, I think we should/could + V-inf… | - Yes, let's.  - No, let's not.  - That's a good idea.  - Yes, definitely.  - Sure, why not?  - By all means.  - That's probably the best option. |

**V. MẪU CÂU CẢM ƠN: (Saying thanks)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Câu cảm ơn** | **Trả lời** |
| - Thank you.  - Thank you very much.  - Thanks a lot.  - Thanks a lot for (N/V-ing).  - It's very kind of you. | - You're welcome.  - That's all right.  - Not at all.  - It's my pleasure.  - Don't mention it. |

**VI. MẪU CÂU XÁC ĐỊNH LẠI THÔNG TIN: (Confirming information)**

- Pardon (me)!

- Please say that again!

- Excuse-me! What did you say?

- Could you repeat that?

**VII. MẪU CÂU MỜI: (Making invitation)**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Câu mời** | | **Trả lời** |
| **Mời ăn uống** | - Would you like + món ăn/uống? | - Yes, please.  - No, thanks. |
| **Mời đi đâu/làm gì** | - Would you like + to V-inf…?  - Do you fancy + V-ing…?  - Do you feel like + V-ing…? | - Yes, I'd love to. (Thanks)  - That's very kind of you, thanks.  - That sounds lovely (interesting).  - That's a good idea. Thanks.  - That would be great. Thanks.  - I'm sorry. I'm afraid I can't.  - That's very kind of you, but… |

**VIII. MẪU CÂU CHÚC MỪNG: (Congratulating others)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Câu kể** | **Trả lời (câu chúc mừng)** |
| - I've passed the entrance exam.  - I've got a driving licence.  - …………………. | - You did a great job!  - Congratulations!  - Excellent!  - Well done! |

**IX. MẪU CÂU XIN LỖI:**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Câu xin lỗi** | **Trả lời** |
| - I'm very/extremely/awfully/terribly + sorry.  - Sorry. It's/was my fault.  - I do apologise.  - Please accept my apologies.  - I'm sorry for + N/V-ing | - That's all right, ok.  - Not too worried!  - No need to apologize.  - Don't worry about it!  - Never mind! |

**X. MẪU CÂU THỂ HIỆN LỜI KHEN: (Compliments)**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Câu thể hiện lời khen** | **Trả lời** |
| - You really have + positive adjective + Noun.  - I've never seen such a perfect thing on you.  - Your + noun + is/was + positive adjective + complement  - You are a/an + positive adjective + complement  - What (a/an) + positive adjective + Noun!  - How + positive adjective/adverb + subject + Verb! | - It's very kind of you to say so, thank you!  - Thank you. That's a nice compliment.  - Thanks. I think I've finally found (the color, the style, the way…) that + Verb…  - I'm glad you like it, thanks.  - You've got to be kidding./You must be kidding. I thought it was terrible, |

**XI. MẪU CÂU THỂ HIỆN Ý PHỤ HỌA: (Expressing the same idea)**

- Mệnh đề ở dạng khẳng định: "so + V-aux + subject".

"…, subject + V-aux, too".

- Mệnh đề ở dạnh phủ định: "neither + V-aux + subject".

"…, subject + V-aux + not, either".

**XII. CÁC MẪU CÂU HỎI THÔNG DỤNG:**

Đôi khi đề thi cũng đưa ra các câu hỏi này. Phần này được cung cấp nhằm giúp học sinh ôn lại các câu hỏi thường gặp.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Câu hỏi** | **Trả lời** |
| - What (gì) | Dùng các danh từ chỉ vật |
| - Who (ai) | Dùng các danh từ chỉ người |
| - What time (mấy giờ) | Dùng các danh từ chỉ giờ |
| - What…for? (để làm gì) | Dùng các cụm: **to V-inf, in order to, so as to, so that, in order that…** |
| - Where (ở đâu) | Dùng các trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn |
| - Why (tại sao) | Dùng các từ chỉ lý do **(because, as, due to…)** |
| - Which (chọn lựa trong tập hợp biết trước) | Dùng các từ chỉ đối tượng cần chọn |
| - When (khi nào) | Dùng các từ chỉ thời gian |
| - How (phương tiện di chuyển) | Dùng các từ chỉ phương tiện |
| - How (thế nào) | Dùng tính từ, trạng từ |
| - How often (tần suất, bao lâu 1 lần) | Dùng các trạng từ tần suất **(sometimes, never…),** số lần **(once, twice, times…)** |
| - How + tính từ: **mang nghĩa…như thế nào (how far, how fast, how tall, how old…)** | Xem tính từ sau "how" hỏi gì thì trả lời cái đó |
| - **How many** (bao nhiêu) (đi với danh từ đếm được, số nhiều)  - **How much** (bao nhiêu) (đi với danh từ không đếm được, số ít hoặc giá tiền) | Dùng các từ chỉ số lượng, giá tiền. |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the option that best completes each of the fol­lowing exchanges.***

1. Hung was invited to Hoa's party. He wants to thank her for the lovely party. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

**- Hung: "Thank you very much for a lovely party."**

**- Hoa: "……………………….…….".**

A. Thanks B. Have a good day

C. You are welcome D. Cheers

1. Mary has a special meal tonight. She has just made friend with Steven, so she wants to invite him to have dinner with her. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

**- Mary: “ Would you like to have dinner with me?”**

**- Steven: “ …………………………”**

A. Yes, it is. Isn’t it? B. Yes, I’d love to C. Yes, so do I D. I’ve had enough

1. John was in Hanoi and wanted to send a parcel to his parents. He asked a local passer-by the way to the post-office. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

**- John: “Can you show me the way to the nearest post office, please?”**

**- Passer-by: “…………………………….”**

A. Not way, sorry. B. Just round the corner over there.

C. Look it up in a dictionary! D. There’s no traffic near here.

1. Lora has just bought a new skirt that she likes very much. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

**-Jane: “You look great in that red skirt, Lora!”**

**-Lora: “ ………………………………”**

A. No, I don't think so. B. Oh, you don't like it, do you?

C. Thanks, I bought it at Macy’s. D. Thanks, my mum bought it.

1. Ken and Tom are high-school students. They are discussing where their study group will meet.

**Ken: “Where is our study group going to meet next weekend?” – Tom: “ ……………………...”**

A. Studying in a group is great fun. B. We are too busy on weekdays.

C. Why don’t you look at the atlas? D. The library would be best.

1. Sue and Mira are talking about the use of mobile phone in class.

**Sue: “Students should not be allowed to use mobile phone in class.”**

**Mira: “ ………………………. This will distract them from studying.”**

A. Not really B. No way! It’s useful

C. I’m of the opposite opinion D. I quite agree

1. Jenny and Jimmy are talking about university education.

**- Jenny: “I think having a university degree is the only way to succeed in life.”**

**- Jimmy: “ ………………….. There were successful people without a degree.”**

A. That’s all right. B. I don’t quite agree.

C. I can’t agree more. D. That’s life.

1. Silas is talking to his roommate, Salah, about the Olympic Games.

**- Silas: “Do you think our country can host the Olympic Games some day in the future?”**

**- Salah: “……………………….. We can’t afford such a big event.”**

A. No, I don’t think so. B. You can say that again.

C. I can’t agree with your more. D. Yes, you’re right.

1. Lien was walking her dogs in the park, she met Lan accidentally.

**- Lan: “How lovely your pets are!”**

**- Lien: “ ……………………………….”**

A. Thank you, it's nice of you to say so B. Really? They are

C. Can you say that again D. I love them, too

1. Thorny enters the meeting room and sees a lot of men. He is asking one of the men near the door.

**- Thorny: “Excuse me. I don’t want to interrupt you but...”**

**- The man: “…………………….………”**

A. What can I do for you? B. Certainly. How dare you!

C. I quite agree D. I have no idea

1. Husha and Honish are talking about Trishie after watching her music performance.

**- Husha: “Trishie’s the best singer in our school.”**

**- Honish: “………………………….”**

A. Yes, please. B. I couldn’t agree with you more.

C. That’s OK! D. Yes, tell me about it.

1. Luca is at Noi Bai Airport. She wants to exchange some money, she is talking to Paula - a clerk at a currency exchange kiosk.

**- Luca: “I'd like to change some money.” Paula: “ ………………………………”**

A. Five tens, please B. Which currency?

C. You haven't signed it. D. What's your account number?

1. Yuki and Hana are having a free afternoon. Yuki is inviting Hana to see a new movie with him.

**- Yuki: "Do you feel like going to the cinema this afternoon?"**

**- Hana: “ ……………………………...”**

A. I don't agree. I'm afraid B. I feel very bored

C. You're welcome D. That would be great

1. David is talking to Lucy about her painting.

**- David: “What a beautiful painting!”**

**- Lucy: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. No problem B. It’s on the wall

C. I’m glad you like it D. You’re welcome.

1. Peter and Dane are talking about environmental protection.

**- Peter: “We should limit the use of plastic bags.”**

**- Dane: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. We can use paper bags instead.”**

A. I completely agree. B. It’s not true.

C. I don’t quite agree D. You’re wrong.

1. David is apologising to his teacher for being late.

**- David: “Sorry I’m late! The traffic is so heavy.”**

**- Teacher: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. Come in and sit down.”**

A. You’re so kind B. It’s alright C. Me neither D. Thank you

1. Peter and Mary are talking about social networks.

**- Peter: “Using social networks may have negative effects on students.”**

**- Mary: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. It distracts them from their studies.”**

A. I’m not sure about that B. I don’t quite agree

C. You’re wrong D. That’s quite true

1. Linda and Peter are talking about safe driving.

**- Linda: “I think drink-driving should be severely punished.”**

**- Peter: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. It may cause accidents or even deaths.”**

A. You must be kidding B. I don’t think so

C. I don’t understand what you mean D. I absolutely agree with you

1. A porter is talking to Mary in the hotel lobby.

**- Porter: “May I help you with your suitcase?”**

**- Mary: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. What a shame B. Me too C. You’re welcome D. Yes, please

1. John is having dinner at Linda’s house.

**- John: “This roast beef is so delicious.”**

**- Linda:”\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. sure. I’d love to B. I’m glad you like it.

C. No, don’t worry. D. I don’t either.

1. Joana and David, two lectures, are talking about library skills.

**- Joana: “I think we should teach our students how to use the library.”**

**- David:”\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_**

A. You’re absolutely wrong B. You must be kidding

C. I couldn’t agree with you more D. That’s not a good idea

1. A shop assistant is talking to a customer.

**- Shop assistant: “Do you need anything else?”**

**- Customer:”\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. That’s all. Thanks B. Good job! C. With pleasure D. You’re welcome

1. Ann and Peter are talking about housework.

**- Ann: “ I think children should be paid for doing the housework.”**

**- Peter: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. It’s their duty in the family.”**

A. That’s what I think B. You’re exactly right

C. There’s no doubt about it D. I don’t think so

1. Ken and Tom are high-school students. They are discussing where their study group will meet.

**- Ken: “Where is our study group going to meet next weekend?”**

**- Tom: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.”**

A. Studying in a group is great fun. B. We are too busy on weekdays.

C. Why don’t you look at the atlas? D. The library would be best.

1. Mike and Lane are university students. They are talking about Lane’s upcoming high-school reunion.

**- Mike: “So, you have your fifth high-school reunion coming up?”**

**- Lane: “…………………….”**

A. Oh, the school reunion was wonderful. B. No. You’re in no mood for the event.

C. The food at the reunion was excellent. D. Yeah. I’m really looking forward to it.

1. A waiter in a restaurant is talking to a customer who has just finished his meal there.

**- Waiter: “Here’s your bill, sir.”**

**- Customer: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. Don’t mention it. B. Can I pay by credit card?

C. What do you have? D. You’re welcome.

1. Two close friends Tom and Kyle are talking about Kyle’s upcoming birthday.

**- Tom: “Can I bring a friend to your birthday party?”**

**- Kyle: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. It’s my honour. B. Let’s do it then.

C. The more the merrier. D. That’s right.

1. Two friends Diana and Anne are talking about Anne’s new blouse.

**- Diana: “That blouse suits you perfectly, Anne.”**

**- Anne: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_’’.**

A. Never mind. B. Don’t mention it.

C. Thank you. D. You’re welcome.

1. Mary is talking to a porter in the hotel lobby.

**- Porter: “Shall I help you with your suitcase?”**

**- Mary: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. Not a chance. B. That’s very kind of you.

C. I can’t agree more. D. What a pity!

1. Susan accidentally stepped on Denise’s foot.

**- Susan: “Oops! I’m sorry, Denise.”**

**- Denise: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. You shouldn’t do that. B. It’s alright.

C. You are welcome. D. It’s nonsense.

1. Hana and Jenifer are talking about a book they have just read.

**- Hana: “The book is really interesting and educational.”**

**- Jenifer: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. I’d love it. B. That’s nice of you to say so.

C. I couldn’t agree more. D. Don’t mention it.

1. Jolie and Tom are meeting at the supermarket.

**- Jolie: “Hi, Tom. How are you doing?”**

**- Tom: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. How about you?”**

A. I’m waiting for my sister B. I’m shopping for food

C. I’m doing nothing D. I’m doing well

1. Maria and Alex are talking about the environment.

**- Maria: “Our environment is getting more and more polluted. Do you think so?”**

**- Alex: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. It’s really worrying.”**

A. I’ll think about that B. I don’t agree

C. I don’t think so D. I can’t agree more

1. Liz is telling Andrew about her first novel.

**- Liz: “Guess what? My first novel has just been published.”**

**- Andrew: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. It’s my pleasure. B. Congratulations!

C. Better luck next time! D. It’s very kind of you.

1. Jenny and her teacher are meeting at the bus stop.

**- Jenny: “Good afternoon, Miss. How are you?”**

**- Teacher: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. And you?”**

A. I’m going home B. I’m leaving now

C. I’m thirty years old D. Fine, thank you

1. Linda is thanking Daniel for his birthday present.

**- Linda: “Thanks for the book. I’ve been looking for it for months.”**

**- Daniel: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. You can say that again B. Thank you for looking for it

C. I like reading books D. I’m glad you like it

1. David and his teacher are meeting at the school gate.

**- David: “Good morning, Mr Deakin. How are you?”**

**- Mr Deakin:”\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. And you?”**

A. I’m busy now B. I’m fine. Thank you

C. I’m going home D. I’m having a class now

1. Mrs Smith and her students are visiting the zoo.

**- Mike: “Can I feed the gorilla, Mrs Smith?”**

**- Mrs Smith: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. The sign says ‘No feeding the animals’.”**

A. Of course you can B. I don’t think it works

C. I’m sure about that D. I’m afraid not

1. Andrew is talking to a waiter in a restaurant.

**- Andrew: “Can I have the bill, please?”**

**- Waiter: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. You are very kind B. Just a minute, please

C. My pleasure D. You’re exactly right

1. Silas is talking to his roommate, Salah, about the Olympic Games.

**- Silas: “Do you think our country can host the Olympic Games some day in the future?**

**- Salah:”\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. We can’t afford such a big event.”**

A. You can say that again B. I can’t agree with you more

C. Yes, you’re right D. No, I don’t think so

1. Laura is telling Bob about her exam results.

**- Laura: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

**- Bob: “That’s great. Congratulations!”**

A. I hope I’ll pass the exam tomorrow. B. I’ve passed the exam with an A.

C. I’ll get the exam results tomorrow. D. I didn’t do well in the exam.

1. Nancy and James are talking about their school days.

**- Nancy: “I think school days are the best time of our lives.”**

**- James: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. We had sweet memories together then.”**

A. I’m afraid so B. Absolutely.

C. That’s nonsense D. I doubt it

1. John and Mike are talking about Mike’s new car.

**- John: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

**- Mike: “Thanks. I’m glad to hear that.”**

A. Where did you buy your car? B. What a nice car!

C. Your car is new, isn’t it? D. My car is very expensive.

1. Two students are talking about the school curriculum.

**- Ted: “Swimming should be made part of the school curriculum.”**

**- Kate: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. It is an essential life skill.”**

A. Oh, that’s a problem. B. I can’t agree with you more.

C. Not at all D. You can make it.

1. Jane is talking to Mike, who has just helped her with her luggage.

**- Jane: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

**- Mike: “It’s my pleasure.**

A. It’s too heavy. B. It’s not my duty.

C. Thanks a lot, indeed. D. Welcome back.

1. Adam and Janet are at the school canteen.

**- Adam: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

**- Janet: “Yes, please.”**

A. Do you mind if I sit here? B. Can you pass me the salt, please?

C. It’s a bit hot in here, isn’t it? D. Would you like a cup of coffee?

1. Jenny and Jimmy are talking about university education.

**- Jenny: “I think having a university degree is the only way to succeed in life.”**

**- Jimmy: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. There are successful people without a degree.”**

A. That’s life B. That’s all right

C. I don’t quite agree D. I can’t agree more

1. John was in Hanoi and wanted to send a parcel to his parents. He asked a local passer- by the way to the post-office.

**- John: “Can you show me the way to the nearest post office, please?”**

**- Passer-by: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. Not way, sorry. B. Just round the corner over there.

C. Look it up in a dictionary! D. There’s no traffic near here.

1. Lora has just bought a new skirt that she likes very much.

**- Jane: “You look great in that red skirt, Lora!”**

**- Lora: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. No, I don’t think so. B. Oh, you don’t like it, do you?

C. Thanks, I bought it at Macy’s. D. Thanks, my mum bought it.

1. John and Mary are talking about what to do after class.

**- John: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_- Mary: “Yes, I’d love to.”**

A. Do you often have time for a drink after class?

B. Would you like to have a drink after class?

C. Do you often go out for a drink after class?

D. Would you like tea or coffee after class?

1. Paul and Daisy are discussing life in the future.

**- Paul: “I believe space travel will become more affordable for many people in the future.”**

**- Daisy: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .”**

A. It doesn’t matter at all. B. There’s no doubt about that.

C. It is very kind of you to say so. D. I am sorry to hear that.

1. Jack is inviting Mary to his party.

**- Jack: “Would you like to come to my party this weekend?”**

**- Mary: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.”**

A. Yes, I’d love to B. No, don’t worry

C. You’re welcome D. I’m afraid so Question

1. Laura and Mitchell are talking about their school curriculum. Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425)

**- Laura: “I think Art should be a compulsory subject.”**

**- Mitchell: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. Art helps develop creativity.”**

A. I quite agree B. You must be kidding

C. I’m of the opposite opinion D. I don’t think that’s a good idea

1. Mai and Lan are friends.Lan asks Mai about Mai's plan. Select the most suitable response to fill in the blank.

**- Lan: “Are you going to see the live show by Son Tung today?”**

**- Mai: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”.**

A. Yes, I enjoyed it very much B. Maybe I'll be out

C. Yes, I'm going to stay in D. I think so

1. Mary invited her friend, Sarah, to have dinner out that night and Sarah accepted. Choose the most suitable response to fill in the blank in the following exchange.

**- Mary: “Shall we eat out tonight?” - Sarah: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.”**

A. It's kind of you to invite B. You are very welcome

C. That's a great idea D. That's acceptable

1. Two friends meet on the first day at school. Complete the conversation.

**- A: "Hey John. I didn't know you were coming to this school."**

**- B: “\_\_\_\_. It's good to see you."**

A. Oh, nice to meet you B. Yeah, what a coincidence

C. That's life D. Every now and then

1. Joanna is inviting Sally to go out with her.

**- Joanna: "Well, would you like to come out for dinner? Let's go somewhere this evening."**

**- Sally: “\_\_\_\_”**

A. Really? I'd love to. B. How do you feel about it?

C. Shall we go out tonight? D. I love going out.

1. Tom is in Ho Chi Minh city and asks a passer-by the way to the railway station.

**- Tom: “Can you show me the way to the railway station, please?”**

**- Passer-by: “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. No way. B. Just round the comer over there.

C. Look it up in a dictionary! D. There’s no traffic near here.

1. Two students are discussing their previous English class.

**- Student 1. “I think the teacher should give us more exercises.”**

**- Student 2. “\_\_\_\_\_\_\_”**

A. Yes, let’s B. Ok

C. That’s rubbish D. That’s what I was thinking

1. Mr Collin is talking to Brian.

**-Mr. Collin: “You’ve been making very good progress. I’m proud of you!” - Brian: “…………”**

A. No problem. B. Don’t worry about it!

C. Everything’s alright. Thank you. D. I really appreciate you saying that.

**MODULE 27 : CLOSEST/OPPOSITE MEANING**

**CLOSEST MEANING**

***Exercises 1 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

**Question 1.**The **maintenance** of these old castles must cost a lot of money.

**A.** building **B.** foundation **C.** destruction **D.** preservation

**Question 2.** People in the mountainous areas are still in the habit of destroying forests for **cultivation**.

**A.** planting **B.** farming **C.** industry **D.** wood

**Question 3.** Paris is the ideal place to learn French; it’s a beautiful and **hospitable** city with Institutions for high quality linguistic teaching.

**A.** noticeable **B.** friendly **C.** affectionate **D.** natural

**Question 4.** American children **customarily** go trick-or-treating on Halloween.

**A.** inevitably **B.** happily **C.** traditionally **D.** readily

**Question 5. At times**, I look at him and wonder what is going on his mind.

**A.** Never **B.** Always **C.** Hardly **D.** Sometimes

**Question 6.**We should **join hands** to protect our environment.

**A.** take up **B.** put up **C.** work together **D.** make decisions

**Question 7.** The fact that space exploration has increased **dramatically** in the past thirty years indicates thatwe are very eager to learn all we can about our solar system.

**A.**  seriously **B.** gradually **C.** significantly **D.** doubtfully

**Question 8.** Everyone is hoping and praying that **lasting** peace will eventually come to the area.

**A.**  durable **B.** ongoing **C.** temporary **D.** enduring

**Question 9.** Before you begin the exam paper, always read the **instructions** carefully.

**A.**  orders **B.** answers **C.** rules **D.** direction

**Question 10.** A series of programs have been broadcast to raise **public** awareness of healthy living.

**A.** people’s **B.** teenagers’ **C.** adolescents’ **D.** residents’

**Question 11.** It was really difficult to **decide** between the two candidates.

**A.** steal **B.** think **C.** attempt **D.** choose

**Question 12.** We hope to become more **accurate** in predicting earthquakes.

**A.** dangerous **B.** delicious **C.** nervous **D.** exact

**Question 13.** You may **note down** your qualifications and experience that can relate to the job.

**A.** put down **B.** hold down **C.** draw down **D.** jot down

**Question 14.** It was **relatively** easy for him to learn baseball because he had been a cricket player.

**A.** nearly **B.** essentially **C.** comparatively **D.** approximately

**Question 15.** The factory is fined for **discharging** dangerous chemicals into the river.

**A.** releasing **B.** increasing **C.** decreasing **D.** keeping

**Question 16.** After several days underground after the earthquake one child was pulled out **alive**.

**A.** still talking **B.** still seeing **C.** still living **D.** still trying

**Question 17.** The washing machine I have just bought is very **simple** to use.

**A.** boring **B.** interesting **C.** easy **D.** difficult

**Question 18.** No vehicle weighing over 3.5 tons is allowed on this bridge, according to traffic signs placedat both ends of the **structure**

**A.** corruption **B.** construction **C.** connection **D.** confusion

**Question 19.** The use of lasers in surgery has become **relatively** commonplace in recent years.

**A.** comparatively **B.** absolutely **C.** relevantly **D.** almost

**Question 20.** The dog saw his **reflection** in the pool of water.

**A.** imagination **B.** bone **C.** leash **D.** image

**Question 21.** The repeated **commercials** on TV distract many viewers from watching their favorite films.

**A.** economics **B.** businesses **C.** contests **D.** advertisements

**Question 22.** My parent’ warnings didn’t **deter** me from choosing the job of my dreams.

**A.** influence **B.** discourage **C.** reassure **D.** inspire

**Question 23.** Students are expected to always **adhere to** school regulations.

**A.** question **B.** violate **C.** disregard **D.** follow

**Question 24.** I didn't go to work this morning. I stayed at home **due to** the morning rain.

**A.** thanks to **B.** on account of **C.** in spite of **D.** in addition to

**Question 25.** Pitchforks were **once** carved entirely from wood, but today the have steel tines and wooden handle.

**A.** in the meantime **B.** in one area **C.** formerly **D.** sometimes

**Question 26.** Local charity organization **benefited** the fire victims.

**A.** donated **B.** claimed **C.** prevented **D.** protested

**Question 27.** If desired, **garnish** your plate with parsley, bell pepper rings or other vegetables

**A.** decorate **B.** replace **C.** associate **D.** provide

**Question 28.** When you are at restaurant, you can raise your hand slightly to show that you need **assistance.**

**A.** bill **B.** food **C.** menu **D.** help

**Question 29.** Since the death of Laura's father, her mother has become **a breadwinner** to support thefamily.

**A.** a person who bakes bread every morning

**B.** a person who goes out to work to earn money

**C.** a bakery-owner

**D.** a person who delivers bread to make money

**Question 30.** We do not whistle or clap our hands to get the person’s attention. That is considered

**impolite** and even rule.

**A.** offensive **B.** polite **C.** informal **D.** terrific

**Question 31.** Could you **take care of** our children while I go away?

**A.** look like **B.** look after **C.** look for **D.** look at

**Question 32. Domestic** chores will no longer be a burden thanks to the inventions of laborsaving devices.

**A.** Official **B.** Household **C.** Foreign **D.** Schooling

**Question 33.** As a government official, Benjamin Franklin often traveled **abroad.**

**A.** overseas **B.** alone **C.** widely **D.** secretly

**Question 34.** It is **required** for all students to take the entrance examination in oder to attend the university.

**A.** useful **B.** compulsory **C.** optional **D.** important

**Question 35.** The air has become more and more **polluted** because of exhaust fumes from vehicles.

**A.** wasted **B.** contaminated **C.** conserved **D.** preserved

**Question 36.** Billy, come and **give me a hand** with cooking.

**A.** help **B.** prepare **C.** be busy **D.** attempt

**Question 37.** We are very **anxious** about the result of the exam.

**A.** careful **B.** worried **C.** excited **D.** indifferent

**Question 38.** Computers and telecommunication are bound to have a huge influence on **various** aspects ofour life.

**A.** equivalent **B.** diverse **C.** like **D.** similar

**Question 39.** Physically **inactive** people are at risk of developing heart disease.

**A.** dynamic **B.** active **C.** lively **D.** passive

**Question 40.** We can use either **verbal** or non – verbal forms of communication.

**A.** using gesture **B.** using speech **C.** using verbs **D.** using facial expressions

**Question 41.** Environmentalists appeal to the government to enact laws to stop factories from **discharging** toxic chemicals into the sea.

**A.** take over **B.** take care of **C.** take part in **D.** take place

**Question 43.** He’s really **delighted** with his success.

**A.** pleased **B.** angry **C.** entertained **D.** annoyed

**Question 44.** Try to **eliminate** fatty foods from your diet.

**A.** limit **B.** move **C.** add **D.** get rid of

**Question 45.** The student service centre will try their best to **assist** students in finding a suitable part-timejob.

**A.** make **B.** provide **C.** allow **D.** help

**Question 46.** GCSE are not **compulsory**, but they are the most common qualifications taken by students.

**A.** required **B.** applied **C.** fulfilled **D.** specialized

**Question 47.** I received housing benefit when I was **unemployed**.

**A.** out of order **B.** out of fashion **C.** out of work **D.**  out of practice

**Question 48.** The space shuttle covered **vast** distances. out of practice

**A.** very **B.** varying **C.** huge **D.** hard

**Question 49.** I didn’t think his the comments were very **appropriate** at the time.

**A.** correct **B.** right **C.** exact **D.** suitable

**Question 50.** When you see your teacher **approaching** you, a slight wave to attract his attention isappropriate.

**A.** coming nearer to **B.** catching sight of **C.** pointing at **D.** looking up to

**ĐÁP ÁN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Question 1 | **D** | Question 11 | **D** | Question 21 | **D** | Question 31 | **B** | Question 41 | **A** |
| Question 2 | **B** | Question 12 | **B** | Question 22 | **B** | Question 32 | **B** | Question 42 | **B** |
| Question 3 | **B** | Question 13 | **D** | Question 23 | **D** | Question 33 | **A** | Question 43 | **A** |
| Question 4 | **C** | Question 14 | **C** | Question 24 | **B** | Question 34 | **B** | Question 44 | **D** |
| Question 5 | **D** | Question 15 | **A** | Question 25 | **C** | Question 35 | **B** | Question 45 | **D** |
| Question 6 | **C** | Question 16 | **C** | Question 26 | **A** | Question 36 | **A** | Question 46 | **A** |
| Question 7 | **C** | Question 17 | **C** | Question 27 | **A** | Question 37 | **B** | Question 47 | **C** |
| Question 8 | **D** | Question 18 | **B** | Question 28 | **D** | Question 38 | **B** | Question 48 | **C** |
| Question 9 | **D** | Question 19 | **A** | Question 29 | **B** | Question 39 | **D** | Question 49 | **D** |
| Question 10 | **A** | Question 20 | **D** | Question 30 | **A** | Question 40 | **B** | Question 50 | **A** |

***Exercises 2 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

**Question 1.** The children were **full of beans** today, looking forward to their field trip.

**A.** eating a lot **B.** hyperactive **C.** melancholy **D.** lively and in high spirits

**Question 2.** When the protestor entered the meeting clad only in a beach tower, the audience was

**dumbfounded.**

**A.** speechless **B.** excited **C.** content **D.** applauding

**Question 3.** She is always **diplomatic** when she deals with angry students.

**A.** strict **B.** outspoken **C.** tactful **D.** firm

**Question 4.** We had to list the **chronology** of events in World War II on our test.

**A.** time sequence **B.** discrepancy **C.** catastrophe **D.** disaster

**Question 5.** The team wasn’t playing well, so the coach **took the bull by the horns** and sacked several

senior players.

**A.** made the right decision **B.** made the wrong decision

**C.** made a bold decision **D.** made a final decision

**Question 6.** It is such a prestigious university that only excellent students **are entitled to** a full scholarship each year.

**A.** have the right to refuse **B.** are given the right to

**C.** are refused the right to **D.** have the obligation to

**Question 7.** The way the care-taker treated those little children was **deplorable**. She must be punished forwhat she did.

**A.** respectable **B.** unacceptable **C.** mischievous **D.** satisfactory

**Question 8.** Talking about your feeling can help you **get clear** about what you feel.

**A.** control **B.** banish **C.** get rid of **D.** figure out

**Question 9.** The government has launched a new road safety campaign **in an attempt** to reduce the numberof road accidents.

**A.** to try to **B.** to aim to **C.** to intend to **D.** to plan to

**Question 10.** A number of programs have been initiated to provide food and shelter for the **underprivileged** in the remote areas of the country.

**A.** rich citizens **B.** active members **C.** poor inhabitants **D.** enthusiastic people

**Question 11.** I can't believe what a **narrow escape** it was when the car went off the road and passed within a few feet of us.

**A.** lost cause **B.** first-rate **C.** close call **D.** takeaway

**Question 12.** Because she was a few minutes late, she **walked quietly** into class and sat in the back of theroom.

**A.** rambled **B.** tiptoed **C.** stumbled **D.** crawled

**Question 13.** TV commercials that sell household products have often been accused of **reinforcing** stereotypes of societal roles.

**A.** strengthening **B.** modifying **C.** contrasting **D.** exposing

**Question 14.** Her style of dress **accentuated** her extreme slenderness.

**A.** betrayed **B.** emphasized **C.** revealed **D.** disfigured

**Question 15.** He was **attentive** as Betsy and I talked about our charity concert to help the victims of therecent floods.

**A.** perceptive **B.** indifferent **C.** interested **D.** negligent

**Question 16.** My father **hit the roof** when he found out that I’d damaged the car.

**A.** was over the moon **B.** burst with anger

**C.** went with the flow **D.** kept his shirt on

**Question 17.** Many organizations have been **involved in** drawing up the report on environmentalcampaigns.

**A.** concerned about **B.** confined in **C.** enquired about **D.** engaged in

**Question 18.** His girlfriend’s behavior at the party was **unacceptable**, which made everyone there shocked.

**A.** out of practice **B.** out of line **C.** out of the habit **D.** out of sight

**Question 19.** Please stop making that noise! It really **gets on my nerves.**

**A.** cheers me up **B.** wakes me up **C.** amuses me **D.** annoys me

**Question 20.** Denise has been **burning the midnight oil** trying to finish this report, so I reckon she isexhausted now.

**A.** making every attempt possible **B.** exercising regularly to keep fit

**C.** staying up working late at night **D.** having lots of food late at night

**Question 21.** The guards were ordered to get to the king’s room **on the double**.

**A.** in a large number **B.** very quickly **C.** on the second floor **D.** every two hours

**Question 22.** S. Mayo Hospital in New Orleans was so named in recognition of Dr. Mayo’s **outstanding** humanitarianism.

**A.** remarkable **B.** charitable **C.** widespread **D.** popular

**Question 23.** It was **inevitable** that the smaller company should merge with the larger.

**A.** urgent **B.** unavoidable **C.** necessary **D.** important

**Question 24.** A living cell is a **marvel** of detailed and complex structure.

**A.** magnification **B.** invention **C.** swiftness **D.** wonder

**Question 25.** A **striking** example of a successful multiethnic country is Switzerland, where French,German, and Italian speakers from diverse religious groups live and work harmony and prosperity.

**A.** remarkable **B.** legitimate **C.** spontaneous **D.** characteristic

**Question 26.** I’m afraid I’m getting **cold feet about** this scheme as I’m not sure it’s such a goodidea.

**A.** happy about **B.** worried about **C.** calm about **D.** confident of

**Question 27.** Tet marks the beginning of spring and, for **agrarian people** who depend on the lunar calendar to manage their crops, the start of the year.

**A.** traditional ones **B.** minority people **C.** farmers **D.** old people

**Question 28.** The government decided to **pull down** the old building adter asking for the ideas from thelocal resident.

**A.** renovate **B.** purchase **C.** maintain **D.** demolish

**Question 29.** He has sold his house and has no job and so now **he has next to nothing**.

**A.** he has nothing at all **B.** he is unemployed

**C.** he has almost no money **D.** he has a few things

**Question 30.** Don't **play down** John’s contribution to the research.

**A.** pretend **B.** go along with **C.** undervalue **D.** cooperate

**Question 31.** With so many daily design resources, how do you **stay-up-date** with technology withoutspending too much time on it?

**A.** connect to the Internet all day **B.** update new status

**C.** use social network daily **D.** get latest information

**Question 32.** Peter is **the black sheep** of the family, so he is never welcomed there.

**A.** a beloved member **B.** a bad and embarrassing member

**C.** the only child **D.** the eldest child

**Question 33.** Few businesses are **flourishing** in the present economic climate.

**A.** taking off **B.** setting up **C.** growing well **D.** closing down

**Question 34.** My cousin tends to **look on the bright side** in any circumstance.

**A.** be confident **B.** be optimistic **C.** be pessimistic **D.** be smart

**Question 35.** Let’s **put off** that meeting to next Monday.

**A.** start **B.** postpone **C.** arrange **D.** decide

**Question 36.** I could see the finish line and thought I was **home and dry**.

**A.** unsuccessful **B.** hopeful **C.** successful **D.** hopeless

**Question 37.** Pollution will increase to **catastrophic** levels unless we develop cleaner power sources.

**A.** low **B.** disastrous **C.** advanced **D.** elementary

**Question 38.** The sale of drug is **controlled by law** in most countries.

**A.** restricted **B.** permitted **C.** illegal **D.** binding

**Question 39.** English language **proficiency** requirements for undergraduate courses are considerablydemanding.

**A.** fitness **B.** competence **C.** understanding **D.** applicability

**Question 40. Mobile** libraries brings books to children in many small communities. These libraries travel

from towns to towns in cars, vans, or trucks.

**A.** Moving from place to place **B.** Changing shape or expression easily and frequently

**C.** Being bent easily and quickly **D.** Staying in one place

**Question 41.** To prepare for a job interview, you should jot down your **qualifications**, work experience as well as some important information about yourself.

**A.** what you have experienced **C.** your own qualities in real life

**B.** your bio data and special qualities **D.** what you have earned through study

**Question 42.** Lack of water and nutrients has **impeded** the growth of these cherry tomato plants

**A.** promoted **B.** assisted **C.** realized **D.** prevented

**Question 43.** “It’s no use talking to me about metaphysics. It’s **a closed book to me**.”

**A.** a subject that I don’t understand **B.** a theme that I like to discuss

**C.** a book that is never opened **D.** an object that I really love

**Question 44.** I strongly recommend that you should take out an insurance policy in the house **for your own peace of mind.**

**A.** to stop you sleeping **B.** to stop you worrying

**C.** to stop you thinking **D.** to stop you believing

**Question 45.** Every year this charity organization **takes on** volunteers to support the needy and the poor.

**A.** dismisses **B.** creates **C.** recruits **D.** interviews

**Question 46.** His **involuntary** reflexes betrayed his feelings.

**A.** automatic **B.** unbelievable **C.** unnecessary **D.** unreasonable

**Question 47.** The recent medical **breakthrough** was the culmination of many long years ofexperimentation.

**A.** result **B.** climax **C.** abyss **D.** cultivation

**Question 48.** The editor, preferring a more **terse** writing style, cut 500 words from the 2000-word article.

**A.** elegant **B.** factual **C.** descriptive **D.** concise

**Question 49.** My aunt’s new book **is published** next year.

**A.** comes on **B.** comes in **C.** comes out **D.** comes up

**Question 50.** His new yacht is certainly an **ostentatious** display of his wealth.

**A.** showy **B.** expensive **C.** large **D.** ossified

**ĐÁP ÁN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Question 1 | **D** | Question 11 | **C** | Question 21 | **B** | Question 31 | **D** | Question 41 | **D** |
| Question 2 | **A** | Question 12 | **B** | Question 22 | **A** | Question 32 | **B** | Question 42 | **D** |
| Question 3 | **C** | Question 13 | **A** | Question 23 | **B** | Question 33 | **C** | Question 43 | **A** |
| Question 4 | **A** | Question 14 | **B** | Question 24 | **D** | Question 34 | **B** | Question 44 | **B** |
| Question 5 | **C** | Question 15 | **C** | Question 25 | **A** | Question 35 | **B** | Question 45 | **C** |
| Question 6 | **B** | Question 16 | **B** | Question 26 | **B** | Question 36 | **C** | Question 46 | **A** |
| Question 7 | **B** | Question 17 | **D** | Question 27 | **C** | Question 37 | **B** | Question 47 | **B** |
| Question 8 | **D** | Question 18 | **B** | Question 28 | **D** | Question 38 | **A** | Question 48 | **D** |
| Question 9 | **A** | Question 19 | **D** | Question 29 | **C** | Question 39 | **B** | Question 49 | **C** |
| Question 10 | **C** | Question 20 | **C** | Question 30 | **C** | Question 40 | **A** | Question 50 | **A** |

**OPPOSITE MEANING**

***Exercises 1 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

**Question 1.** School uniform is **compulsory** in most of Vietnamese school.

**A.** depended **B.** optional **C.** obligatory **D.** required

**Question 2.** Names of people in the book were changed to **preserve** anonymity.

**A.** cover **B.** conserve **C.** presume **D.** reveal

**Question 3.** A large city such as Chicago would be called an **urban** area.

**A.** metropolitan **B.** rustic **C.** suburban **D.** sophisticated

**Question 4.** We arrived home safe and **sound**.

**A.** healthy **B.** unsound **C.** insound **D.** dissound.

**Question 5.** He **revealed** his intentions of leaving the company to the manager during the office dinnerparty.

**A.** disclosed **B.** concealed **C.** misled **D.** influenced

**Question 6.** Slang can be defined as a set of lexical, grammatical, and phonological regularities used in **informal** speech.

**A.** informative **B.** official **C.** situational **D.** casual

**Question 7. Adverse** weather conditions made it difficult to play the game.

**A.** favorable **B.** bad **C.** comfortable **D.** severe

**Question 8.** The Red Cross is an international humanitarian agency dedicated to reducing the **sufferings** ofwounded soldiers, civilians and prisoners of war.

**A.** happiness **B.** loss **C.** sadness **D.** pain and sorrow

**Question 9.** They are launching a campaign to **promote** awareness of environmental issues.

**A.** encourage **B.** publicize **C.** hinder **D.** strengthen

**Question 10.** We have to **employ** extra staff to deal with the increased workload.

**A.** approach **B.** dismiss **C.** interview **D.** meet

**Question 11.** The only means of **access** to the station is through a dark subway.

**A.** arrival **B.** admission **C.** outlet **D.** output

**Question 12. Heavy** rain makes driving on the road very difficult.

**A.** light **B.** torrential **C.** storm **D.** shower

**Question 13.** The government is being widely **criticized** in the media for falling to limit air pollution.

**A.** attracted **B.** praised **C.** blamed **D.** approved

**Question 14.** Never **punish** your children by hitting them. This might teach them to become hitters.

**A.** bring **B.** accept **C.** give **D.**reward

**Question 15.** The problem is due to discipline, or, more **precisely**, the lack of discipline, in school.

**A.** informally **B.** flexible **C.** casually **D.** wrongly

**Question 16.** The council has spent an **enormous** amount of money on this project.

**A.** tiny **B.** thin **C.** loose **D.** gigantic

**Question 17.** The loss of his journals had cuased him even more **sorrow** than his retirement form themilitary six years earlier.

**A.** grief **B.** joy **C.** comfort **D.** sympathy

**Question 18.** If we use robots instead of humans, many people may be **out of work.**

**A.** employed **B.** jobless **C.** inemployed **D.** unemployed

**Question 19.** This **speedy** and secure service of transferring money can be useful.

**A.** slow **B.** rapid **C.** careful **D.** hurried

**Question 20.** Our well- trained staff are always **courteous** to customers.

**A.** helpful **B.** friendly **C.** rude **D.** polite

**Question 21.** I think it’s impossible to **abolish** school examinations. They are necessary to evaluate

students’ progress.

**A.** stop **B.** extinguish **C.** continue **D.** organize

**Question 22.** We managed to get to school **in time** despite the heavy rain.

**A.** earlier than a particular moment **B.** later than expected

**C.** early enough to do something **D.** as long as expected

**Question 23.** The palace was badly damaged by fire, but was eventually **restored** to its original splendor.

**A.** refurbished **B.** devastated **C.** strengthened **D.** renovated

**Question 24.** After the marriage, Ruth decided to settle **permanently** in New York.

**A.** sustainably **B.** constantly **C.** temporarily **D.** regularly

**Question 25.** The first year at university was probably the best and most **challenging** year of my life. Itcaused me plenty of troubles.

**A.** tricky **B.** tough **C.** easy **D.** difficult

**Question 26.** Ships crossing the oceans can receive signals from satellites that enable them to calculate theirposition **accurately.**

**A.** carelessly **B.** imprecisely **C.** uneasily **D.** untruthfully

**Question 27.** He is very **absent – minded**. He is likely to forget things or to think about somethingdifferent from what he should be thinking about.

**A.** retentive **B.** unforgettable **C.** old–fashioned **D.** easy–going

**Question 28.** We ought to keep these proposals **secret** from the chairman for the time being.

**A.** revealed **B.** frequented **C.** accessible **D.** lively

**Question 29.** When being interviewed, You should **focus on** what the interviewer is saying or asking you.

**A.** to pay no attention to **B.** be interested in

**C.** be related **D.** express interested in

**Question 30.** They've always **encouraged** me in everything I've wanted to do.

**A.** unpardoned **B.** misconstrue **C.** discouraged **D.** impaired

**Question 31. Punctuality** is imperative in your new job.

**A.** Being efficient **B.** Being courteous **C.** Being cheerful **D.** Being late

**Question 32.** Travel insurance is sometimes mistaken for **temporary** health insurance, but the two are

actually different.

**A.** mutable **B.** permanent **C.** passing **D.** transitory

**Question 33.** All children can attend without paying fees at **state schools*.***

**A.** primary schools **B.** secondary schools **C.** high schools **D.** independent schools

**Question 34.** That is a **well-behaved** boy whose behaviour has nothing to complain about.

**A.** behaving improperly **B.** behaving nice **C.** good behavior **D.** behaving cleverly

**Question 35.** “Mary, I think these clothes are **inappropriate** for this important celebration.”

**A.** suitable **B.** improper **C.** attractive **D.** available

**Question 36.** Despite having a bigger and cheaper choice of healthy foods, many Americans have **lost** a lotof weight.

**A.** acquire **B.** win **C.** gained **D.** obtain

**Question 37.** No one knew **precisely** what would happen to human being in space.

**A.** informally**B.** Flexibly **C.** wrongly **D.** casually

**Question 38.** A lot of people think that Angelina Jolie is really **hot**.

**A.** cool **B.** unattractive **C.** memorable **D.** beautiful

**Question 39.** Nonfat milk has **slightly** less fat than low fat.

**A.** a little **B.** a few **C.** much **D.** small

**Question 40.** I must have a watch since **punctuality** is imperative in my new job.

**A.** being on time **B.** being cheerful **C.** being sufficient **D.** being late

**Question 41.** It’s **discourteous** to ask Americans questions about their age, marriage or income.

**A.** impolite **B.** polite **C.** unacceptable **D.** rude

**Question 42.** Remember not to show your **nervousness** during a job interview.

**A.** confidence **B.** anxiety **C.** challenge **D.** creativeness

**Question 43.** She was unhappy that she **lost contact with** a lot of her old friends when she went abroad to

study.

**A.** lost control of **B.** put in charge of **C.** made room for **D.** got in touch with

**Question 44.** The United States is a **major** influence in the United Nations.

**A.** main **B.** real **C.** minor **D.** true

**Question 45.** More people are now **employed** in service industries than in manufacturing.

**A.** jobless **B.** having jobs **C.** trained **D.** vulnerable

**Question 46.** She is a very **generous** woman. She has given most of her wealth to a charity organization.

**A.** mean **B.** amicable **C.** kind **D.** hospitable

**Question 47.** He found the course **difficult** so he had to spend most of his time on study.

**A.** memorable **B.** easy **C.** interesting **D.** hard

**Question 48.** His **rude** comments made other Facebookers very angry.

**A.** pleasant **B.** honest **C.** polite **D.** kind

**Question 49.** She **denied** having stolen his mother's money.

**A.** refused **B.** admitted **C.** insisted on **D.** reminded

**Question 50.** He had never experienced such **discourtesy** towards the president as it occurred at the annualmeeting in May.

**A.** rudeness **B.** measurement **C.** encouragement **D.** politeness

**ĐÁP ÁN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Question 1 | **B** | Question 11 | **C** | Question 21 | **C** | Question 31 | **D** | Question 41 | **B** |
| Question 2 | **D** | Question 12 | **A** | Question 22 | **B** | Question 32 | **B** | Question 42 | **A** |
| Question 3 | **B** | Question 13 | **B** | Question 23 | **B** | Question 33 | **D** | Question 43 | **D** |
| Question 4 | **B** | Question 14 | **D** | Question 24 | **C** | Question 34 | **A** | Question 44 | **C** |
| Question 5 | **B** | Question 15 | **D** | Question 25 | **C** | Question 35 | **A** | Question 45 | **A** |
| Question 6 | **B** | Question 16 | **A** | Question 26 | **B** | Question 36 | **C** | Question 46 | **A** |
| Question 7 | **A** | Question 17 | **B** | Question 27 | **A** | Question 37 | **C** | Question 47 | **B** |
| Question 8 | **A** | Question 18 | **A** | Question 28 | **A** | Question 38 | **B** | Question 48 | **C** |
| Question 9 | **C** | Question 19 | **B** | Question 29 | **A** | Question 39 | **C** | Question 49 | **B** |
| Question 10 | **B** | Question 20 | **C** | Question 30 | **C** | Question 40 | **D** | Question 50 | **D** |

***Exercises 2 : Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

**Question 1.** In this writing test, candidates will not be **penalized** for minor mechanical mistakes.

**A.** punished **B.** rewarded **C.** motivated **D.** discouraged

**Question 2.** After their long-standing conflict had been resolved, the two families decided to **bury the hatchet.**

**A.** become enemies **B.** become friends **C.** give up weapons **D.** reach an agreement

**Question 3.** The aircraft carrier is **indispensable** in naval operations against sea or shore based enemies.

**A.** novel **B.** unnecessary **C.** exotic **D.** vital

**Question 4.** People are now far more **materialistic** than their predecessors years ago.

**A.** monetary **B.** greedy **C.** object-oriented **D.** spiritual

**Question 5.** There has been **insufficient** rainfall over the past two years, and fanners are having trouble.

**A.** abundant **B.** adequate **C.** unsatisfactory **D.** dominant

**Question 6.** We strongly believe that he's **innocent** of the crime. We do not think that he did it.

**A.** crimeless **B.** skillful **C.** clean **D.** guilty

**Question 7.** This new magazine is known for its **comprehensive** coverage of news.

**A.** casual **B.** inadequate **C.** indifferent **D.** superficial

**Question 8.** He was not afraid to pet the **gentle** dog even though it was very big.

**A.** dirty **B.** cold **C.** calm **D.** fierce

**Question 9.** The US troops are using much more **sophisticated** weapons in the Far East.

**A.** expensive **B.** complicated **C.** simple and easy to use **D.** difficult to operate

**Question 10.** His replies were **inconsistent** with his previous testimony.

**A.** contradicted **B.** compatible **C.** enhanced **D.** incorporated

**Question 11.** If one fails to achieve a goal, his or her efforts are **fruitless.**

**A.** profitable **B.** futile **C.** purposeful **D.** useless

**Question 12. Hazardous** waste is waste that has substantial or potential threats to public health or theenvironment.

**A.** vivid **B.** risky **C.** dangerous **D.** secure

**Question 13.** The doctor asked John to **exhale** slowly.

**A.** imhale **B.** move in **C.** enter **D.** breathe in

**Question 14.** The soldier was **demoted** for improper behavior.

**A.** promoted **B.** lowered **C.** resigned **D.** let off

**Question 15.** The **emergence** of supersonic travel opened new horizons for the military, tourism, andcommerce.

**A.** simplicity **B.** disappearance **C.** urgency **D.** profitability

**Question 16.** Nutritionists believe that vitamins **circumvent** diseases.

**A.** defeat **B.** nourish **C.** help **D.** treat

**Question 17.** Golf wear has become a very **lucrative** business for both the manufacturers and golf stars.

**A.** unprofitable **B.** impoverished **C.** inexpensive **D.** unfavorable

**Question 18.** Unless you get your information from a credible website, you should doubt the **veracity** of the facts until you have confirmed them else where.

**A.** inexactness **B.** falsehoodness **C.** unaccuracy **D.** unfairness

**Question 19.** Marco Polo’s account of his travels has been **invaluable** to historians.

**A.** valuable **B.** important **C.** worthless **D.** priceless

**Question 20.** Satish’s point of view was correct but his behavior with his father was quite **impertinent**.

**A.** healthy **B.** smooth **C.** inadequate **D.** respectful

**Question 21.** The nominating committee always meets **behind closed doors**, lest its deliberations becomeknown prematurely.

**A.** privately **B.** safely **C.** publicly **D.** dangerously

**Question 22.** She was unhappy that she **lost contact with** a lot of her old friends when she went abroad to study.

**A.** made room for **B.** put in charge of **C.** got in touch with **D.** lost control of

**Question 23.** The minister **came under fire** for his rash decision to close the factory.

**A.** was dismissed **B.** was acclaimed **C.** was criticized **D.** was penalized

**Question 24.** Those who **advocate** for doctor-assisted suicide say the terminally ill should not have tosuffer.

**A.** support **B.** oppose **C.** annul **D.** convict

**Question 25.** James may **get into hot water** when driving at full speed after drinking.

**A.** get into trouble **B.** fall into disuse **C.** remain calm **D.** stay safe

**Question 26.** The situation seems to be changing **minute by minute**.

**A.** from time to time **B.** time after time **C.** again and again **D.** very slowly

**Question 27.** Jose had a hard time comparing the iPhone to the Samsung phone because to him they were **apples and oranges**.

**A.** containing too many technical details **B.** very similar

**C.** completely different **D.** very complicated

**Question 28.** My neighbors are really **tight with money**. They hate throwing away food, don’t eat atrestaurant, and always try to find the best price.

**A.** to spend money too easily **B.** to not like spending money

**C.** to not know the value of money **D.** to save as much money as possible

**Question 29.** We were all **in a good mood** because the weather was good and we were going on holiday the next day.

**A.** relaxed and comfortable **B.** at ease and refreshed

**C.** upset and disappointed **D.** sad and depressed

**Question 30.** The mountainous region of the country is **thinly** populated. It has only 300 inhabitants.

**A.** sparsely **B.** greatly **C.** densely **D.** largely

**Question 31.** Faced with the economic crisis, many businesses were **tightening their belts** and cutting jobs.

**A.** be generous with money **B.** be careful with money

**C.** put on tighter belts **D.** dress in baggy clothes

**Question 32.** He is **over the moon** about his examination result.

**A.** stressed **B.** very sad **C.** very happy **D.** satisfied

**Question 33.** ‘What I’ve got to say to you now is strictly **off the record** and most certainly not for publication,’ said the government official to the reporter.

**A.** already official **B.** beside the point **C.** not popular **D.** not recorded

**Question 34.** These were the people who **advocated** using force to stop school violence.

**A.** publicly said **B.** openly criticized **C.** publicly supported **D.** strongly condemned

**Question 35.** During the height of the season, tourists arrive **in droves** tosee Shakespeare’s birthdayplace.

**A.** in small numbers **B.** suddenly **C.** in large numbers **D.** out of the blue

**Question 36. On the whole**, the rescue mission was well executed.

**A.** In fact **B.** In particular **C.** At once **D.** In general

**Question 37.** It’s difficult to tell him to give in because he is so **big-headed**.

**A.** wise **B.** generous **C.** modest **D.** arrogant

**Question 38.** The presentation by Dr. Dineen was **self-explanatory**.

**A.** bright **B.** discouraging **C.** confusing **D.** enlightening

**Question 39.** She gave an **impeccable** reading of the sonata and had the audience on their feet.

**A.** unqualified **B.** imperfect **C.** suspicious **D.** negative

**Question 40.** I didn't take a **deliberate** decision to lose weight. It just happened.

**A.** calculated **B.** planned **C.** accidental **D.** intentional

**Question 41.** If you are **at a loose end** this weekend, I will show you around the city.

**A.** free **B.** confident **C.** occupied **D.** reluctant

**Question 42.** The newspaper launched a **vicious** attack on him, forcing him to resign.

**A.** aggressive **B.** dangerous **C.** cruel **D.** gentle

**Question 43.** As a newspaper reporter, she always wanted to get information **at first hand*.***

**A.** indirectly **B.** directly **C.** easily **D.** slowly

**Question 44.** He was utterly **devastated** by the news.

**A.** surprise **B.** happy **C.** upset **D.** shocked

**Question 45.** The Browns are both unemployed. With their six children they must **be in a tight corner** theseday.

**A.** in disappointment **B.** in a bad condition **C.** wealthy **D.** exhausted

**Question 46.** The Ministry of Education and training of Vietnam has declared a decree on the neweducational program **paving the way** for foreign educational co-operation and investment.

**A.** initiating **B.** creating **C.** ending **D.** forming

**Question 47.** The device is very **sophisticated** and should only be operated by someone who is familiarwith it.

**A.** crude **B.** advanced **C.** makeshift **D.** archaic

**Question 48.** Relations between the two countries have **improved** considerably in the last few years.

**A.** abolish **B.** demolish **C.** diminish **D.** deteriorated

**Question 49.** Sorry, I can’t come to your party. I am **snowed under with** work at the moment .

**A.** relaxed about **B.** busy with **C.** interested in **D.** free from

**Question 50.** The power failure at dinnertime caused **consternatio**n among the city’s housewisves.

**A.** anxiety **B.** calm **C.** dismay **D.** deliberation

**ĐÁP ÁN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Question 1 | **B** | Question 11 | **A** | Question 21 | **C** | Question 31 | **A** | Question 41 | **C** |
| Question 2 | **A** | Question 12 | **D** | Question 22 | **C** | Question 32 | **B** | Question 42 | **D** |
| Question 3 | **B** | Question 13 | **D** | Question 23 | **C** | Question 33 | **A** | Question 43 | **A** |
| Question 4 | **D** | Question 14 | **A** | Question 24 | **B** | Question 34 | **B** | Question 44 | **B** |
| Question 5 | **A** | Question 15 | **B** | Question 25 | **C** | Question 35 | **A** | Question 45 | **C** |
| Question 6 | **D** | Question 16 | **B** | Question 26 | **D** | Question 36 | **B** | Question 46 | **C** |
| Question 7 | **D** | Question 17 | **A** | Question 27 | **B** | Question 37 | **C** | Question 47 | **A** |
| Question 8 | **D** | Question 18 | **A** | Question 28 | **A** | Question 38 | **C** | Question 48 | **D** |
| Question 9 | **C** | Question 19 | **C** | Question 29 | **D** | Question 39 | **B** | Question 49 | **D** |
| Question 10 | **B** | Question 20 | **D** | Question 30 | **C** | Question 40 | **C** | Question 50 | **B** |

**MODULE 28 : READING**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

|  |
| --- |
| **BỐN BƯỚC LÀM BÀI TẬP ĐỌC HIỂU TRONG KỲ THI** |
| **Bước 1:** Đọc lướt nắm nội dung  **Bước 2:** Giải quyết câu hỏi từ vựng  **Dạng 1: Reference Questions (câu hỏi liên hệ đến từ vựng)**   * What does the word **“It/ they/ them/ this/ those/…”** in line ” – ” refer to?   [Từ **“It/ they/ them/ this/ those/…**” ở dòng… ám chỉ/ thay thế cho…]  Với dạng câu hỏi này, hãy đọc kỹ **câu ngay trước câu có từ in đậm**, sau đó có thể dễ dàng tìm được đáp án. Đề bài có thể đánh đố bằng nhiều danh từ tương tự xuất hiện trước và sau câu có từ in đậm. Hãy cân nhắc thật kỹ. Để chắc chắn thì hãy thay ngược đáp án vào các từ **“It/ they/ them/ this/ those/…**” đề xem nghĩa có thay đổi gì không.  **Dạng 2: Vocabulary Questions (câu hỏi về từ vựng)**   * The expression ” – ” in line ” – ” **could best replaced** by… * The word ” – ” in line ” – ” is **closest/ opposite meaning** to…   [Từ/ cụm từ ” – ” ở dòng ” – ” có thể được thay thế bởi từ nào?]  Với dạng câu hỏi này, ta cần đọc cả câu để xác định nét nghĩa mà câu biểu đạt bởi mỗi từ có thể có nhiều nghĩa. Từ đó cân nhắc, loại trừ để chọn được đáp án phù hợp. Sẽ có trường hợp từ được cho là mội từ **khó và mới** đối với các bạn. Khi đó hãy đọc cả câu để đoán nét nghĩa cần điền vào, hoặc ghép thử 4 đáp án vào xem cái này dùng được.  **Bước 3:** Xử lí các câu hỏi thông tin trong bài  **Dạng 1: Factual Questions (câu hỏi lấy thông tin)**   * **According to** the first/ second/ last passage, why/ what/ how…?   [Theo như đoạn viết, tại sao? Cái gì? Thế nào?…]   * **According to** the information in paragraph 1/ 2/ 3, why/ what/ how…?   [Theo như thông tin trong đoạn 1, cái gì…?]  **Dạng 2:** **Negative factual Questions (câu hỏi lấy thông tin đối lập)**   * All the following sentences are true, **except**…   [Các thông tin dưới đây đều đúng ngoại trừ…]   * Which is **NOT mentioned** in the paragraph?   [Thông tin nào không được nhắc đến trong bài?]   * Which statement is **LEAST likely** to be true/ What is least likely to happen?   [ít có khả năng xảy ra…]  Để làm được bài này, ta phải chú ý key words của câu hỏi, để không bị đánh lừa bởi các đáp án. Từ đó xác định đoạn chứa thông tin được hỏi, đọc kĩ đoạn và câu hỏi để tìm ra đáp án chính xác.  **Bước 4:**Làm các câu hỏi nội dung  **Dạng 1:** **Main idea (câu hỏi về ý chính)**  What is the topic of this passage? [Chủ đề của bài viết là gì?]  What is the **main idea** expressed in this passage? [Ý chính được thể hiện trong bài là gì?]  **Which title** best reflects the main idea of the passage? [Nhan đề phù hợp nhất cho ý chính của bài là gì?]  Những câu hỏi dạng này đòi hỏi phải cân nhắc loại trừ thật kĩ, thường thì đoạn đầu và đoạn cuối rất hữu ích giúp ta tìm ra câu trả lời.   * Chủ đề phải là ý bao quát toàn bài đọc. * Chủ đề không thể là ý phụ hoặc ý chính của bất kỳ một đoạn văn nào trong bài văn.   **Dạng 2:** **Inference Questions (câu hỏi suy diễn)**   * It is **probable/ possible** that… [Có thể là/ có khả năng là…] * It can be i**nferred** from the passage that… [Có thể suy ra từ đoạn văn là…] * In the paragraph 2, **the author implies/ suggests** that…[Trong đoạn 2, tác giả ngầm ám chỉ/gợi ý rằng] Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425)   **Dạng 3: Questions on author’s purpose (câu hỏi mục đích của tác giả)**   * Why does the author mention \_\_\_\_ ? [Tại sao tác giả đề cập đến…?] * The author’s **main purpose** in paragraph 2 is to…[Mục đích chính của tác giả trong đoạn 2 là để]   Với câu hỏi **dạng 2** và **dạng 3**, ta tìm đúng vị trí chứa thông tin được hỏi, đọc thật kỹ kèm đối chiếu với đáp án để tìm ra câu trả lời. |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

**FURTHER PRACTICE 1**

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 1 to 5.***

The United States of America, due to its immense size and diverse heritage, has one of the most complex cultural identities in the world. Millions of immigrants from all over the globe have journeyed to America (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Europeans discovered and colonised the land back in the 17th and 18th centuries. The blending of cultural (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ and ethnicities in America led to the country becoming known as a “melting pot.” As the third largest country in both area and population, America’s size has enabled the formation of subcultures within the country. These subcultures are often geographical as a result of settlement (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ by non-natives as well as regional weather and landscape differences. While there are countless ways to divide the U.S. into regions, here we have referenced the four regions that are West, Midwest, North East and South. People from (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ region may have different lifestyles, cultural values, business practices and dialects. While there are qualities and values (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_ most Americans commonly share, it is important not to generalise or assume that all Americans think or act the same way.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.londonschool.com/*](https://www.londonschool.com/)*)*

1. A. because B. as C. for D. since
2. A. backgrounds B. reference C. expression D. importance
3. A. chapter B. revenue C. patterns D. unions
4. A. each B. other C. all D. another
5. A. when B. that C. why D. who

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 6 to 10.***

**GIRLS' EDUCATION**

Improving girls' educational levels has been demonstrated to have clear impacts on the health and economic future of young women, which in turn improves the prospect of their entire community. Research shows that every extra year of school for girls increases their lifetime income by 15%. Improving female education, and thus the earning potential of women improves the standard of living for their own children.

Yet, many **barriers** to education for girls remain. In some African countries, such as Burkina Faso, girls are unlikely to attend school for such basic reasons as a lack of private toilet facilities for girls. Higher attendance rates of high schools and university education among women, particularly in developing countries, have helped them **make inroads into** professional careers with better-paying salaries and wages. Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

Education increases a woman's (and her partner's and the family's) level of health and health awareness.  Furthering women's levels of education and advanced training also tends to lead to later ages of initiation of sexual activity, later ages at first marriage, and later ages at first childbirth, as well as an increased likelihood to remain single, have no children, or have no formal marriage and alternatively, have increasing levels of long-term partnerships. **It** can lead to higher rates of barrier and chemical contraceptive use (and a lower level of sexually transmitted infections among women and their partners and children), and can increase the level of resources available to women who divorce or are in a situation of domestic violence. It has been shown, in addition, to increase women's communication with their partners and their employers, and to improve rates of civic participation such as voting or the holding of office.

1. What can be the best title for the reading passage?

A. Education and Violence Against Women B. Women's Rights to Lifelong Education

C. Female Education and its Social Benefits D. Education and Women's Empowerment

1. It is stated in the first paragraph that

A. women's educational levels have an influence on the prospect of their community

B. it is the children's schooling that helps their mothers increase their lifetime income

C. women who have little schooling often have no idea of raising their children

D. earning their own living, women take the responsibility of running the household

1. The word "**barriers**" in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. strains B. challenges C. stresses D. obstacles

1. The phrase “**make inroads into**” in paragraph 2 can be best replaced by\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. celebrate achievement in B. succeed in taking

C. make progress in D. take the chance in

1. The word "**It**" in paragraph 3 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. higher attendance rates of high schools and university education

B. increasing levels of long-term partnerships

C. a woman's level of health and health awareness

D. furthering women's levels of education and advanced training

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 11 to 17.***

In science, a theory is a reasonable explanation of observed events that are **related**. A theory often involves an imaginary model that helps scientists picture the way an observed event could be produced. A good example of **this** is found in the kinetic molecular theory, in which gases are pictured as being made up of many small particles that are in constant motion.

A useful theory, in addition to explaining past observations, helps to predict events that have not as yet been observed. After a theory has been publicized, scientists design experiments to test the theory. If observations confirm the scientists' predictions, the theory is **supported**. If observations do not confirm the predictions, the scientists must search further. There may be a fault in the experiment, or the theory may have to be revised or rejected.

Science involves imagination and creative thinking as well as collecting information and performing experiments. Facts by themselves are not science. As the mathematician Jules Henri Poincare said: "Science is built with facts just as a house is built with bricks, but a collection of facts cannot be called science any more than a pile of bricks can be called a house."

Most scientists start an investigation by finding out what other scientists have learned about a particular problem. After known facts have been gathered, the scientist comes to the part of the investigation that requires considerable imagination. Possible solutions to the problem are formulated. These possible solutions are called hypotheses. In a way, any hypothesis is a leap into the unknown. It extends the scientist's thinking beyond the known facts. The scientist plans experiments, performs calculations and makes observations to test hypotheses. For without hypotheses, further investigation lacks purpose and direction. When hypotheses are confirmed, they are incorporated into theories.

1. In the fourth paragraph, the author implies that imagination is most important to scientists when they \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. gather known facts. B. formulate possible solutions to a problem.

C. evaluate previous work on a problem. D. close an investigation.

1. The word "**this**" in line 3 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the kinetic molecular theory B. an observed event

C. an imaginary model D. a good example

1. According to the second paragraph, a useful theory is one that helps scientists to \_\_\_\_\_\_

A. find errors in past experiments. B. publicize new findings.

C. observe events. D. make predictions.

1. The word "**related**" in line 1 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. completed B. identified C. described D. connected

1. The word "**supported**" is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. upheld B. investigated C. finished D. adjusted

1. In the last paragraph, what does the author imply a major function of hypotheses?

A. Communicating a scientist's thoughts to others. B. Sifting through known facts.

C. Linking together different theories. D. Providing direction for scientific research.

1. Which of the following statements is supported by the passage?

A. A good scientist needs to be creative.

B. It is better to revise a hypothesis than to reject it.

C. Theories are simply imaginary models of past events.

D. A scientist's most difficult task is testing hypotheses.

**ĐÁP ÁN 1**

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 1 to 5.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 1 .D** | **Giải thích:** Trong câu thì hiện tại hoàn thành, since + mốc thời gian trong quá khứ |
| **Question 2 .A** | **Giải thích:** Phương án A phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** backgrounds (n.): nền tảng **B.** reference (n.): sự tham khảo  **C.** expression (n.): sự diễn đạt **D.** importance (n.): tầm quan trọng |
| **Question 3 .C** | **Giải thích:** Phương án C phù hợp về nghĩa  **A.** chapter (n.): chương **B.** revenue (n.): doanh số  **C.** patterns (n.): kiểu, mô hình **D.** unions (n.): hiệp hội |
| **Question 4 .A** | **Giải thích:** Each + Danh từ: mỗi… |
| **Question 5 .B** | **Giải thích:** Đại từ quan hệ “that” thay cho sự vật “qualities and values”, các đại từ khác không có chức năng này. |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Do diện tích lớn và di sản đa dạng của nó, Hợp chủng quốc Hoa Kỳ có một trong những bản sắc văn hóa phức tạp nhất trên thế giới. Hàng triệu người nhập cư từ khắp nơi trên thế giới đã hành trình đến Mỹ kể từ khi người châu Âu phát hiện và xâm chiếm vùng đất này vào thế kỷ 17 và 18. Sự pha trộn giữa nền tảng văn hóa và sắc tộc ở Mỹ đã khiến đất nước này được biết đến như một nơi tụ cư. Là quốc gia lớn thứ ba về cả diện tích và dân số, sự rộng lớn của nước Mỹ đã cho phép hình thành các tiểu văn hóa trong nước. Những tiểu văn hóa này thường là do địa lý là kết quả của mô hình định cư bởi những người không phải người bản địa cũng như sự khác biệt về thời tiết và cảnh quan khu vực. Mặc dù có vô số cách thức để chia Hoa Kỳ thành các khu vực, nhưng ở đây chúng tôi đã đề cập đến bốn khu vực đó là Tây, Trung Tây, Đông Bắc và Nam. Mọi người từ mỗi khu vực có thể có lối sống, giá trị văn hóa, tập quán kinh doanh và phương ngữ khác nhau. Mặc dù có những phẩm chất và giá trị mà hầu hết người Mỹ đều có, điều quan trọng là không nên khái quát hóa lên hoặc cho rằng tất cả người Mỹ nghĩ hoặc hành động theo cùng một cách giống nhau.

**Question 6 .C**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – nhan đề

Tiêu đề phù hợp nhất cho bài đọc là gì?

A. Giáo dục và Bạo lực đối với Phụ nữ

B. Quyền của Phụ nữ được Giáo dục Suốt đời

C. Giáo dục cho phụ nữ và các lợi ích xã hội của nó

D. Giáo dục và trao quyền cho phụ nữ

**Thông tin:** Improving girls' educational levels has been demonstrated to have clear impacts on the health and economic future of young women, which in turn improves the prospect of their entire community.

**Tạm dịch:** Cải thiện trình độ học vấn của trẻ em gái đã được chứng minh là có tác động rõ ràng đến sức khỏe và tương lai kinh tế của phụ nữ trẻ, do đó cải thiện sự giàu có của toàn bộ xã hội.

**Question 7 .A**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – chi tiết

Đoạn đầu tiêu nêu rõ rằng \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. trình độ học vấn của phụ nữ có ảnh hưởng đến tương lai xã hội của họ

B. việc học của trẻ em đã giúp mẹ chúng tăng thu nhập suốt đời

C. phụ nữ ít đi học thường không có ý tưởng nuôi dạy con cái

D. tự kiếm sống, phụ nữ chịu trách nhiệm điều hành gia đình

**Thông tin:** Improving girls' educational levels has been demonstrated to have clear impacts on the health and economic future of young women, which in turn improves the prospect of their entire community.

**Tạm dịch:** Cải thiện trình độ học vấn của trẻ em gái đã được chứng minh là có tác động rõ ràng đến sức khỏe và tương lai kinh tế của phụ nữ trẻ, do đó cải thiện sự giàu có của toàn bộ xã hội.

**Question 8 .D**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – từ vựng

Từ “**barriers**” trong đoạn 2 gần nghĩa nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. strains (n): căng thẳng B. challenges (n): thách thức

C. stresses (n): căng thẳng D. obstacles (n): trở ngại

=> barriers (n): rào cản = obstacles

**Thông tin:** Yet, many **barriers** to education for girls remain.

**Tạm dịch:** Tuy nhiên, vẫn còn nhiều rào cản đối với giáo dục cho trẻ em gái.

**Question 9 .B**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – từ vựng

Cụm “**make inroads into**” trong đoạn văn có thể thay thế bằng \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. celebrate achievement in: ăn mừng thành tích trong

B. succeed in taking: thành công trong việc lấy

C. make progress in: đạt được tiến bộ trong

D. take the chance in: nắm lấy cơ hội trong

=> make inroads into (idiom): thành công trong việc gì = succeed in taking

**Thông tin:** Higher attendance rates of high schools and university education among women, particularly in developing countries, have helped them **make inroads into** professional careers with better-paying salaries and wages.

**Tạm dịch:** Tỷ lệ đi học trung học và đại học cao hơn ở phụ nữ, đặc biệt là ở các nước đang phát triển, đã giúp họ thành công trong sự nghiệp với mức lương và tiền công cao hơn.

**Question 10 .D**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu

Từ “**It**” trong đoạn 3 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. tỷ lệ đi học cao hơn ở các trường trung học và đại học

B. tăng mức độ quan hệ đối tác lâu dài

C. mức độ sức khỏe của phụ nữ và nhận thức về sức khỏe

D. nâng cao trình độ học vấn và đào tạo nâng cao của phụ nữ

**Thông tin: Furthering women's levels of education and advanced training** also tends to lead to later ages of initiation of sexual activity, later ages at first marriage, and later ages at first childbirth, as well as an increased likelihood to remain single, have no children, or have no formal marriage and alternatively, have increasing levels of long-term partnerships. **It** can lead to higher rates of barrier and chemical contraceptive use

**Tạm dịch: Đẩy mạnh trình độ học vấn và đào tạo nâng cao của phụ nữ** cũng có xu hướng dẫn việc quan hệ tình dục lần đầu muộn hơn, tuổi kết hôn và tuổi sinh con đầu lòng đầu lòng muộn hơn, cũng như tăng khả năng sống độc thân, không có con hoặc có không có hôn nhân chính thức và thay vào đó, có mức độ gia tăng của các mối quan hệ lâu dài. **Nó** có thể dẫn đến tỷ lệ sử dụng biện pháp tránh thai và thuốc tránh thai cao hơn

**Dịch bài đọc**

**GIÁO DỤC CỦA CON GÁI**

Cải thiện trình độ học vấn của trẻ em gái đã được chứng minh là có tác động rõ ràng đến sức khỏe tương lai kinh tế của phụ nữ trẻ, do đó cải thiện sự giàu có của toàn bộ xã hội. Nghiên cứu cho thấy rằng mỗi năm học thêm của trẻ em gái sẽ làm tăng thu nhập cả đời của họ lên 15%. Nâng cao trình độ học vấn cho nữ giới, từ đó tiềm năng kiếm tiền của phụ nữ nâng cao mức sống cho chính con cái của họ. Tuy nhiên, vẫn còn nhiều rào cản đối với giáo dục cho trẻ em gái. Ở một số quốc gia châu Phi, chẳng hạn như Burkina Faso, trẻ em gái khó có thể đến trường vì những lý do cơ bản như thiếu nhà vệ sinh riêng cho trẻ em gái. Tỷ lệ đi học trung học và đại học cao hơn ở phụ nữ, đặc biệt là ở các nước đang phát triển, đã giúp họ thành công trong sự nghiệp với mức lương và tiền công cao hơn.

Giáo dục nâng cao nhận thức về sức khỏe và sức khỏe của phụ nữ (cùng bạn đời và gia đình). Đẩy mạnh trình độ học vấn và đào tạo nâng cao của phụ nữ cũng có xu hướng dẫn việc quan hệ tình dục lần đầu muộn hơn, tuổi kết hôn và tuổi sinh con đầu lòng đầu lòng muộn hơn, cũng như tăng khả năng sống độc thân, không có con hoặc không có hôn nhân chính thức và thay vào đó, có mức độ gia tăng của các mối quan hệ lâu dài. Nó có thể dẫn đến tỷ lệ sử dụng biện pháp tránh thai và thuốc tránh thai cao hơn (và mức độ lây bệnh truyền nhiễm qua đường tình dục ở phụ nữ và bạn tình và con cái của họ thấp hơn), đồng thời có thể làm tăng các nguồn hỗ trợ có sẵn cho phụ nữ ly hôn hoặc đang trong tình trạng bạo lực gia đình. Ngoài ra, nó còn được chứng minh là tăng cường giao tiếp của phụ nữ với bạn đời và cấp trên (nhà tuyển dụng lao động), và cải thiện tỷ lệ tham gia của người dân như bỏ phiếu hoặc giữ chức vụ, vị trí nào đó.

**Question 11 .B**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – suy luận

Trong đoạn thứ tư, tác giả ngụ ý rằng trí tưởng tượng là quan trọng nhất đối với các nhà khoa học khi họ \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. thu thập các dữ kiện đã biết. B. hình thành các giải pháp khả thi cho một vấn đề.

C. đánh giá công việc trước đây về một vấn đề. D. đóng một cuộc điều tra.

**Thông tin:** After known facts have been gathered, the scientist comes to the part of the investigation that requires considerable imagination. Possible solutions to the problem are formulated. These possible solutions are called hypotheses.

**Tạm dịch:** Sau khi các dữ kiện đã biết đã được thu thập, nhà khoa học đến với phần điều tra đòi hỏi trí tưởng tượng đáng kể. Các giải pháp khả thi cho vấn đề được đưa ra. Những giải pháp khả thi này được gọi là giả thuyết.

**Question 12 .C**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – từ thay thế

Từ “**this**” trong dòng 3 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. thuyết phân tử động học B. một sự kiện được quan sát

C. một mô hình tưởng tượng D. một ví dụ tốt

**Thông tin:** A theory often involves an imaginary model that helps scientists picture the way an observed event could be produced. A good example of **this** is found in the kinetic molecular theory, in which gases are pictured as being made up of many small particles that are in constant motion.

**Tạm dịch:** Một lý thuyết thường liên quan đến một mô hình tưởng tượng giúp các nhà khoa học hình dung ra cách một sự kiện quan sát được có thể được tạo ra. Một ví dụ điển hình về điều này được tìm thấy trong lý thuyết phân tử động học, trong đó các chất khí được hình dung là được tạo thành từ nhiều hạt nhỏ chuyển động không đổi.

**Question 13 .D**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – chi tiết

Theo đoạn thứ 2, một lý thuyết hữu ích là một lý thuyết giúp các nhà khoa học \_\_\_\_\_\_

A. tìm lỗi trong các thí nghiệm trong quá khứ. B. công bố những phát hiện mới.

C. quan sát các sự kiện. D. đưa ra dự đoán.

**Thông tin:** A useful theory, in addition to explaining past observations, helps to predict events that have not as yet been observed.

**Tạm dịch:** Một lý thuyết hữu ích, ngoài việc giải thích những quan sát trong quá khứ thì còn giúp dự đoán những sự kiện chưa được quan sát.

**Question 14 .D**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – từ vựng

Từ "**related**" trong dòng 1 thì gần nghĩa nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. completed: hoàn thành B. identified: nhận dạng

C. described: miêu tả D. connected: kết nối, liên kết

=> relate: liên quan = connect

**Thông tin:** In science, a theory is a reasonable explanation of observed events that are **related**.

**Tạm dịch:** Trong khoa học, một lý thuyết là một lời giải thích hợp lý về các sự kiện quan sát được có liên quan.

**Question 15 .A**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – từ vựng

Từ "**supported**" gần nghĩa nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. upheld: đề cao, ủng hộ, xác nhận B. investigated: phân tích

C. finished: kết thúc D. adjusted: điều chỉnh

=> support (v): ủng hộ = uphold

**Thông tin:** If observations confirm the scientists' predictions, the theory is **supported**.

**Tạm dịch:** Nếu các quan sát xác nhận dự đoán của các nhà khoa học, lý thuyết này được ủng hộ.

**Question 16 .D**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – suy luận

Trong đoạn cuối, tác giả ngụ ý chức năng chính của các giả thuyết là gì?

A. Truyền đạt suy nghĩ của nhà khoa học cho người khác.

B. Sàng lọc các dữ kiện đã biết.

C. Liên kết các lý thuyết khác nhau với nhau.

D. Đưa ra hướng nghiên cứu khoa học.

**Thông tin:** For without hypotheses, further investigation lacks purpose and direction.

**Tạm dịch:** Vì nếu không có giả thuyết, việc điều tra thêm sẽ thiếu mục đích và hướng đi.

**Question 17 .D**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – chi tiết

Câu nào sau đây được ủng hộ bởi đoạn văn?

A. Một nhà khoa học giỏi cần phải sáng tạo.

=> không có thông tin (chỉ đề cập: khoa học thì cần tưởng tượng)

B. Tốt hơn là bạn nên sửa đổi một giả thuyết hơn là bác bỏ nó.

=> không có thông tin

C. Các lý thuyết chỉ đơn giản là mô hình tưởng tượng về các sự kiện trong quá khứ.

=> đoạn 1 nói lý thuyết thường liên quan đến mô hình này, không phải lý thuyết là mô hình

D. Nhiệm vụ khó khăn nhất của một nhà khoa học là thử nghiệm các giả thuyết.

**Dịch bài đọc**

Trong khoa học, một lý thuyết là một lời giải thích hợp lý về các sự kiện quan sát được có liên quan. Một lý thuyết thường liên quan đến một mô hình tưởng tượng giúp các nhà khoa học hình dung ra cách một sự kiện quan sát được có thể được tạo ra. Một ví dụ điển hình về điều này được tìm thấy trong lý thuyết phân tử động học, trong đó các chất khí được hình dung là được tạo thành từ nhiều hạt nhỏ chuyển động không đổi.

Một lý thuyết hữu ích, ngoài việc giải thích những quan sát trong quá khứ thì còn giúp dự đoán những sự kiện chưa được quan sát. Sau khi một lý thuyết được công bố rộng rãi, các nhà khoa học thiết kế các thí nghiệm để kiểm tra lý thuyết đó. Nếu các quan sát xác nhận dự đoán của các nhà khoa học, lý thuyết này được ủng hộ. Nếu các quan sát không xác nhận các dự đoán, các nhà khoa học phải tìm kiếm thêm. Có thể có sai sót trong thí nghiệm, hoặc lý thuyết có thể phải được sửa đổi hoặc bác bỏ.

Khoa học liên quan đến trí tưởng tượng và tư duy sáng tạo cũng như thu thập thông tin và thực hiện các thí nghiệm. Bản thân dữ kiện thực tế không phải là khoa học. Như nhà toán học, Jules Henri Poincare đã nói:  "Khoa học được xây dựng bằng các dữ kiện giống như một ngôi nhà được xây bằng gạch, nhưng một tập hợp các dữ kiện không thể được gọi là khoa học hơn một đống gạch có thể được gọi là một ngôi nhà."

Hầu hết các nhà khoa học bắt đầu một cuộc điều tra bằng cách tìm hiểu những gì các nhà khoa học khác đã học được về một vấn đề cụ thể. Sau khi các dữ kiện đã biết đã được thu thập, nhà khoa học đến với phần điều tra đòi hỏi trí tưởng tượng đáng kể. Các giải pháp khả thi cho vấn đề được đưa ra. Những giải pháp khả thi này được gọi là giả thuyết. Theo một cách nào đó, bất kỳ giả thuyết nào cũng là một bước nhảy vọt. Nó mở rộng tư duy của nhà khoa học ra ngoài những dự kiện đã biết. Nhà khoa học lập kế hoạch thí nghiệm, thực hiện tính toán và quan sát để kiểm tra giả thuyết. Vì nếu không có giả thuyết, việc điều tra thêm sẽ thiếu mục đích và hướng đi. Khi các giả thuyết được xác nhận, chúng được đưa vào thành các lý thuyết.

**FURTHER PRACTICE 2**

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 1 to 5.***

A large majority of Americans believe that social media companies favor some news organizations over others. About eight-in-ten U.S. adults say social media sites treat some news organizations differently than others, about five times the share saying all news organizations are treated the same.

Social media companies do have established policies (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ it comes to publishers, including prioritizing certain news sources, banning or limiting others that produce lower-quality content, and using their monetization policies to discourage particular behaviors.

Among those U.S. adults (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ say social media companies treat some news organizations differently than others, there is broad agreement that they (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ three types: those that produce attention-grabbing articles, those with a high number of social media followers and those whose coverage has a certain political stance.

While large social media companies have announced (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to favor high-quality news publishers in an effort to improve the news on their sites, (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_ who say some news organizations are treated differently believe social media companies favor organizations that are well-established, have high reporting standards or have politically neutral coverage.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.journalism.org/*](https://www.journalism.org/)*)*

1. A. despite B. when C. during D. since
2. A. who B. why C. whom D. when
3. A. appear B. obtain C. accept D. favor
4. A. intentions B. conclusions C. initiatives D. signatures
5. A. fewer B. most C. more D. a lot of

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 6 to 10.***

One way of training for your future occupation in Germany is by pursuing a dual vocational training programme. Such programmes offer plenty of opportunities for on-the-job training and work experience.  Programmes usually last between two and three and a half years and comprise theoretical as well as practical elements. You will spend one or two days a week, or several weeks at once, at a vocational school where you will acquire the theoretical knowledge that you will need in your future occupation. The rest of the time will be spent at a company. There you get to apply your newly acquired knowledge in practice, for example by learning to operate machinery. You will get to know what your company does, learn how **it** operates and find out if you can see yourself working there after completing your training.

This combination of theory and practice gives you a real head start into your job: by the time you have completed your training, you will not only have the required technical knowledge, but you will also have **hands-on** experience in your job. There are around 350 officially recognised training programmes in Germany, so chances are good that one of them will suit your interests and talents. You can find out which one that might be by visiting one of the jobs vocational training fairs which are organised in many German cities at different times in the year.

Employment prospects for students who have completed a dual vocational training programme are very good. This is one of the reasons why this kind of training is very popular with young Germans: around two thirds of all students leaving school go on to start a vocational training programme.

*(Source: http://www.make-it-in-germany. com)*

1. How many German school leavers choose this vocational training programme?

A. around one out of five B. less than a third

C. well over 75% D. about 70%

1. The word "**it**" in the first paragraph refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. company B. organisation C. machinery D. knowledge

1. Which of the following statements best describes the dual vocational training programmes?

A. These programmes provide you with both theoretical knowledge and practical working experience.

B. These programmes require you to have only practical working time at a certain company

C. These programmes offer you some necessary technical skills to do your future job.

D. These programmes consist of an intensive theoretical course of two and a half years at a vocational school.

1. The word "**hands-on**" in the second paragraph is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. technical B. practical C. theoretical D. integral

1. Which of the following is probably the best title of the passage?

A. Employment Opportunities and Prospects in Germany

B. Combination of Theory and Practice in Studying in Germany

C. Dual Vocational Training System in Germany

D. Higher Education System in Germany

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 11 to 17.***

A surgical mask is a loose-fitting, disposable device that creates a physical barrier between the mouth and nose of the wearer and potential contaminants in the immediate environment. Surgical masks are regulated under 21 CFR 878.4040. Surgical masks are not to be shared and may be labelled as surgical, isolation, dental, or medical procedure masks. **They** may come with or without a face shield. These are often referred to as face masks, although not all face masks are regulated as surgical masks.

Surgical masks are made in different thicknesses and with different ability to protect you from contact with liquids. These properties may also affect how easily you can breathe through the face mask and how well the surgical mask protects you. Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

If worn properly, a surgical mask is meant to help block large-particle droplets, splashes, sprays, or splatter that may **contain** germs (viruses and bacteria), keeping it from reaching your mouth and nose. Surgical masks may also help reduce exposure of your saliva and respiratory secretions to others.

While a surgical mask may be effective in blocking splashes and large-particle droplets, a face mask, by design, does not filter or block very small particles in the air that may be **transmitted** by coughs, sneezes, or certain medical procedures. Surgical masks also do not provide complete protection from germs and other contaminants because of the loose fit between the surface of the face mask and your face.

Surgical masks are not intended to be used more than once. If your mask is damaged or soiled, or if breathing through the mask becomes difficult, you should remove the face mask, discard it safely, and replace it with a new one. To safely discard your mask, place it in a plastic bag and put it in the trash. Wash your hands after handling the used mask.

*(Source: https://www.fda.gov/)*

1. Which of the following best serves as the title of the article?

A. How to Make Surgical Face Masks B. Uses of Surgical Face Masks

C. Surgical Face Masks in the Past D. Surgical Face Masks

1. 21 CFR 878.4040 is most likely mentioned in paragraph 1 as a \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. standard to follow B. design of masks

C. mask serial number D. mask model number

1. The word “**They**” in paragraph 1 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. Physical barrier B. Contaminants C. Surgical masks D. Face shields

1. The word “**contain**” in paragraph 3 most probably means \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. reflect B. carry C. require D. protect

1. Which of the following is TRUE, according to the article?

A. All surgical masks have the same thickness and protecting ability.

B. Exposure to saliva and respiratory secretions may be reduced with surgical masks.

C. Surgical masks can block splashes and droplets including very small particles.

D. You have to replace your mask with a new one only when it is damaged.

1. The word “**transmitted**” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. transferred B. introduced C. produced D. committed

1. Why do surgical masks NOT provide complete protection from germs?

A. Surgical masks are not designed to wear with face shields.

B. There are too many saliva and respiratory secretions in the air.

C. Very small particles may transmit through loose fit between the mask and the face.

D. Surgical masks are easily soiled.

**ĐÁP ÁN 2**

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 1 to 5.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 1. B** | **Giải thích:** Sau chỗ trống là mệnh đề nên cần điền liên từ. Phương án B phù hợp về nghĩa và ngữ pháp.  **A.** despite (prep.): dù **B.** when (conj.): khi  **C.** during (prep.): trong khi **D.** since (conj.): vì |
| **Question 2. A** | **Giải thích:** Đại từ quan hệ “who” thay cho danh từ chỉ người “U.S. adults”, các đại từ khác không có chức năng này. |
| **Question 3. D** | **Giải thích:** Phương án D phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** appear (v.): xuất hiện **B.** obtain (v.): đạt được  **C.** accept (v.): chấp nhận **D.** favor (v.): thích hơn |
| **Question 4. C** | Giải thích: Phương án C phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** intentions (n.): ý định **B.** conclusions (n.): kết luận  **C.** initiatives (n.): sáng kiến **D.** signatures (n.): chữ ký |
| **Question 5. A** | **Giải thích:** Phương án A phù hợp về nghĩa và ngữ pháp. |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Phần lớn người Mỹ tin rằng các công ty truyền thông xã hội ủng hộ một số tổ chức tin tức hơn những tổ chức khác. Khoảng tám trong mười người Hoa Kỳ nói rằng các trang web truyền thông xã hội ứng xử với một số tổ chức tin tức theo cách khác so với các tổ chức khác, khoảng năm lần các bài chia sẻ nói rằng tất cả các tổ chức tin tức đều được đối xử như nhau.

Các công ty truyền thông xã hội đã thiết lập các chính sách khi nói đến các nhà xuất bản, bao gồm ưu tiên các nguồn tin tức nhất định, cấm hoặc hạn chế những nhà khác sản xuất nội dung chất lượng thấp hơn và sử dụng các chính sách kiếm tiền của họ để ngăn chặn các hành vi cụ thể.

Trong số những người trưởng thành ở Mỹ nói rằng các công ty truyền thông xã hội đối xử với một số tổ chức tin tức theo cách khác so với các tổ chức tin tức còn lại, có một thỏa thuận rộng rãi rằng họ ủng hộ ba loại: những đơn vị tạo ra các bài báo thu hút sự chú ý, những đơn vị có số lượng người theo dõi trên mạng xã hội cao và những đơn vị mà phạm vi nội dung của họ có lập trường chính trị nhất định.

Trong khi các công ty truyền thông xã hội lớn đã công bố các sáng kiến ​​ủng hộ các nhà xuất bản tin tức chất lượng cao trong nỗ lực cải thiện tin tức trên trang web của họ, thì ít người hơn nói rằng một số tổ chức tin tức được đối xử khác nhau tin rằng các công ty truyền thông xã hội ủng hộ các tổ chức được tổ chức tốt, có tiêu chuẩn báo cáo cao hoặc có phạm vi nội dung trung lập về chính trị.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 6 to 10.***

**Question 6. D**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – chi tiết

Có bao nhiêu học sinh tốt nghiệp ở Đức chọn chương trình đào tạo nghề này?

A. khoảng 1/3 B. ít hơn 1/3 C. hơn 75% D. khoảng 70%

**Thông tin:** around two-thirds of all students leaving school go on to start a vocational training programme.

**Tạm dịch:** khoảng 2/3 tổng số sinh viên rời trường học để bắt đầu một chương trình đào tạo nghề.

2/3 của 100% ~ 66% => làm tròn lên sẽ gần 70% nhất.

**Question 7. A**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – từ thay thế

Từ **it** trong đoạn 1 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. company (n): công ty B. organization (n): tổ chức

C. machinery (n): máy móc D. knowledge (n): kiến thức

**Thông tin:** You will get to know what your company does, learn how **it** operates…

**Tạm dịch:** Bạn sẽ biết công ty của bạn làm gì, tìm hiểu cách nó hoạt động …

**Question 8. A**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – chi tiết

Câu nào sau đây mô tả đúng nhất về chương trình đào tạo nghề kép?

A. Các chương trình này cung cấp cho bạn cả kiến thức lý thuyết và kinh nghiệm làm việc thực tế.

B. Các chương trình này yêu cầu bạn chỉ có thời gian làm việc thực tế tại một công ty nhất định

C. Các chương trình này cung cấp cho bạn một số kỹ năng kỹ thuật cần thiết để thực hiện công việc tương lai của bạn.

D. Các chương trình này bao gồm một khóa học lý thuyết chuyên sâu trong hai năm rưỡi tại một trường dạy nghề. Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

**Thông tin:** and comprise theoretical as well as practical elements.

**Tạm dịch:** và bao gồm các phần lý thuyết cũng như thực hành.

**Question9. B**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – từ vựng

Từ **hands-on** trong đoạn 2 có nghĩa gần nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. technical (adj): kĩ thuật B. practical (adj): thực tế

C. theoretical (adj): lý thuyết D. integral (adj): toàn bộ, hợp nhất

=> hands-on (adj) = practical

**Thông tin:** but you will also have **hands-on** experience in your job.

**Tạm dịch:** mà còn có kinh nghiệm thực tế trong công việc của mình.

**Question 10. C**

**Kiến thức:** Đọc hiểu – nhan đề

Câu nào sau đây có lẽ là tiêu đề hay nhất của đoạn văn?

A. Cơ hội việc làm và triển vọng ở Đức => chỉ là chi tiết đoạn 3, các đoạn còn lại không nhắc đến

B. Sự kết hợp giữa lý thuyết và thực hành khi học tập tại Đức => chỉ là chi tiết đoạn 1

C. Hệ thống đào tạo nghề kép ở Đức

D. Hệ thống giáo dục đại học ở Đức => quá rộng, trong bài không nhắc đến toàn bộ hệ thống giáo dục

**Dịch bài đọc**

Một cách đào tạo cho nghề nghiệp tương lai của bạn ở Đức là theo học chương trình đào tạo nghề kép. Các chương trình như vậy mang lại nhiều cơ hội cho đào tạo tại chỗ và kinh nghiệm làm việc. Các chương trình thường kéo dài từ hai đến ba năm rưỡi và bao gồm các phần lý thuyết cũng như thực hành. Bạn sẽ dành một hoặc hai ngày một tuần, hoặc vài tuần cùng một lúc, tại một trường dạy nghề, nơi bạn sẽ có được kiến thức lý thuyết mà bạn sẽ cần cho nghề nghiệp tương lai của mình. Thời gian còn lại sẽ dành cho công ty. Ở đó bạn có thể áp dụng kiến thức mới học được vào thực tế, chẳng hạn bằng cách học vận hành máy móc. Bạn sẽ biết công ty của bạn làm gì, tìm hiểu cách nó hoạt động và tìm hiểu xem tìm hiểu xem liệu bạn có thể thấy mình đang làm việc ở đó sau khi hoàn thành khóa đào tạo hay không.

Sự kết hợp giữa lý thuyết và thực hành này mang lại cho bạn một khởi đầu thực sự trong công việc của mình: khi bạn hoàn thành khóa đào tạo, bạn sẽ không chỉ có kiến thức kỹ thuật cần thiết mà còn có kinh nghiệm thực tế trong công việc của mình. Có khoảng 350 chương trình đào tạo được công nhận chính thức ở Đức, vì vậy rất có thể một trong số đó sẽ phù hợp với sở thích và tài năng của bạn. Bạn có thể biết đó là cái nào bằng cách tham quan một trong những hội chợ đào tạo nghề việc làm được tổ chức ở nhiều thành phố của Đức vào các thời điểm khác nhau trong năm.

Triển vọng việc làm cho sinh viên đã hoàn thành chương trình đào tạo nghề kép là rất tốt. Đây là một trong những lý do tại sao hình thức đào tạo này rất phổ biến với giới trẻ Đức: khoảng 2/3 tổng số sinh viên rời trường học để bắt đầu một chương trình đào tạo nghề.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 11 to 17.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 11. D** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Lựa chọn nào sau đây làm tiêu đề tốt nhất của bài viết?  **A.** Cách làm khẩu trang phẫu thuật **B.** Công dụng của khẩu trang phẫu thuật  **C.** Khẩu trang phẫu thuật trong quá khứ **D.** Khẩu trang phẫu thuật  **Giải thích:** Đoạn văn chủ yếu nói về kiến thức chung về khẩu trang phẫu thuật từ tên gọi, độ dày, công dụng, cách dùng và cách vứt bỏ đúng cách nên phương án D phù hợp nhất. |
| **Question 12. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**21 CFR 878.4040 rất có thể được đề cập trong đoạn 1 như một \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** tiêu chuẩn phải tuân theo **B.** thiết kế khẩu trang  **C.** số sê-ri khẩu trang **D.** số mẫu khẩu trang  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Surgical masks are regulated under 21 CFR 878.4040.” |
| **Question 13. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**They**” trong đoạn 1 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** Rào cản vật lý **B.** Chất gây ô nhiễm  **C.** Khẩu trang phẫu thuật **D.** Tấm chắn mặt  **Giải thích:** “**Surgical masks** are not to be shared and may be labeled as surgical, isolation, dental, or medical procedure masks. **They** may come with or without a face shield.” |
| **Question 14. B** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**contain**” trong đoạn 3 nhiều khả năng có nghĩa là \_\_\_.  **A.** phản ánh **B.** mang theo  **C.** yêu cầu **D.** bảo vệ  **Giải thích:** contain (v.) có nghĩa là “chứa đựng”, gần nghĩa nhất với phương án B. |
| **Question 15. B** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Điều nào sau đây là ĐÚNG, theo đoạn văn?  **A.** Tất cả các khẩu trang phẫu thuật có cùng độ dày và khả năng bảo vệ.  **B.** Tiếp xúc với nước bọt và dịch tiết đường hô hấp có thể được giảm bằng khẩu trang phẫu thuật.  **C.** Khẩu trang phẫu thuật có thể chặn giọt bắn và giọt nước kể cả các hạt rất nhỏ.  **D.** Bạn chỉ phải thay khẩu trang của mình bằng một cái mới khi nó bị hỏng.  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Surgical masks may also help reduce exposure of your saliva and respiratory secretions to others.” |
| **Question 16. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**transmitted**” trong đoạn 4 có nghĩa gần nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** lây truyền **B.** giới thiệu  **C.** sản xuất **D.** cam kết  **Giải thích:** transmitted (v.pp.) có nghĩa là “lây nhiễm”, gần nghĩa nhất với phương án A. |
| **Question 17. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Tại sao khẩu trang phẫu thuật KHÔNG cung cấp sự bảo vệ hoàn toàn khỏi vi trùng?  **A.** Khẩu trang phẫu thuật không được thiết kế để đeo với tấm chắn mặt.  **B.** Có quá nhiều nước bọt và dịch tiết hô hấp trong không khí.  **C.** Các hạt rất nhỏ có thể truyền qua sự kết hợp lỏng lẻo giữa khẩu trang và mặt.  **D.** Khẩu trang phẫu thuật dễ bị bẩn.  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Surgical masks also do not provide complete protection from germs and other contaminants because of the loose fit between the surface of the face mask and your face.” |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Khẩu trang phẫu thuật là một thiết bị dùng một lần, đeo lỏng và thoải mái, tạo ra một rào cản vật lý giữa miệng và mũi của người đeo và các chất gây ô nhiễm tiềm ẩn trong môi trường ngay lập tức. Khẩu trang phẫu thuật được quy định theo 21 CFR 878.4040. Khẩu trang phẫu thuật không được dùng chung và có thể được dán nhãn là khẩu trang phẫu thuật, khẩu trang cách ly, khẩu trang nha khoa hoặc y tế. Chúng có thể đi kèm hoặc không kèm tấm chắn mặt. Chúng thường được gọi là khẩu trang, mặc dù không phải tất cả các khẩu trang đều được quy định là khẩu trang phẫu thuật.

Khẩu trang phẫu thuật được chế tạo ở các độ dày khác nhau và với khả năng khác nhau để bảo vệ bạn khỏi tiếp xúc với chất lỏng. Những đặc tính này cũng có thể ảnh hưởng đến việc bạn có thể thở dễ dàng như thế nào qua khẩu trang và khẩu trang phẫu thuật bảo vệ bạn tốt như thế nào.

Nếu đeo đúng cách, khẩu trang phẫu thuật có thể dùng để giúp chặn các hạt nhỏ, bắn tung tóe, phun hoặc xịt tung tóe có thể chứa vi trùng (vi rút và vi khuẩn), giữ cho nó không đến miệng và mũi của bạn. Khẩu trang phẫu thuật cũng có thể giúp giảm tiếp xúc với nước bọt và dịch tiết đường hô hấp của bạn cho người khác.

Mặc dù khẩu trang phẫu thuật có thể có hiệu quả trong việc ngăn chặn các hạt bắn và các hạt nhỏ, nhưng khẩu trang theo thiết kế không lọc hoặc chặn các hạt rất nhỏ trong không khí có thể truyền qua ho, hắt hơi hoặc một số thủ tục y tế. Khẩu trang phẫu thuật cũng không cung cấp sự bảo vệ hoàn toàn khỏi vi trùng và các chất gây ô nhiễm khác vì sự phù hợp lỏng lẻo giữa bề mặt của khẩu trang và khuôn mặt của bạn.

Khẩu trang phẫu thuật không được sử dụng nhiều hơn một lần. Nếu khẩu trang của bạn bị hỏng hoặc bẩn, hoặc nếu việc thở qua khẩu trang trở nên khó khăn, bạn nên tháo khẩu trang, vứt bỏ nó một cách an toàn và thay thế bằng một cái mới. Để loại bỏ khẩu trang của bạn một cách an toàn, hãy đặt nó vào một túi nhựa và bỏ vào thùng rác. Rửa tay sau khi xử lý khẩu trang đã sử dụng.

**FURTHER PRACTICE 3**

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 1 to 5.***

Wind is a clean source of renewable energy that produces no air or water pollution. And since the wind is free, operational costs are nearly zero (1) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a turbine is erected. Mass production and technology advances are making turbines cheaper, and (2) \_\_\_\_\_\_ governments offer tax incentives to spur wind-energy development.

Drawbacks include complaints from (3) \_\_\_\_\_\_ that wind turbines are ugly and noisy. The slowly rotating blades can also kill birds and bats, but not nearly as many as cars, power lines, and high-rise buildings do. The wind is also variable: If it's not blowing, there's no electricity generated.

Nevertheless, the wind energy industry is (4) \_\_\_\_\_\_ . Thanks to global efforts to combat climate change, such as the Paris Agreement, renewable energy is seeing a boom in growth, in (5) \_\_\_\_\_\_ wind energy has led the way. From 2000 to 2015, cumulative wind capacity around the world increased from 17,000 megawatts to more than 430,000 megawatts. In 2015, China also surpassed the EU in the number of installed wind turbines and continues to lead installation efforts.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.nationalgeographic.com/*](https://www.nationalgeographic.com/)*)*

1. A. so that B. though C. therefore D. once
2. A. many B. little C. much D. a little
3. A. foreigners B. masters C. locals D. levels
4. A. worrying B. booming C. informing D. relating
5. A. who B. when C. why D. which

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 6 to 10.***

The coronavirus is usually transmitted by droplets, such as those produced when coughing and sneezing, and by direct or indirect contact with secretions infected by the virus. The virus may also shed in blood, urine and faeces, and, therefore, there is potential for transmission through contact with a wide range of bodily fluids. Certainly, person-to-person spread has been confirmed in community and healthcare settings across Asia and into Europe. There is also a possibility that asymptomatic carriers may be able to infect people. Public Health England (PHE) has classified the COVID-19 infection as an airborne, high consequence infectious disease (HCID) in the UK.

The application of infection prevention and control (IPC) principles are already widely used by healthcare professionals within hospital and community settings to both prevent the spread of infections and to control outbreaks when they do occur. The WHO has issued **interim** guidance regarding IPC when COVID-19 is suspected. This advice is echoed by guidance issued by PHE. Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

PHE suggests the coronavirus may pose complications, such as illness pneumonia or severe acute respiratory infection. **They** also suggest that patients with long-term conditions or are immunocompromised are at risk of these complications. It is important that as first-line staff, midwives are also familiar with the recommended IPC principles and measures, and ensure they have the appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) when caring for a patient with suspected COVID-19.

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

A. the problems related to the coronavirus

B. epidemic situation in England caused by coronavirus

C. advice for those who infected with coronavirus

D. how the coronavirus is transmitted and ways to prevent infection

1. The coronavirus can be found in all of the following EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. blood B. clothes C.urine D. faeces

1. The word “interim” in paragraph 2 mostly means \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. temporary B. everlasting C. permanent D. effective

1. According to the last paragraph, who are at risk of illness pneumonia or severe acute respiratory infection?

A. people working in the WHO B. employees of Public Health England

C. those with long-term conditions D. first-line staff like midwives

1. What does the word “They” in the last paragraph refer to?

A. IPC B. WHO C. PHE D. COVID-19

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 11 to 17.***

The authors noted that while other forms of pollution are decreasing, noise pollution has been increasing. This conclusion is reinforced by the fact that there has been an increase in the number of people who have been complaining about excessive noise in the WHO region. Populations that are exposed to high noise levels can be **afflicted** by other symptoms such as: stress reactions, sleep-stage changes, and clinical symptoms like hypertension and cardiovascular diseases. All these impacts can contribute to **premature** mortality. It is important to note that these adverse health problems impact all age groups including children and adolescents. In fact, it has been reported that children who live and or study in an area afflicted with noise pollution tend to suffer from stress, impairments in memory and attention as well as difficulty reading.

“In Western Europe, the guidelines say, traffic noise results in an annual loss of at least one million healthy years”. Traffic noise is currently ranked second among environmental threats to public health.

The danger of noise pollution is more present to us when we are asleep. Because the human ear is so sensitive, it never rests, it is always working, picking up and transmitting sounds for our brains to interpret. **This** always on working process is where the danger lies, though you may be sleeping, sounds are still being picked up and processed. The most common side effects of this phenomenon are sleep disturbance and tiredness, impaired memory, judgment, and psychomotor skills. The other more serious outcomes of this can be the triggering of the body’s acute stress response, which raises blood pressure and heart rate as the body and brain go into a state of hyperarousal. According to the European Environment Agency, at least 10,000 cases of premature deaths from noise exposure occur each year, although incomplete data mean this number is significantly underestimated.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.encida.dk/*](https://www.encida.dk/)*)*

1. Which of the following best serves as the title for the article?

A. Noise in the WHO region B. Increase in noise, Increase in risk

C. Health problems and Age groups D. Side effects of tiredness

1. The word “afflicted” in paragraph 1 most probably means \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. assumed B. illustrated C. described D. affected

1. Which is NOT mentioned in the article as a symptoms caused by exposure to high noise levels?

A. stress reactions B. hypertension

C. staying highly alert D.cardiovascular diseases

1. The word “premature” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. early B. quick C. late D. slow

1. In Western Europe, an annual loss of at least one million healthy years is resulted from \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. guidelines B. public health

C. environmental threats D. traffic noise

1. Which of the following is infered according to the article?

A. Many forms of pollution, except for noise pollution, are decreasing.

B. Adverse health problems impact children and adolescents only.

C. The danger of noise pollution is less serious when we are asleep.

D. At least 100,000 cases of premature deaths from noise exposure occur each year.

1. The word “This” in paragraph 3 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. side effect B. sound C. human ear D. the danger

**ĐÁP ÁN 3**

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 1 to 5.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 1. D** | **Giải thích:** Sau chỗ trống là mệnh đề nên cần điền liên từ. Phương án D phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** so that (conj.): để mà **B.** though (conj.): mặc dù  **C.** therefore (adv.): do đó **D.** once (conj.): một khi |
| **Question 2. A** | **Giải thích:** Sau chỗ trống là danh từ đếm được ở số nhiều nên chỉ phương án A phù hợp. |
| **Question 3. C** | **Giải thích:** Chỉ phương án C phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** foreigners (n.): người nước ngoài **B.** masters (n.): bậc thầy  **C.** locals (n.): dân địa phương **D.** levels (n.): trình độ |
| **Question 4. B** | **Giải thích:** Phương án B phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** worrying (V\_ing): lo lắng **B.** booming (V\_ing): bùng nổ  **C.** informing (V\_ing): thông báo **D.** relating (V\_ing): liên quan |
| **Question 5. D** | **Giải thích:** Đại từ quan hệ “which” thay cho danh từ chỉ sự vật “boom in growth”, các lựa chọn khác không có chức năng này. |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Gió là một nguồn năng lượng tái tạo sạch, không tạo ra ô nhiễm không khí hoặc nước. Và vì gió là miễn phí, chi phí vận hành gần như bằng không khi tuabin được dựng lên. Những tiến bộ công nghệ và sản xuất số lượng lớn đang làm cho tua-bin rẻ hơn, và nhiều chính phủ đưa ra các ưu đãi về thuế để thúc đẩy sự phát triển năng lượng gió.

Hạn chế bao gồm khiếu nại từ người dân địa phương rằng tuabin gió xấu xí và ồn ào. Cánh quạt quay chậm cũng có thể giết chết chim và dơi, nhưng không nhiều như ô tô, đường dây điện và các tòa nhà cao tầng thường gây ra. Gió cũng thay đổi: Nếu trời không có gió, sẽ không có điện.

Tuy nhiên, ngành công nghiệp năng lượng gió đang bùng nổ. Nhờ những nỗ lực toàn cầu để chống biến đổi khí hậu, như Thỏa thuận Paris, năng lượng tái tạo đang chứng kiến ​​sự bùng nổ tăng trưởng, trong đó năng lượng gió đang dẫn đầu. Từ năm 2000 đến 2015, công suất năng lượng gió tích lũy trên toàn thế giới đã tăng từ 17.000 megawatt lên hơn 430.000 megawatt. Năm 2015, Trung Quốc cũng đã vượt qua EU về số lượng tua-bin gió được lắp đặt và tiếp tục dẫn đầu các nỗ lực lắp đặt.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 6 to 10.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 6. D** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Ý chính của đoạn văn là gì?  A. các vấn đề liên quan đến coronavirus  B. tình hình dịch ở Anh do coronavirus gây ra  C. lời khuyên cho những người bị nhiễm coronavirus  D. cách coronavirus lây nhiễm và cách ngăn ngừa nhiễm trùng  **Giải thích:** Đoạn văn chủ yếu nói về con đường lây nhiễm của virus corona và việc cần làm để phòng tránh lây nhiễm. |
| **Question 7. B** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Có thể tìm thấy coronavirus trong tất cả những thứ sau đây ngoại trừ \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** máu **B.** quần áo  **C.** nước tiểu **D.** phân  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “The virus may also shed in blood, urine and faeces, and, therefore, there is potential for transmission through contact with a wide range of bodily fluids.” |
| **Question 8. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**interim**” trong đoạn 2 nhiều khả năng có nghĩa là \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** tạm thời **B.** vĩnh cửu  **C.** vĩnh viễn **D.** hiệu quả  **Giải thích:** Từ “interim” có nghĩa là “tạm thời”, gần nghĩa với phương án A. |
| **Question 9. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Theo đoạn cuối, ai có nguy cơ mắc bệnh viêm phổi hoặc nhiễm trùng đường hô hấp cấp tính nặng?  **A.** những người làm việc trong WHO **B.** nhân viên Y tế công cộng Anh  **C.** những người có bệnh nền lâu dài **D.** nhân viên tuyến đầu như nữ hộ sinh  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “They also suggest that patients with long-term conditions or are immunocompromised are at risk of these complications.” |
| **Question 10. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**They**” trong đoạn cuối đề cập đến điều gì?  **A.** IPC **B.** WHO  **C.** PHE **D.** COVID-19  **Giải thích:** “**PHE** suggests the coronavirus may pose complications,… **They** also suggest that patients with long-term conditions…”. Từ “They ” chỉ PHE đã nhắc đến trong câu trước. |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Virus corona thường được truyền qua các giọt nhỏ, chẳng hạn như những giọt được tạo ra khi ho và hắt hơi, và do tiếp xúc trực tiếp hoặc gián tiếp với các chất tiết bị nhiễm virus. Virus cũng có thể chảy trong máu, nước tiểu và phân, và do đó, có khả năng lây truyền qua tiếp xúc với một loạt các chất dịch cơ thể. Chắc chắn, sự lây lan từ người sang người đã được xác nhận trong các môi trường cộng đồng và chăm sóc sức khỏe trên khắp Châu Á và Châu Âu. Cũng có khả năng người mang mầm bệnh không triệu chứng có thể lây nhiễm cho người. Y tế công cộng Anh (PHE) đã phân loại nhiễm COVID-19 là một bệnh truyền nhiễm có hậu quả cao (HCID) trong không khí ở Anh.

Việc áp dụng các nguyên tắc phòng ngừa và kiểm soát nhiễm trùng (IPC) đã được sử dụng rộng rãi bởi các chuyên gia chăm sóc sức khỏe trong môi trường bệnh viện và cộng đồng để ngăn ngừa sự lây lan của nhiễm trùng và kiểm soát dịch bệnh khi chúng xảy ra. WHO đã ban hành hướng dẫn tạm thời về phòng ngừa và kiểm soát nhiễm trùng khi nghi ngờ COVID-19. Lời khuyên này được lặp lại bởi hướng dẫn do PHE ban hành.

PHE cho thấy coronavirus có thể gây ra các biến chứng, như viêm phổi do bệnh hoặc nhiễm trùng đường hô hấp cấp tính nặng. Họ cũng đề nghị những bệnh nhân có bệnh nền lâu dài hoặc bị suy giảm miễn dịch có nguy cơ bị các biến chứng này. Điều quan trọng là với tư cách là nhân viên tuyến đầu, các nữ hộ sinh cũng quen thuộc với các nguyên tắc và biện pháp phòng ngừa và kiểm soát nhiễm trùng được khuyến nghị và đảm bảo họ có thiết bị bảo vệ cá nhân (PPE) phù hợp khi chăm sóc bệnh nhân nghi ngờ COVID-19.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 11 to 17.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 11. B** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Lựa chọn nào sau đây làm tiêu đề tốt nhất cho bài viết?  **A.** Tiếng ồn ở khu vực WHO **B.** Tăng tiếng ồn, Tăng nguy cơ  **C.** Vấn đề sức khỏe và nhóm tuổi **D.** Tác dụng phụ của mệt mỏi  **Giải thích:** Bài đọc chủ yếu nói về sự gia tăng nguy cơ đối với sức khỏe con người khi ô nhiễm tiếng ồn tăng lên nên phương án B phù hợp nhất. |
| **Question 12. D** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**afflicted**” trong đoạn 3 nhiều khả năng có nghĩa là \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** giả định **B.** minh họa  **C.** mô tả **D.** bị ảnh hưởng  **Giải thích:** “afflicted” có nghĩa là “bị tác động”, gần nghĩa với phương án D. |
| **Question 13. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Điều nào KHÔNG được đề cập trong bài báo là triệu chứng do tiếp xúc với mức độ tiếng ồn cao?  **A.** phản ứng căng thẳng **B.** tăng huyết áp  **C.** cảnh giác cao **D.** bệnh tim mạch  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Populations that are exposed to high noise levels can be afflicted by other symptoms such as: stress reactions, sleep-stage changes, and clinical symptoms like hypertension and cardiovascular diseases.” |
| **Question 14. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**premature**” trong đoạn 4 có nghĩa gần nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** sớm **B.** nhanh  **C.** muộn **D.** chậm  **Giải thích:** “premature” nghĩa là “sớm”, gần nghĩa với phương án A. |
| **Question 15. D** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Ở Tây Âu, tổn thất hàng năm ít nhất một triệu năm khỏe mạnh là do \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** hướng dẫn **B.** sức khỏe cộng đồng  **C.** mối đe dọa môi trường **D.** tiếng ồn giao thông  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “In Western Europe, the guidelines say, traffic noise results in an annual loss of at least one million healthy years.” |
| **Question 16. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Điều nào sau đây là được suy ra theo bài báo?  **A.** Nhiều dạng ô nhiễm, ngoại trừ ô nhiễm tiếng ồn, đang giảm.  **B.** Các vấn đề sức khỏe bất lợi chỉ ảnh hưởng đến trẻ em và thanh thiếu niên.  **C.** Nguy cơ ô nhiễm tiếng ồn ít nghiêm trọng hơn khi chúng ta ngủ.  **D.** Ít nhất 100.000 trường hợp tử vong sớm do tiếp xúc với tiếng ồn xảy ra mỗi năm.  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “The authors noted that while other forms of pollution are decreasing, noise pollution has been increasing.” |
| **Question 17. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**This**” trong đoạn 2 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** tác dụng phụ **B.** âm thanh  **C.** tai người **D.** sự nguy hiểm  **Giải thích:** “Because the **human ear** is so sensitive, it never rests, it is always working, picking up and transmitting sounds for our brains to interpret. **This** always on working process is…” |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Nhiều tác giả lưu ý rằng trong khi các hình thức ô nhiễm khác đang giảm, ô nhiễm tiếng ồn đang gia tăng. Kết luận này được củng cố bởi thực tế là đã có sự gia tăng số lượng người đã phàn nàn về tiếng ồn quá mức trong khu vực WHO. Các quần thể tiếp xúc với mức độ tiếng ồn cao có thể bị ảnh hưởng bởi các triệu chứng khác như: phản ứng căng thẳng, thay đổi giai đoạn giấc ngủ và các triệu chứng lâm sàng như tăng huyết áp và các bệnh tim mạch. Tất cả những tác động này có thể góp phần vào tỷ lệ tử vong sớm. Điều quan trọng cần lưu ý là những vấn đề sức khỏe bất lợi này ảnh hưởng đến tất cả các nhóm tuổi bao gồm trẻ em và thanh thiếu niên. Trên thực tế, đã có báo cáo rằng trẻ em sống và hoặc học tập trong một khu vực bị ô nhiễm tiếng ồn có xu hướng bị căng thẳng, suy giảm trí nhớ và sự chú ý cũng như khó đọc.

 Ở Tây Âu, các hướng dẫn cho biết, tiếng ồn giao thông dẫn đến việc hàng năm mất ít nhất một triệu năm khỏe mạnh. Tiếng ồn giao thông hiện đang đứng thứ hai trong số các mối đe dọa môi trường đối với sức khỏe cộng đồng.

Nguy cơ ô nhiễm tiếng ồn hiện diện nhiều hơn với chúng ta khi chúng ta ngủ. Bởi vì tai của con người rất nhạy cảm, nó không bao giờ nghỉ ngơi, luôn hoạt động, thu nhận và truyền âm thanh cho bộ não của chúng ta để xử lý. Cơ quan này luôn luôn trong quá trình làm việc chính là nơi nguy hiểm xuất hiện, mặc dù bạn có thể đang ngủ, âm thanh vẫn đang được thu lại và xử lý. Các tác dụng phụ phổ biến nhất của hiện tượng này là rối loạn giấc ngủ và mệt mỏi, suy giảm trí nhớ, khả năng phán đoán và kỹ năng tâm lý. Các kết quả nghiêm trọng khác của việc này có thể là sự kích hoạt phản ứng căng thẳng cấp tính của cơ thể, làm tăng huyết áp và nhịp tim khi cơ thể và não bộ rơi vào trạng thái dị ứng. Theo Cơ quan Môi trường châu Âu, ít nhất 10.000 trường hợp tử vong sớm do tiếp xúc với tiếng ồn xảy ra mỗi năm, mặc dù dữ liệu không đầy đủ có nghĩa là con số này đã bị đánh giá thấp đi một cách đáng kể.

**MODULE 29 : FIND OUT MISTAKE**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**
* **3 LOẠI LỖI SAI TRỌNG TÂM.**

|  |
| --- |
| **LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ** |
| **Example 1 :** When I got (A) home, Irene was lying (B) in bed thinking (C) about the wonderful time she has had. (D)  **Đáp án D :**  She has had → she had had  Hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ phải chia ở thì quá khứ hoàn thành  Dịch: Khi tôi về nhà, Irene đang nằm trên giường suy nghĩ về khoảng thời gian tuyệt vời mà cô đã từng có.  **Example 2 :** The disposable (A) camera, a single, used camera (B) preloaded with print film (C) had appeared (D) in the late 1980s and has become very popular.  **Đáp án D :**  In the late 1980s (cuối những năm 1980) là thời gian trong quá khứ nên ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn  Had appeared → appeared  **Dịch :** Máy ảnh đã qua sử dụng, là máy ảnh được sử dụng một lần được tải sẵn phim in đã xuất hiện vào cuối những năm 1980 và đã trở nên rất phổ biến. |
| **LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN ĐẠI TỪ** |
| **Example 1 :** Animals like frogs have (A) waterproof skin that (B) prevents it (C) from drying out quickly in air, sun, or wind. (D)  **Đáp án C :** It them Các danh từ đứng trước “it” là “animals, frogs” đều là số nhiều  it → them  **Dịch :** Động vật như ếch có da không thấm nước ngăn chúng khô nhanh trong không khí, năng hoặc gió.  **Example 2 :** All (A) the judges paid (B) the dancer compliments on their (C) excellent performance in (D) the competition.  **Đáp án C :** Từ cần thay thế là “the dancer”  their → his Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425)  **Dịch :** Tất cả các giám khảo đã dành cho các vũ công lời khen về màn trình diễn xuất sắc của anh ấy trong cuộc thi. |
| **LỖI SAI LIÊN QUAN ĐẾN TỪ GÂY NHẦM LẪN** |
| **Example 1 :** The keynote speaker (A) started with some complementary remarks (B) about the organisers (C) of the conference, and then proceeded (D) with her speech.  **Đáp án B :** Complementary (adj): mang tính bổ sung → complimentary (adj) bày tỏ sự ngưỡng mộ, khen ngợi  **Dịch :** Người diễn giả chủ chốt bắt đầu với một vài lời nhận xét khen ngợi về ban tổ chức của hội thảo, và sau đó tiến hành bài phát biểu của mình.  **Example 2 :** They have carried out exhausting (A) research into (B) the effects of smartphones on schoolchildren's behaviour (C) and their academic performance. (D) (Trích đề thi THPTQG 2018)  **Đáp án A :** Exhausting (adj) làm kiệt sức, làm mệt lử → exhaustive (adj) hết mọi khía cạnh, hết mọi mặt, toàn diện  **Dịch :** Họ đã thực hiện nghiên cứu toàn diện về tác động của điện thoại thông minh đối với hành vi của học sinh và kết quả học tập của chúng. |

* **MỘT SỐ THÌ TRỌNG TÂM (XEM LẠI MODULE 8)**
* **BẢNG ĐẠI TỪ CẦN CHÚ Ý**

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Đại Từ Nhân Xưng** | **Tân Ngữ** | **Đại Từ Phản Thân** | **Đại Từ Sở Hữu** | **Tính Từ Sở Hữu** |
| I | ME | MYSELF | MINE | MY |
| WE | US | OURSELVES | OURS | OUR |
| YOU số nhiều | YOU | YOURSELVES | YOURS | YOUR |
| YOU số ít | YOU | YOURSELF | YOURS | YOUR |
| THEY | THEM | THEMSELVES | THEIRS | THEIR |
| HE | HIM | HIMSELF | HIS | HIS |
| SHE | HER | HERSELF | HERS | HER |
| IT | IT | ITSELF | ITS | ITS |

* **TỪ GÂY NHẦM LẪN CẦN CHÚ Ý**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **TỪ GÂY NHẦM LẪN THÔNG DỤNG THƯỜNG XUẤT HIỆN TRONG ĐỀ THI** | | |
| **STT** | **TỪ DỄ NHẦM** | **NGHĨA** |
| **1** | Uninterested /ʌn’ɪntərestɪd/(a) | Lãnh đạm, thờ ơ, không quan tâm, không chú ý, không để ý |
| Disinterested /dɪ’sɪntrəstɪd/(a) | Vô tư, không vụ lợi, không cầu lợi |
| **2** | Formally /’fɔ:məli/(adv) | (một cách) chính thức |
| Formerly /’fɔ:məli/(adv) | Trước đây |
| **3** | Considerable /kən’sɪdərəbl/(a) | Rất lớn, to tát, đáng kể |
| Considerate /kən’sɪdərət/(a) | Ân cần, chu đáo; cẩn thận, thận trọng |
| **4** | Appreciable /ə’pri:ʃəbl/(a) | Có thể đánh giá, thấy rõ được; đáng kể |
| Appreciative /ə’pri:ʃətɪv/(a) | Biết thưởng thức, biết ơn |
| **5** | Forgettable /fə’getəbl/(a) | Có thể quên được |
| Forgetful /fə’getfl/(a) | Hay quên |
| **6** | Expectation /,ekspek’teɪʃn/(n) | Sự trông chờ, sự hy vọng (của một người) |
| Expectancy /ɪk’spektənsi/(n) | Sự chờ mong, hy vọng (thường liên quan đến khoảng thời gian được dự kiến để điều gì diễn ra) |
| **7** | Respectable /rɪ’spektəbl/(a) | Đáng kính trọng; đứng đắn, đàng hoàng; khá lớn, đáng kể |
| Respective /rɪ’spektɪv/(a) | Riêng của mỗi người/vật; tương ứng |
| Respectful /rɪ’spektfl/(a) | Thể hiện sự tôn trọng, tôn kính, lễ phép |
| **8** | Comprehensible /,kɒmprɪ’hensəbl/(a) | Có thể hiểu được, có thể lĩnh ngộ |
| Comprehensive /,kɒmprɪ’hensɪv/(a) | Bao quát, toàn diện |
| **9** | Beneficent /bə’nefɪsənt/(a) | Hay làm phúc, hay làm việc thiện |
| Beneficial /,benɪ’fɪʃl/(a) | Có ích, có lợi |
| **10** | Complimentary /,kɒmplɪ’mentəri/(a) | Ca ngợi, mời, biếu |
| Complementary /,kɒmplɪ’mentəri/(a) | Bổ sung, bù |
| **11** | Farther /’fɑ:ðə(r)/ (a) | Xa hơn (thường để chỉ khoảng cách vật lý) |
| Further /’fɜ:ðə(r)/ (a) | Xa hơn (dùng để chỉ khoảng cách vật lý cũng như khoảng cách khác như không gian, thời gian; có thể chỉ mức độ); thêm vào đó |
| **12** | Sensible /’sensəbl/(a) | Biết điều, hợp lý, nhận thấy |
| Sensitive /’sensɪtɪv/(a) | Nhạy cảm, dễ bị tổn thương, truyền cảm, thông cảm |
| **13** | Responsible /rɪ’spɒnsəbl/(a) | Chịu trách nhiệm; đáng tin cậy |
| Responsive /rɪ’spɒnsɪv/(a) | Đáp lại, phản ứng nhanh nhẹn |
| **14** | Successful /sək’sesfl/(a) | Thành công |
| Successive /sək’sesɪv/(a) | Liên tiếp, kế tiếp |
| **15** | Classical /’klæsɪkl/(a) | Cổ điển, thuộc về truyền thống lâu đời |
| Classic /’klæsik/(a) | Kinh điển |
| **16** | Deadly/’dedli/(a) | Chết người; cực kỳ, hết sức |
| Deathly /’deθli/(a) | Như chết |
| **17** | Continual /kən’tɪnjʊəl/(a) | Liên tục nhưng có ngắt quãng |
| Continuous /kən’tɪnjʊəs/(a) | Liên tục, không ngừng |
| **18** | Economical /,i:kə’nɒmɪkl/(a) | Tiết kiệm (thời gian, tiền,...) |
| Economic /,i:kə’nɒmɪk/(a) | Thuộc về kinh tế |
| **19** | Specifically /spə’sɪfɪkli/(adv) | Đặc biệt (dùng để chỉ một việc gì đó được thực hiện vì một mục đích đặc biệt nào đó) |
| Especially /ɪ’speʃəli/(adv) | Đặc biệt (dùng để chỉ một điều gì đó mà bạn nói đến có sự đặc biệt nhiều hơn thứ khác) |
| **20** | Terrible /’terəbl/(a) | Khủng khiếp, rất tồi, rất chán, không ra gì |
| Terrific /tə’rɪfɪk/(a) | Tuyệt vời |
| **21** | Favourite /’feɪvərɪt/(a) | Được yêu thích, yêu thích nhất |
| Favourable /’feɪvərəbl/(a) | Thuận lợi, tỏ ý tán thành |
| **22** | Awful /’ɔ:ful/(a) | Đáng sợ, khủng khiếp, mang tính tiêu cực |
| Awesome /’ɔ:səm/(a) | Đáng kính sợ (miêu tả sự ngạc nhiên, thú vị, mang tính tích cực) |
| **23** | Historical /hɪ’stɒrɪkl/(a) | Thuộc lịch sử (thường mô tả cái gì đó liên quan đến quá khứ hoặc việc nghiên cứu lịch sử hay cái gì đó được thực hiện ở quá khứ) |
| Historic /hɪ’stɒrɪk/(a) | Có tính chất lịch sử (thường được dùng để miêu tả cái gì đó rất quan trọng đến độ người ta phải ghi nhớ nó) |
| **24** | Imaginary /ɪ’mædʒɪnəri/(a) | Tưởng tượng |
| Imaginative /ɪ’mædʒɪnətɪv/(a) | Giàu trí tưởng tượng |
| Imaginable /ɪ’mædʒɪnəbl/(a) | Có thể tưởng tượng được |
| **25** | Restful /’restfl/(a) | Tạo không khí nghỉ ngơi thoải mái, yên tĩnh |
| Restless /’restləs/(a) | Luôn luôn động đậy, không yên, bồn chồn |
| **26** | Industrial /ɪn’dʌstriəl/(a) | Thuộc công nghiệp |
| Industrious /ɪn’dʌstriəs/(a) | Cần cù, siêng năng |
| **27** | Dependent /dɪ’pendənt/(a) | Dựa vào, ỷ lại, phụ thuộc |
| Dependable /dɪ’pendəbl/(a) | Có thể tin cậy được |
| **28** | Every dayfadv) | Mỗi ngày (trong một thời kỳ, giai đoạn), rất thường xuyên |
| Everyday(a) | Thông thường, lệ thường, hằng ngày |
| **29** | Effective /ɪ’fektɪv/(a) | Có hiệu quả (được dùng để nói về việc tạo ra/đạt được kết quả như mong muốn) |
| Efficient /ɪ’fɪʃnt/(a) | Có hiệu suất cao (máy móc cao), nũng suất cao (con người), dùng để chỉ cách làm việc tốt mà không phí thời gian, công sức, tiền bạc |
| **30** | Principle /’prɪnsəpl/(a) | Nguyên lý, nguyên tắc |
| Principal /’prɪnsəpl/(a) | Chính, chủ yếu |
| **31** | Later /’leɪtər/(adv) | Sau này, một thời điểm ở tương lai |
| Latter /’lætər/(n) | Cái sau, người sau (trong số 2 người) |
| **32** | Illicit /ɪ’lɪsɪt/(a) | Trái phép, lậu, vụng trộm |
| Elicit /ɪ’lɪsɪt/(v) | Moi ra |
| **33** | Entrance /’entrəns/(n) | Lối vào, cửa vào; quyền, khả năng của ai để đi vào nơi nào |
| Entry /’entri/(n) | Sự đi vào; quá trình người/vật trở thành một phần của cái gì đó |
| **34** | Drastically /’dræstɪkli/(adv) | Một cách mạnh mẽ, quyết liệt |
| Dramatically /drə’mætɪkli/(adv) | Đột ngột |
| **35** | Package /’pækɪdʒ/(n) | Gói đồ, kiện hàng, hộp để đóng hàng |
| Packaging /’pækɪdʒɪr)/(n) | Bao bì |
| **36** | Percent /pə’sent/(n) | Phần trăm |
| Percentage /pə’sentɪdʒ/(n) | Tỷ lệ phần trăm |
| **37** | Desert /’dezət/(n) | Rời đi, bỏ đi; sa mạc |
| Dessert /dɪ’zɜ:t/(n) | Món tráng miệng |
| **38** | Felicitate /fə’lɪsɪteɪt/(v) | Khen ngợi, chúc mừng |
| Facilitate /fə’sɪlɪteɪt/(v) | Tạo điều kiện dễ dàng |
| **39** | Heroin /’herəʊɪn/(n) | Heroin, thuốc phiện |
| Heroine /’herəʊɪn/(n) | Nữ anh hùng |
| **40** | Compliment /’kɒmplɪmənt/(n) | Lời khen ngợi, lời chúc mừng |
| Complement /’kɒmplɪment/(n) | Phần bổ sung, số lượng cần thiết |
| **41** | Intensive /ɪn’tensɪv/(a) | Tập trung, sâu, nhấn mạnh, cực kỳ kỹ lưỡng |
| Extensive /ɪk’stensɪv/(a) | Rộng, rộng lớn |
| **42** | Foul /faʊl/(n) | Hôi, bẩn |
| Error /’erə[r]/(n) | Sai sót, sai lầm |
| **43** | Sometime /’sʌmtaɪm/(adv) | Trước kia, nguyên |
| Sometimes /’sʌmtaɪmz/(adv) | Đôi khi, đôi lúc |
| **44** | Beside /bɪ’saɪd/(prep) | Bên cạnh |
| Besides /bɪ’saɪdz/(adv) | Ngoài ra, hơn nữa, vả lại |
| **45** | Advisory /əd’vaɪzəri/(n) | Tư vấn |
| Advisable /əd’vaɪzəbl/(n) | Nên, đáng theo; khôn ngoan |
| **46** | Suggested /sə’dʒestɪd/(a) | Được gợi ý |
| Suggestible /sə’dʒestəbl/(a) | Dễ bị ảnh hưởng |
| **47** | Ingredient /ɪn’gri:diənt/(n) | Thành phần (thường trong đồ ăn) |
| Component /kəm’pəʊnənt/(n) | Nhân tố cấu thành (thường dùng trong máy móc) |
| **48** | Wound /wu:nd/(v) | bị thương trong 1 cuộc chiến, đánh nhau (bị thương bởi súng, dao, hoặc vật gì đó) |
| Injure /’ɪndʒə(r)/(v) | Bị thương vì tai nạn |
| **49** | Confident /’kɒnfɪdənt/(a) | Tin tưởng, tin, tự tin |
| Confidential /,kɒnfɪ’denʃl/(a) | Kín, mật |
| **50** | Invent /ɪn’vent/(v) | Phát minh, sáng chế |
| Discover /dɪs’kʌvə(r)/(v) | Phát hiện, tìm ra, khám phá |
| **51** | Ignore /ɪg’nɔ:r/(v) | Làm ngơ, bỏ qua, không chú ý tới |
| Neglect /nɪ’glekt/(v) | Không quan tâm, lơ là |
| **52** | Found /faʊnd/(v) | Thành lập, sáng lập |
| Found /faʊnd/(v) | Quá khứ đơn và quá khứ phân từ của động từ “find” |
| **53** | Lie - lied - lied(v) | Nói dối (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ) |
| Lie - lay - lain(v) | Nằm xuống (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ) |
| Lay - laid - laid(v) | Để, đặt cái gì (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ) |
| **54** | Prolong /prə’lɒŋ/(v) | Kéo dài (ngoại động từ) |
| Last /lɑ:st/(v) | Kéo dài (nội động từ) |
| **55** | Drop /drɒp/(v) | Rơi, nhảy xuống, giảm xuống (nhiệt độ, gió, mực nước,...) |
| Reduce /rɪ’dju:s/ (v) | Giảm, hạ (ngoại động từ) |
| **56** | Rise /raɪz/(v) | Gia tăng về số lượng (là nội động từ) |
| Raise /reɪz/(v) | Gia tăng, nâng một cái gì từ vị trí thấp lên vị trí cao hơn (là ngoại động từ) |
| **57** | Finally /’faɪnəli/(adv) | Cuối cùng, để kết luận( được dùng để giới thiệu một điểm, một mục cuối cùng hay hỏi một câu sau cùng) |
| Eventually /ɪ’ventʃʊəli/(adv) | Rốt cuộc, cuối cùng (để nói về những gì xảy ra trong giai đoạn cuối của một loạt sự kiện, và thường là kết quả của chúng) |
| **58** | A while | Một khoảng thời gian (cụm danh từ) |
| Awhile /ə’waɪl/ | Một lát, một chốc (phó từ) |
| **59** | Reward /rɪ’wɔ:d/(n) | Phần thưởng, thưởng (dùng để đền bù hay công nhận sự nỗ lực, sự đóng góp, sự vất vả của một cá nhân; dưới hình thức tiền hay được thăng chức) |
| Award /ə’wɔ:d/(n) | Trao thưởng, giải thưởng (dùng để trao trong những dịp quan trọng, một minh chứng thành tích, sự xuất sắc của một cá nhân và được hội đồng thông qua, thường dưới hình thức huy chương, giấy chứng nhận, danh hiệu, cúp,...) |
| **60** | Forget /fə’get/(v) | Quên, bỏ quên |
| Leave /li:v/(v) | Bỏ lại, để lại, bỏ quên (ở một nơi nào đó, có địa điểm cụ thể) |
| **61** | Persuade /pə’sweɪd/(v) | Thuyết phục ai đó làm gì vì hợp lý |
| Convince /kən’vɪns/(v) | Thuyết phục ai tin vào điều gì đó |
| **62** | Expand /ɪk’spænd/(v) | (Làm cho) trở nên lớn hơn về kích cỡ, số lượng, hoặc tầm quan trọng |
| Extend /ɪk’stend/(v) | Làm cho cái gì đó dài ra hơn, thêm rộng hơn, lớn hơn. (thường là nghĩa đen, như cái nhà, cái hàng rào, con đường, hay một khu vực,...); kéo dài hiệu lực |
| **63** | Assurance /ə’ʃɔ:rəns/(n) | Được dùng để chỉ “bảo hiểm nhân mạng” (life assurance). Khi tham gia hệ thống bảo hiểm này, bạn đều đặn nộp tiền cho công ty bảo hiểm. Khi bạn qua đời, thân nhân của bạn sẽ lĩnh được một số tiền. |
| Insurance /in’ʃɔ:rəns/(n) | Hợp đồng do một công ty hoặc tổ chức xã hội, hoặc nhà nước làm để đảm bảo đền bù, mất mát, thiệt hại, ốm đau,... bằng việc bạn đóng tiền thường kỳ. |
| **64** | Stationary /’steɪʃənri/(a) | Đứng yên, để một chỗ, không thay đổi |
| Stationery /’steɪʃnənri/(n) | Văn phòng phẩm |
| **65** | Immigrate /’ɪmɪgrənt/(v) | Nhập cư |
| Migrate /maɪ’greɪt/(v) | Di trú (người, chim) |
| **66** | Poster /’pəʊstə(r)/(n) | Áp phích lớn, tờ quảng cáo lớn |
| Porter /’pɔ:tə(r)/(n) | Công nhân khuân vác, người trực ở cổng |
| **67** | Drought /draʊt/(n) | Hạn hán |
| Draught /drɑ:ft/(n) | Gió lùa |
| **68** | Unnecessary /ʌn’nesəsri/(a) | Không cần thiết (thừa), không có lý do, vô cớ |
| Needless /’ni:dləs/(a) | Không cần thiết |
| **69** | Shadow /’ʃædəʊ/(n) | Bóng của người hay vật |
| Shade /ʃeɪd/(n) | Bóng mát, bóng râm |
| **70** | Sink /sɪŋk/(v) | Chìm (áp dụng cho cả người, động vật và đồ vật) |
| Drown /draʊn/(v) | Chết đuối, chết chìm ( dùng khi nói về sinh vật). |
| **71** | Lend /lend/(v) | Cho mượn, cho vay |
| Borrow /’bɒrəʊ/(v) | Vay, mượn từ ai |
| **72** | Mend /mend/(v) | Thường được sử dụng để diễn tả sự sửa chữa trên những chất liệu mềm, những vật liệu hữu cơ dễ sửa chữa hoặc những sự vật hiện tượng mang tính tinh thần |
| Repair /rɪ’peər/(v) | Dùng khi một phần nào đó của một vật hoặc hệ thống cần được sửa chữa |
| **73** | Disuse /dɪs’ju:s/(v) | Sự bỏ không dùng đến |
| Misuse /mɪs’ju:z/(v) | Dùng sai |
| **74** | Recognize /’rekəgnaɪz/(v) | Nhận diện (bằng việc nhìn bằng mắt), phân biệt, nhận ra ai đó |
| Realize /’rɪəlaɪz/(v) | Cảm nhận, nhận biết, nhận thức được, hiểu ra |
| **75** | Climate /’klaɪmət/ (n) | Khí hậu, miền khí hậu |
| Climax /’klaɪmæks/ (n) | Cực điểm, tột đỉnh |
| **76** | Satisfying /’sætɪsfaɪɪŋ/ (a) | Làm hài lòng, làm thoả mãn (nói về một việc/đồ vật nào đó đáp ứng được nhu cầu và yêu cầu của bạn và quan trọng nhất là cảm giác của bạn khi làm việc/dùng vật đó. Bạn thấy hoàn toàn thỏa mãn/hài lòng). |
| Satisfactory /,sætɪs’fæktəri/ (a) | Vừa lòng, vừa ý; thoả mãn (chỉ một việc/vật nào đó khi mức độ hài lòng của người nói đối với việc/đồ vật đó chỉ dừng ở mức tạm chấp nhận được, họ không có gì để than phiền nhưng cũng không thích thú gì với việc/vật đó). |
| **77** | Sacred /’seɪkrɪd/ (a) | Thần thánh, thiêng liêng |
| Scared /skeəd/ (a) | Bị hoảng sợ |
| **78** | Doggy /’dɒgi/ (n) | Chó má, khốn nạn |
| Dogged /’dɒgɪd/ (a) | Bền bỉ, ngoan cường |
| **79** | Application /,æplɪ’keɪʃən/ (n) | Lời xin, đơn xin, sự áp dụng |
| Applicant /’æpləkənt/ (n) | Người xin việc |
| **80** | Employer /ɪm’plɔɪər/ (n) | Ông chủ |
| Employee /ɪm’plɔɪi:/ (n) | Người làm công |
| **81** | Ingenious /ɪn’dʒi:niəs/ (a) | Tài tình, khéo léo |
| Ingenuous /ɪn’dʒenjuəs/ (a) | Chân thật, ngây thơ |
| **82** | Enquiry /’ɪnkwəri/ (n) | Sự đặt câu hỏi, sự thẩm vấn (một yêu cầu đối với sự thật, sự hiểu biết, thông tin) |
| Inquiry /ɪn’kwaɪəri/ (n) | Điều tra về một cái gì đó |
| **83** | Direction /daɪ’rekʃən/ (n) | Chỉ dẫn (dùng cho việc tìm hướng) |
| Instruction /ɪn’strʌkʃən/ (n) | Chỉ dẫn (thông tin về cách làm việc gì đó) |
| **84** | Magic /’mædʒɪk/ (n) (a) | Ma thuật, phép thần thông, sức lôi cuốn, khi là tính từ “magic” dùng trong vai trò làm thuộc ngữ, đứng trước danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa “magic” thường dùng nghĩa đen và một số cụm từ nhất định |
| Magical /’mædʒɪkəl/ (a) | Kỳ diệu, liên quan đến phép thuật, ma thuật, được dùng trong cả vai trò vị ngữ và bổ ngữ |
| **85** | Permissive /pə’mɪsɪv/ (a) | Dễ dãi (nhất là với trẻ em) |
| Permissible /pə’mɪsəbəl/ (a) | Được cho phép, chấp nhận được |
| **86** | Humble /’hʌmbəl/ (a) | Khiêm tốn (vì cảm thấy mình thấp kém) |
| Modest /’mɒdɪst/ (a) | Khiêm tốn (chỉ con người, cách cư xử không muốn khoe khoang) |
| **87** | Sociable /’soʊʃəbəl/ (a) | Hòa đồng, dễ gần gũi |
| Social /’səʊʃəl/ (a) | Thuộc xã hội |
| **88** | Angle /’æŋgəl/ (n) | Góc độ, góc cạnh |
| Angel /’eɪndʒəl/ (n) | Thiên thần, thiên sứ |
| **89** | Dairy /’deəri/ (n) | Nơi làm bơ sữa, cửa hàng bơ sữa |
| Diary /’daɪəri/ (n) | Nhật ký |
| **90** | Devise /dɪ’vaɪz/ (v) | Nghĩ ra, dệt ra, sáng chế |
| Device /dɪ’vaɪs/ (n) | Thiết bị, dụng cụ |
| **91** | Noisy /’nɔɪzi/ (a) | Ồn ào, làm ồn, ầm ĩ |
| Noisome /’nɔɪsəm/ (a) | Khó chịu, hôi thối, ghê tởm |
| **92** | Prosecute /’prɒsɪkju:t/ (v) | Truy tố, tiếp tục, theo đuổi |
| Persecute /’pɜ:sɪkju:t/ (v) | Làm khổ, quấy rối |
| **93** | Practicable /’præktɪkəbəl/ (a) | Làm được, khả thi |
| Practical /’præktɪkəl/ (a) | Thực tế; thiết thực, có ích |
| **94** | Reality /ri’æləti/ (n) | Sự thực, thực tế |
| Realty /’rɪəlti/ (n) | Bất động sản |
| **95** | Residence /’rezɪdəns/ (n) | Sự ở, sự cư trú, nhà ở |
| Resident /’rezɪdənt/ (n) | Cư dân |
| **96** | Moral /’mɒrəl/ (a) | Thuộc đạo đức, thuộc luân lý, có đạo đức |
| Morale /mə’rɑ:l/ (n) | Tinh thần, chí khí; nhuệ khí |
| **97** | Morning /’mɔ:rnɪŋ/ (n) | Buổi sáng, sáng |
| Mourning /’mɔ:rnɪŋ/ (n) | Sự đau buồn, tang, đồ tang |
| **98** | Pretty /’prɪti/ (a) | Xinh xắn, hay, tốt |
| Petty /’peti/ (a) | Nhỏ, vặt, không quan trọng |
| **99** | Marital /’merɪtəl/ (a) | Thuộc chồng, thuộc vợ, thuộc hôn nhân |
| Martial /’mɑ:rʃəl/ (a) | Thuộc quân sự, thuộc chiến tranh |
| **100** | Access /’ækses/ (n) | Lối vào, cửa vào, sự đến gần |
| Excess /’ekses/ (n) | Sự quá mức, sự thái quá |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG TỔNG HỢP CÁC LỖI SAI**

***Mark the letter A, B,C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions***

**1.** **Despite** numerous **hardly** **pushes**, he couldn't **move** the piano.

A. Despite B. hardly C. pushes D. move

***hardly => hard***

**2.** In **the last** two decades, world production of electricity **roughly doubles**, with the **developing** nations **pulling towards** overtaking the developed.

A. the last B. roughly doubles C. developing D. pulling towards

***roughly doubles => has roughly doubled***

**3.** **Each of the** **candidates** enters the **interview** room when **their** name is called.

A. Each of the B. candidates C. interview D. their

***their => his or her***

**4.** Scientists **have** conducted **exhausting** research into the **effects** of violent video games on schoolchildren's academic **performance** and their social skills.

A. have B. exhausting C. effects D. performance

***exhausting => exhaustive***

**5.** Our friends **were** greatly surprised **to see** us, as they **have not expected** us before the **last of** this month.

A. were B. to see C. have not expected D. last of

***have not expected=> had not expected***

**6.** Please could you back **your** car up **a few** feet **so that** I can get **my** out of the drive?

A. your B. a few C. so that D. my

***my=>mine***

**7.** Mr. Sivia looks **extremely** strict and **unfriendly**, but **deeply** down he's a **very** kind person.

A. extremely B. unfriendly C. deeply D. very

***deeply=> deep***

**8.** After the director had finished **giving** his speech, the **head of** the department **has been explaining** in **more detail** about the new procedure.

A. giving B. head of C. has been explaining D. more detail

***has been explaining=> explained***

**9.** Coal, oil, and natural gas supply modern civilization with **most** of **its** power. However, not only are supplies of **this** limited, but **they** are a major source of pollution.

A. most B. its C. this D. they

***this=>these***

**10.** The Friday afternoon **press** **conference** started **lately** because of technical **problems.**

A. press B. conference C. lately D. problems

***lately=> late***

**11.** Her attitude **has** definitely **changed** for **the better** since she **starts** this new job.

A. has B. changed C. the better D. starts

***starts=> started***

**12.** Anyone interested in the **use** of computers can **learn** much if **you** can access to a **personal** computer regularly.

A. use B. learn C. you D. personal

***you=>they***

**13.** Having **played** football **for** an hour, the boy **goes to** wash **immediately**.

A. played B. for C. goes to D. immediately

***goes to=>went to***

**14.** You can **become** more **forgettable** and **less** able to **focus on** when you get older.

A. become B. forgettable C. less D. focus on

***forgettable=> forgetful***

**15.** **Hers** for opening a bank account was turned down **not only** because **it** was incompletely filled out but also it was written in **both** black and blue point pen.

A. Hers B. not only C.it D. both

***Hers=> Her***

**16.** She **served with** him **as** co-president of the Dension University; they **are married** for 39 years **now**.

A. served with B. as C. are married D. now

***are married=>have been married***

**17.** Modern skyscrapers **are** built around the concept of the tube frame **that** is able to better resist lateral loads **such** as wind, seismic forces and impacts, aren't **it**?

A. are B. that C. such D. it

***it=>they***

**18.** **When** Alex **got home** that evening, Jonathan **was painting** in his room and Destiny **cooked** in the kitchen.

A. When B. got home C. was painting D. cooked

***cooked=>was cooking***

**19.** The **scientism** are working on a drug **capable of** t**reating** for the **deadly** coronavirus.

A. scientism B. capable of C. treating D. deadly

***scientism=> scientist***

**20.** Every **magnet** has two poles, called north and south, at opposite ends of **them** at the two ends of a **horseshoes magnet**, **for instance**, or on the two sides of a disc.

A. magnet B. them C.horseshoes magnet D. for instance

***them=>it***

**21.** Last summer, Pask **has tried** a lot of unique **dishe**s **while** he **was traveling** in New York.

A. has tried B. dishes C. while D. was traveling

***has tried=>tried***

**22.** The company is highly **appreciable** of the e**mployees'** **efforts** in conducting its **major** campaign.

A. appreciable B. employees C. efforts D. major

***appreciable=> appreciative***

**23.** The chairperson introduced **his** and **opened** the discussion with **sale**s department about the **differences** between 2 main products.

A. his B. opened C. sales D. differences

***his=> himself***

**24.** He glanced **around** **to make** sure that the audiences **are** ready **to hear** his speech.

A. around B. to make C. are D. to hear

***are=>were***

**25.** **Recently** people **had moved** from the city centers to the **suburbs** for **fresh** air.

A. Recently B. had moved C. suburbs D. fresh

***had moved=> have moved***

**26.** During an **economic** recession, small businesses have been hit **hardly** as **both** business and

private customers cut back on **spending**.

A. economic B. hardly C. both D. spending

***hardly=hard***

**27.** **Can** you **get** an order for me tomorrow? By the time the order **arrives**, I **left** the country.

A. Can B. get C. arrives D. left

***left=>will have left***

**28.** I'm afraid I can't **give** you a general overview of the situation. I can only offer you a **worm's-eye** view that is based on myself experience.

A. give B. worm's-eye C. that D. myself

***myself=>my/my own***

**29.** Many **people** and **organizers** have been making **every** possible effort in order to **save** endangered species.

A. people B. organizers C. every D. save

***organizers=> organization***

**30.** **At** this time next week we **will be participated** in an **opening** ceremony **as** special guests.

A. At B. will be participated C. opening D. as

***will be participated=> will be participating***

**31.** **All** the employees **they** did not agree with the company's **controversial new** policy on the issue relating to **their** occupational safety.

A. All B. they C. controversial new D. their

***they=>themselves***

**32.** You'll **have to** report **yourself** to the chief editor **when** you **will have finished** this work.

A. have to B. yourself C. when D. will have finished

***will have finished=>have finished***

**33.** A woman **was attacked** by three **youth**s **while** she **was jogged** in Central Pa

A. was attacked B. youths C. while D. was jogged

***was jogged=> was jogging***

**34.** Penguins **have** protective countershading with black bodies and white bellies **that** allows **it** to hide from predators like leopard seals and orcas **while** they swim.

A. have B. that C. it D. while

***it=>them***

**35.** She was **worried about** her **driver's license** contest because she **failed** three **times** before.

A. worried about B. driver's license C. failed D. times

***failed=>had failed***

**36.**I **go** to **the** stadium yesterday **to see** the **football match**.

A.go B.the C.to see D.football match

***go => went***

**37.**My son **is playing happily** in **the park** with **their** friends.

A.is playing B.happily C.the park D.their

***their => his***

**38.**Our new **products** are **being** sold very well **due** to **favourite** condition in the market.

A.products B.being C.due D.favourite

***favourite => favourable***

**39.**My mother **and** her **friends** always **went** out **together** every weekend

A.and B.friends C.went D.together

***went => go***

**40.**He **is** a handsome, **intelligent** and **friendly** student **in her** school.

A.is B.intelligent C.friendly D.in her

***in her => in his***

**2. *Sai* *về sự hòa hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ***

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Dạng của động từ** | **Quy tắc** | **Ví dụ** |
| **V(số ít)** | Chủ ngữ là danh từ số ít hoặc danh từ không đếm được | *My son is very obedient.*  *Tea is grown in Thai Nguyen.* |
| Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “Each, Every, Many a... | *Many a politician has promised to make changes.* |
| Chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng “To infinitive hoặc Ving” | *Jogging every day is good for your health.* |
| Chủ ngữ là mệnh đề danh từ | *That trees lose their leaves is a sign of winter.* |
| Chủ ngữ là tựa đề của một bộ phim/cuốn sách.... | *“Tom and Jerry” is my son’s favorite cartoon.* |
| Chủ ngữ là các đại từ bất định: someone/somebody, no one/nobody, everyone/everybody, anything, Something…….. | *Everything seems perfect.* |
| Chủ ngữ là các đại lượng chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, tiền bạc, hay sự đo lường | *Two months is too long for him to wait.* |
| Chủ ngữ là một số danh từ đặc biệt có hình thức số nhiều:  *\*Danh từ tên môn học:* physics (vật lý), mathematics (toán), economics (kinh tế học), linguistics (ngôn ngữ học),politics (chính trị học), genetics (di truyền học), phonetics (ngữ âm học)....  *\*Danh từ tên môn thể thao:*  athletics (môn điền kinh), billiards (bi-da), checkers(cờ dam), darts (phóng lao trong nhà), dominoes (đô mi nô)...  *\*Danh từ tên các căn bệnh:*  Measles (sởi), mumps (quai bị), diabetes (tiểu đường), rabies (bệnh dại), shingles (bệnh lở mình), rickets (còi xương)....  \*Cụm danh từ chỉ tên một số quốc gia, thành phố: The United States (Nước Mỹ), the Philippines (nước Phi-lip-pin ), Wales, Marseilles, Brussels, Athens, Paris.... | *Physics is my favorite subject.*  *Billiards is a game played by two people on a table covered in green cloth, in which a cue is used to hit balls against each other and into pockets around the table.*  *Measles is a dangerous disease.*  *The United States is a powerful country.* |
| A large amount/a great deal of + N(không đếm được) | *A great deal of money is\_spent on this campaign.* |
| Neither (of)/Either of + N(số nhiều) | *Neither answers is correct.* |
| **V(số nhiều)** | Chủ ngữ là danh từ số nhiều | *Apples are more expensive than oranges.* |
| Chủ ngữ là 2 danh từ nối nhau bằng chữ “and”. Tuy nhiên, khi chúng cùng chỉ một người, một bộ, hoặc 1 món ăn thì động từ theo sau chia ở số ít | *My sister and I like listening to classical music.*  *The professor and secretary is on business, (ông giáo sư kiêm thư ký là một người.)* |
| Danh từ không kết thúc bằng “s” nhưng dùng số nhiều: People (người), cattle (gia súc), police (cảnh sát), army(quân đội), children(trẻ em), women(phụ nữ), men(đàn ông), teeth (răng), feet (chân), mice (chuột).... | *Many people are waiting for the bus in the rain.* |
| Chủ ngữ là “the +adj”, chỉ một tập hợp người | *The blind are the people who can’t see anything.* |
| Both + S1 + and + S2 | *Both he and his wife are very generous.* |
| Chủ ngữ là các danh từ luôn tồn tại ở dạng đôi/cặp: eyeglasses, trouser, jeans, shoes, scissors.... | *The scissors are very sharp.* |
| **V(chia theo chủ ngữ đầu tiên)** | Các danh từ nối nhau bằng: as well as, with, together with, along with, accompanied by....  Hai danh từ nối nhau bằng “of” | *Mrs. Smith together with her sons is away for holiday.*  *The study of how living things work is called philosophy.* |
| **V(chia theo chủ ngữ thứ hai)** | Hai danh từ nối nhau bằng cấu trúc: either... or, neither... nor, not only ...but also, ...or...., ...nor..., not...but.... | *Neither she nor her children were inherited from the will.* |
| Chủ ngữ có chứa các cụm “none, some, all, most, majority, minority, half, phân số, phần trăm .... | *Some of the students are late for class.*  *Most of the water is polluted* |
| **V(chia theo 2 cách)** | Trong cấu trúc đảo ngữ với cụm trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn:  Khi cụm trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn được đặt lên đầu câu, động từ hòa hợp với (cụm) danh từ đứng sau động từ. | *On the top of the hill is a temple.* |
| Với chủ ngữ có “no”:  - Nếu sau “no” là danh từ số ít thì động từ chia số ít  - Nếu sau “no” là danh từ số nhiều thì động từ chia số nhiều. | *No money has been invested for this company for 2 months.*  *No lessons were given to US by our teacher this morning.* |
| Gặp các đại từ sở hữu như: mine, his, hers, yours, ours, theirs... thì phải xem cái gì của người đó và nó là số ít hay sô’ nhiều. | *Give me your scissors. Mine have been broken,.* |
| Đối với mệnh đề quan hệ thì chia động từ theo danh từ trong mệnh đề chính. | *One of the girls who go out is very good.* |
| Cấu trúc với “There”:  Cấu trúc với “There” thì ta chia động từ chia theo danh từ phía sau. | *There is a book on the table.*  *There are two books on the table.* |
| Một số danh từ chỉ tập hợp:  Bao gồm các từ như: family, staff, team, group, congress, crowd, committee ....  Nếu chỉ về hành động của từng thành viên thì dùng động từ số nhiều, nếu chỉ về tính chất của tập thể đó như 1 đơn vị thì dùng động từ số ít. | *The family are having breakfast.*  *The family is very conservative.* |
|  | A number of + N (số nhiều ) + V(số nhiều)  The number of + N(số nhiều) + V(số ít) | *A number of students are going to the class picnic.*  *The number of days in a week is seven.* |

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG 2**

1. A basic knowledge of social studies, such as history and geography, are considered

A B C

basic part of the education of every child.

D

2. Lan together with her boyfriends are working in groups to find out

A B C D

the solution to that problem.

3. Each of the members of the group were made to write a report every week.

A B C D

4. 1.6 billion gallons were sold every year, in over one hundred and sixty countries.

A B C D

5. Buying clothes is often a time-consuming practice because those clothes that a

A B

person likes is seldom the ones that fit him or her.

C D

6. Most bacteria has strong cell walls much like those of the plants.

A B C D

7. Measles have not yet been eradicated because of the controversy concerning

A B C D

immunization.

8. Whether life in the countryside is better than that in the city depend on each

A B C

individual’s point of view.

D

9. Never before has so many people in the United States been interested in soccer.

A B C D

10. She is among the few who wants to quit smoking instead of cutting down.

A B C D

11. Each of the nurses report to the operating room when his or her name is called.

A B C D

12. As a result of the Women’s Movement, women now holds positions

A B

that were once restricted to men.

C D

13. One of the students who are being considered for the scholarship

A B C

are from this university.

D

14. Mrs. Steven, along with her cousins from New Mexico, are planning to attend the

A B C D

festivities

15. The mining of minerals often bring about the destruction of landscapes and wildlife

A B C D

habitats.

16. The governor, with his wife and children, are at home watching the election

A B C

returns on TV.

D

17. Neither Russia nor the United States have been able to discover a mutually

A B C

satisfactory plan for gradual disarmament.

D

18. The office furniture that was ordered last month have just arrived, but we’re not sure

A B

whether the manager likes it.

C D

19. What happened in that city were a reaction from city workers, including firemen and

A B C

policemen who had been laid off from their jobs.

D

20. That these students have improved their grades because of their participation in the

A B C D

test review class.

21. There are a car and two vans in front of my house.

A B C D

22. Fifty minutes are the maximum length of time allotted for the exam.

A B C D

23. The world is becoming more industrialized and the number of animal species that

A B

have become extinct have increased.

C D

24. The number of homeless people in Nepal have increased sharply due to the recent

A B C

severe earthquake.

D

25. Upon reaching the destination, a number of personnel is expected to change their

A B C

reservations and proceed to Hawaii.

D

26. The assumption that smoking has bad effects on our health have been proved.

A B C D

27. Neither the Minister nor his colleagues has given an explanation for the chaos in

A B C

the financial market last week.

D

28. On the floor of the Pacific Ocean is hundreds of flat-tipped mountains more than

A B C

a mile beneath sea level.

D

29. The Netherland, with much of its land lying lower than sea level, have system of

A B C

dikes and canals for controlling water.

D

30. Maths were one of his favourite subjects when he was at primary school.

A B C D

***3. Cấu trúc song song: khi hai vế được nối với nhau bằng từ “and” thì hai vế phải ngang bằng, tương đương nhau về từ loại, chức năng.***

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG 3**

1. For more than 450 years, Mexico City has been the economic, culture and political

A B C

centre of Mexican people.

D

2. The lion has long been a symbol of strength, power and it is very cruel.

A B C D

3. Unlike other architects of the early modern movement, Alva Alto stressed

A B

informality, personal expression, romantic, and regionality in his work.

C D

4. Killer whales tend to wander in family clusters that hunt, play, and resting together.

A B C D

5. It would be both noticed and appreciating if you could finish the work before you Leave.

A B C D

6. Most country music songs are deeply personal and deal with themes of love, lonely,

A B C D

and separation.

7. P.T Barnum opened his own circus in 1871 and become the most famous showman

A B C

of his time.

D

8. Chemical engineering is based on the principles of physics, chemists, and

A B C

Mathematics.

D

9. Below are some pieces of advice that can help you reduce the feeling of pressure and creating

A B C

a good impression on your interview.

D

10. You should stop wasting your time and doing something useful instead.

A B C D

11. Don’t go up to your hotel room because the maid is making the beds, cleaning the

A B C

bathroom, and vacuum the carpet.

D

12. Diamonds are graded according to weigh, color, and cut.

A B C D

13. According to most doctors, massage relieves pain and anxiety, eases depression

A B

and speeding up recovery from illnesses.

C D

14. Some of his favourite subjects at school are Maths, English and Geographical.

A B C D

15. Dictionaries frequently explain the origin of the defined word, state its part of speech

A B C

and indication its correct use.

D

16. When men lived in caves and hunt animals for food, strength of body was the most

A B C D

important thing.

17. For thousands of years, people have used some kind of refrigeration cooling

A B C

beverages and preserve edibles.

D

18. The Oxford Dictionary is well known for including many different meanings of words

A B C

and to give real examples.

D

19. Exceeding speed limits and fail to wear safety belts are two common causes of

A B C D

automobile death.

20. The woman is famous not only for her beauty, intelligent but also for her

A B C

hardworking.

D

21. Energy research, medicinal, tourism, and copper are important to the economy

A B C D

of Butte, Montana.

22. For thousands of years, man has used rocks as main materials for building

A B

houses, made fences, pavements or even roofs for houses.

C D

23. Income from dancing is unstable so Giang popper also works as a director,

A B C

performance event, organizer, coach and dance instructor at home.

D

24. Fruit and vegetables should be carefully washed whether eaten fresh or cook.

A B C D

25. Daisy enjoys going shopping, playing sports, and to hang out with friends in her free time.

A B C D

**MODULE 30 : SENTENCE TRANSFORMATION**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**Dạng 1 : Viết lại câu từ thì quá khứ đơn sang hiện tại hoàn thành :**

**1.S + Last +V2/ed + time +ago/in+ mốc thời gian./when + clause**

=> S +have/has + not + V3/ed + for +khoảng thời gian.

+ since + mốc thời gian.

=>It’s + time + since + S +last +V2/ed

=>The last time + S + V2/ed +was+ time + ago

**2.This is the first time + S + have/has + V3/ed**

=>S + have/has + never + V3/ed + before

**3.S started/began + Ving/to V +………………+khoảng thời gian +ago**

**+……………...In + mốc thời gian./when + clause**

=>S + have/has + V3/ed + for + khoảng thời gian

+ since + mốc thời gian

**4.When + did + S + started/begin + to V/Ving………..?**

=>How long + have/has + S + V3/ed….?

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.***

1. The last time I went to the museum was a year ago.

A.I have not been to the museum for a year.

B.A year ago, I often went to the museum.

C.My going to the museum lasted a year.

D.At last I went to the museum after a year

1. This is the first time I attend such an enjoyable wedding party.

A.The first wedding party I attended was enjoyable.

B.I had the first enjoyable wedding party.

C. attendance at the first wedding party was enjoyable.

D.I have never attended such an enjoyable wedding party before.

1. I have not met her for three years.

A.The last time I met her was three years ago. B.It is three years when I will meet her.

C.I did not meet her three years ago. D.During three years, I met her once.

1. I haven"t eaten this kind of food before.

A.This is the first time I"ve eaten this kind of food.

B.I haven"t eaten this kind of food already.

C.This is the first kind of food I have eaten.

D.Even before I have not eaten this kind of food.

1. She started work three months ago.

A.It is three months since she started work. B.She had been working for three months.

C.She is working here for three months now. D.It’s three months that she worked for.

1. I haven’t seen my aunt for years.

A.I haven’t meet my aunt for long ago.

B.The last time I met my aunt was since years ago.

C.I last saw my aunt years ago.

D.I didn’t see my aunt years ago.

1. He started learning French six years ago.

A.He has learned French for six years.

B.It was six years ago did he start learning French.

C.He hasn’t learnt French for six years.

D.It is six years since he has learnt French.

1. How long haven't you seen Peter? This sentence means: .

A.When are you going to see Peter?

B.When will you and Peter see each other again?

C.When did you last see Peter?

D.When haven’t you seen Peter?

1. She started learning English ten years ago.

A.She has not learnt English before.

B.She has learnt English since ten years.

C.She has started learning English for ten years.

D.She has learnt English for ten years.

1. He last had his eyes tested ten months ago.

A.He had tested his eyes ten months ago.

B.He had not tested his eyes for ten months then.

C.He hasn’t had his eyes tested for ten months.

D.He didn’t have any test on his eyes in ten months.

1. I haven’t gone to the cinema for ten years.

A.It’s ten years I haven’t gone to the cinema.

B.It was ten years ago I went to the cinema.

C.The last time I went to the cinema was ten years.

D.I last went to the cinema ten years ago.

1. My father hasn’t smoked cigarettes for a month.

A. It’s a month since my father last smoked cigarettes.

B. It’s a month ago that my father smoked cigarettes.

C. It’s a month that my father hasn’t smoked cigarettes.

D. It’s a cigarette that my father smoked a month ago.

1. He last came back my school ten months ago.

A. He had come back my school ten months before.

B. He had not come back my school for ten months then.

C. He hasn't come back my school for ten months.

D. He didn't come back my school in ten months.

1. We started working here three years ago.

A. We worked here for three years.

B. We have no longer worked here for three years.

C. We have worked here for three years.

D. We will work here in three years.

1. It’s a long time since we last went to the cinema.

A. We have been to the cinema for a long time.

B. We haven’t been to the cinema for a long time.

C. We don’t go to the cinema as we used to.

D. We wish we went to the cinema now.

1. The last time I saw Rose was three years ago.

A. I hasn’t seen Rose for three years.

B.I haven’t seen Rose three years ago.

C.I haven’t seen Rose since three years.

D. I haven’t seen Rose for three years.

1. The last time Mr. Brown drove this car five years ago.

A. Mr. Brown started to drive this car five years ago.

B. It had been five years when Mr. Brown drive this car

C. Mr. Brown hasn’t driven this car for five years .

D. Mr. Brown drove this car for five years

1. The last time I went to the museum was a year ago.

A.I have not been to the museum for a year.

B. A year ago, I often went to the museum.

C. My going to the museum lasted a year.

D. At last I went to the museum after a year

1. The last time I played football was in 1991.

A. I haven’t played football in 1991

B. I didn’t play football in 1991

C. I last played football since 1991

D. I haven’t played football since 1991

1. She has known how to play the piano for 5 years.

A. She didn’t play the piano 5 years ago.

B. She started to play the piano 5 years ago.

C. She played the piano 5 years ago.

D. The last time she played the piano was 5 years ago.

1. The last time I went to the museum was a year ago.

A.I have not been to the museum for a year.

B. A year ago, I often went to the museum.

C. My going to the museum lasted a year.

D. At last I went to the museum after a year

1. The last time I met Mary was two months ago.

A. I haven’t met Mary for two months

B. I have met Mary for two months

C. I had met Mary since two months

D. I haven’t meet Mary for two months

1. He last had his eyes tested ten months ago.

A. He had tested his eyes ten months before.

B. He had not tested his eyes for ten months then.

C. He hasn’t had his eyes tested for ten months.

D. He didn’t have any test on his eyes in ten months.

1. The last time when I saw him was ten years ago.

A. About ten years ago, I used to meet him.

B. I have not seen him for ten years.

C. I saw him ten years ago and will never meet him again.

D. I have often seen him for the last ten years.

1. She began to play the piano three years ago.

A. She has played the piano since three years.

B. She has played the piano for three years

C. She doesn’t play the piano now.

D. She stops playing the piano now.

1. The last time I saw her was three years ago.

A. I have not seen her for three years.

B. About three years ago, I used to meet her.

C. I have often seen her for the last three years.

D. I saw her three years ago and will never meet her

1. This is the first time we have been to the circus.

A. We have been to the circus some times before.

B. We had been to the circus once before.

C. We have ever been to the circus often before.

D. We have never been to the circus before.

1. We have been cooking for the party for four hours.

A. We didn’t start cooking for the party until four.

B. We started cooking for the party four hours ago.

C. We have four cooks for the party

D. Cooking for the party will be done in four hours

1. They last talked to each other three months ago.

A. They didn’t talk to each other for three months.

B. They haven’t talked to each other for three months.

C. They talked to each other for three months.

D. They have taked to each other for three months.

1. The last time I saw her was three years ago.

A. I have not seen her for three years.

B. About three years ago, I used to meet her.

C. I have often seen her for the last three years.

D. I saw her three years ago and will never meet her

**Dạng 2 : Viết lại câu dùng dạng tường thuật V-ing/to-V**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Nhóm đi với to-inf** | **Nhóm đi với V-ing** |
| * Advise (khuyên) * Warn (cảnh báo) * Remind (nhắc nhở) * Invite (mời) + O + (not) + to-V1 * Encourage (khuyến khích) * Ask (yêu cầu) * Agree ( đồng ý) * Promise (hứa) + (not) + to-V-inf * offer * refuse (từ chối) + to V-inf * thì tương lai 🡪 promised. * had better/ should/ if I were you…🡪 advised * Would you like / Will you => invited * don’t forget/ remember => reminded * all right => agreed to do ST * go on => encouraged + O + to V1 * could you/ can you/ do you mind => asked | * Accuse + O + of + (not) V-ing ( buộc tội) * Thank + O + for + V-ing (cảm ơn) * Blame + O + for + V-ing (đổ tội cho ai làm gì) * Congratulate + O + on + V-ing (chúc mừng) * Apologize (to + O) for (not)+ V-ing (xin lỗi) * Prevent/ stop + O + from + V-ing (ngăn cản ai từ việc gì) * Warn + O + against V-ing (khuyến cáo ai đừng làm gì) * Admit + (not) + V-ing (thừa nhận) * deny (phủ nhận) + V-ing * Suggest + V-ing (đề nghị) * Insist on + V-ing (khăng khăng) |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.***

1. "Don't come to the interview late," my mom said.

A. My mom told me do not come to the interview late.

B. My mom told me did not come to the interview late.

C. My mom told me not to come to the interview late.

D. My mom told me not coming to the interview late.

1. "I will help you with your CV, Mary," Peter said.

A. Peter advised Mary to write the CV.

B. Peter promised to help Mary with her CV.

C. Peter advised Mary not to write her CV.

D. Peter wanted Mary to help with the CV.

1. He received a letter saying that his application has been rejected.

A. The letter he received said that his application had been rejected.

B. His application has been rejected by the letter he received.

C. It is said in the letter he received that his application has been rejected.

D. That his application has been rejected is why he received with the letter.

1. "Your application must be submitted before the end of the month," said the secretary to applicants.

A. The secretary told the applicants not to submit their application before the end of the month.

B. The secretary said that the application had to be submitted before the end of the month.

C. The secretary asked that the applicants submit their application before the end of the month.

D. The secretary reminded the applicants to submit their applications before the end of the month.

1. "Have your seat, please," said the interviewer to him.

A. The interviewer invited him to sit down.

B. The interviewer offers him a post.

C. The interviewer asked him where his seat was.

D. The interviewer left him a seat.

1. “Never leave any gap unfilled in your application form," the student consultant said.

A. The student consultant said he never left any gap unfilled in his application form.

B. The student consultant advised the students not to leave any gap unfilled in their application form.

C. The student consultant told the students to leave any gap unfilled in their application form.

D. The student consultant helped the students leave gap unfilled in their application form.

1. “You should learn about the company before you come for the interview,” said the teacher to class.

A. The teacher suggested that the students learn about the company before coming for the interview.

B. The teacher asked the students to learn about the company before coming for the interview.

C. The teacher requested that the students learn about the company before coming for the interview.

D. The teacher warned the students to learn about the company before coming for the interview

1. John said “You had better not lend them any money, Daisy”.

A. John said Daisy not to lend them any money.

B. John advised Daisy should not lend any money.  
 C. John said to Daisy not lend them any money.

D. John advised Daisy not to lend them any money.

1. “I’m sorry I have to leave so early’, he said.

A. He apologized for having to leave early.

B. He apologized to have to leave early.  
C. He apologized that he has to leave early

D. He apologized to have left early.

1. “Can I borrow your pen please, Sam?”, said Gillian.

A. Gillian asked Sam if she can borrow his pen.

B. Gillian asked Sam if she could borrow his pen.  
C. Gillian asked Sam she can borrow his pen.

D. Gillian asked Sam she could borrow his pen.

1. “Where did you go last night, Nam?”, said Hoa

A. Hoa said to Nam where had he gone the night before.   
B. Hoa said to Nam where he had gone the night before.

C. Hoa told Nam where he had gone last night.  
D. Hoa asked Nam where he had gone the night before.

1. “What were you doing last night, Mr. John?” The police asked.

A. The police asked what were you doing last night, Mr. John.  
B. The police asked Mr. John what he had been doing the night before.  
C. The police asked Mr. John what had he been done the night before.  
D. The police asked Mr. John what he had done the night before.

1. “Are you fond of watching television?”, Miss Ngân said to Mr. Bình.

A. Miss Ngân told Mr. Bình if he is fond of watching television.

B. Miss Ngân asked Mr. Bình if he was fond of watching television.

C. Miss Ngân invited Mr. Bình to be fond of watching television.

D. Miss Ngân suggested Mr. Bình to watching television

1. “Will Mary be here for five days?, Tom asked Thư.

A. Tom asked Thư will Mary be here for five days.

B. Tom asked Thư how long would Mary be there.

C. Tom asked Thư whether Mary would be there for five days or not.

D. Tom asked Thư how long Mary would be there.

1. “Where are you going Nam?”, Lan asked.

A. Lan asked Nam where he was going.

B. Lan asked Nam where he is going.

C. Lan asked Nam where to go.

D. Lan asked Nam where you were going.

1. “Where does your father work?”, the teacher asked me.

A. The teacher asked me where your father worked.

B. The teacher asked me where my father worked.

C. The teacher asked me where did my father work.

D. The teacher asked me where did my father work.

1. “How far is it from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu?”, a tourist asked.

A. A tourist asked how far is it from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.

B. A tourist asked how far it is from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.

C. A tourist asked how far was it from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.

D. A tourist asked how far it was from Hồ Chí Minh City to Vũng Tàu.

1. “How many people are there in your family?”, he asked Lan.

A. He asked Lan how many people are there in my family.

B. He asked Lan how many people there are in my family.

C. He asked Lan how many people there were in her family.

D. He asked Lan how many people were there in her family.

1. “How long will you stay in England?”, Tâm’s friends asked him.

A. Tâm’s friends asked him how long will he stay in England.

B. Tâm’s friends asked him how long he will stay in England.

C. Tâm’s friends asked him how long he would stay in England.

D. Tâm’s friends asked him how long would he stay in England.

1. “We are very tired. ”, they said.

A. They said we were very tired.

B. They said they were very tired.

C. They said we are very tired.

D. They said they are very tired.

1. “His sister said, “I don’t buy this book. ”

A. His sister said I don’t buy this book.

B. His sister said she didn’t buy this book.

C. His sister said I didn’t buy that book.

D. His sister said she didn’t buy that book.

1. They said, “We have to try our best to win the match. ”

A. They said we have to try our best to win the match.

B. They said we have to try their best to win the match.

C. They said they had to try their best to win the match.

D. They said they had to try our best to win the match.

1. She said to Nam: “Come into my office, please. ”

A. She told Nam to come into her office.

B. She told Nam to come into my office.

C. She said Nam come into her office, please.

D. She said Nam come into my office, please.

1. The traffic policeman said, “Show me your driving license, please. ”

A. The traffic policeman asked to show me your driving license, please.

B. The traffic policeman suggested to show him your driving license.

C. The traffic policeman suggested showing him my driving license.

D. The traffic policeman asked to show me his driving license.

1. Mrs. Jackson said to Alice, “Could you give me a hand, please”

A. Mrs. Jackson said Alice if she could give her a hand.

B. Mrs. Jackson told Alice to give her a hand.

C. Mrs. Jackson asked to Alice to give her a hand.

D. Mrs. Jackson cursed Alice if she could give her a hand.

1. Nam said to the taxi driver, “Please turn left at the first traffic light. ”

A. Nam asked the taxi driver please turn left at the first traffic light.

B. Nam said the taxi driver to turn left at the first traffic light.

C. Nam asked the taxi driver turning left at the first traffic light.

D. Nam told the taxi driver to turn left at the first traffic light.

1. The police said, “Don’t touch anything in the room. ”

A. The police commanded us not to touch anything in the room.

B. The police advised to not touch anything in the room.

C. The police said not touch anything in the room.

D. The police asked not touching anything in the room.

1. “Would you like to have dinner with me?”, Miss Hoa said to me

A. Miss Hoa asked me if would I like to have dinner with her?

B. Miss Hoa suggested me if I would like to have dinner with her or not.

C. Miss Hoa told me to like to have dinner with her or not.

D. Miss Hoa invited me to have dinner with her.

1. “You should stay in bed”, I said to him.

A. I said him he should stay in bed.

B. I advised him to stay in bed.

C. I prayed him to stay in bed.

D. I ordered him you should stay in bed.

1. My mother told me “You should visit your grandmother tomorrow”

A. My mother told me I should visit your grandmother tomorrow.

B. My mother invited me to visit my grandmother tomorrow.

C. My mother advised me to visit my grandmother the day after.

D. My mother urged me visiting my grandmother the next day.

1. “I will expect to see you next Wednesday”, said Mary to her boy friend.

A. Mary sai to her boy friend she would expect to see you the following Wednesday.

B. Mary promised her boy friend that she would expect to see you the following Wednesday.

C. Mary expected to see her boy friend the following Wednesday.

D. Mary told boy her friend that she would expect to see him the next Wednesday.

1. “Do you enjoy reading books?”, Phong asked Peter.

A. Phong asked Peter if he enjoyed reading books.

B. Phong asked Peter whether he enjoys reading books or not.

C. Phong asked Peter if he enjoyed reading books or not.

D. Phong asked Peter whether did he enjoy reading books.

1. “Does she like sports?”, Hoa asked Lan.

A. Hoa asked Lan whether she liked sports or not.

B. Hoa asked Lan if she liked sports or not.

C. Hoa asked Lan whether did she like sports.

D. Hoa asked Lan if did she like sports.

1. "I am sorry I didn't wait for you," Mary said to John.

A. Mary apologized for not waiting for John.

B. Mary insisted on not waiting for John.

C. Mary sorry for not waiting for John.

D. Mary denied not waiting for John

1. ”Let’s stay here until the storm has passed!”, someone said.

A.Someone said that let them stay there until storm had passed.

    B.Someone told me to stay there until the storm has passed.

    C.Someone suggested staying there until the storm had passed.

    D.Someone asked whether we stayed there until the storm has passed.

1. “I’m sorry I forgot your birthday”, Harry told Mary.

A.Harry said sorry to Mary for forgetting her birthday.

B.Harry felt sorry to forget Mary’s birthday.

C.Harry apologized to Mary for having forgotten her birthday.

D.Harry really felt a pity not to remember Mary’s birthday.

1. "I won't be home this evening because I have to work late," Mike said. - Mike said that \_\_\_\_.

A. I wouldn't be home this evening because I had to work late

B. he wouldn't be home this evening because he had to work late

C. he won't be home this evening because he has to work late

D. he wouldn't be home that evening because he had to work late

1. “You’d better stay at home during this time” he said to Lan.

A. He ordered Lan to stay at home during that time.

B. He warmed Lan against staying at home during that time.

C. He advised Lan to stay at home during that time.

D. He thanked Lan for staying at home during that time.

1. “What have you done to my laptop, Jane?” asked Tom.

A. Tom asked Jane what had she done to his laptop.

B. Tom asked Jane what has she done to his laptop.

C. Tom asked Jane what she had done to his laptop.

D. Tom asked Jane what she has done to his laptop.

1. “When did you start practising yoga?” asked Tom.

A. Tom wanted to know when I had started practising yoga.

B. Tom wanted to know when had I started practising yoga.

C. Tom wanted to know when did I start practising yoga.

D. Tom wanted to know when I was starting practising yoga.

1. “Why didn’t you attend the meeting, Mary?” Tom asked.

A. Tom asked Mary why didn’t she attend the meeting.

B. Tom asked Mary why she hadn’t attended the meeting.

C. Tom asked Mary why hadn’t she attended the meeting.

D. Tom asked Mary why she wasn’t attending the meeting.

1. “How long have you lived here, Lucy?” asked Jack.

A. Jack asked Lucy how long did she live here.

B. Jack asked Lucy how long had she lived there.

C. Jack asked Lucy how long she lived here.

D. Jack asked Lucy how long she had lived there.

1. “You had better see a doctor if the sore throat does not clear up,” she said to me.

A. She reminded me of seeing a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.

B. She ordered me to see a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.

C. She insisted that I see a doctor unless the sore throat did not clear up.

D. She suggested that I see a doctor if the sore throat did not clear up.

1. “Why don’t we go out for dinner tonight?” said Jim.

A. Jim suggested going out for dinner that night.

B. Jim refused to go out for dinner that night.

C. Jim denied going out for dinner that night.

D. Jim promised to go out for dinner that night.

1. “You got an A in Chemistry. Congratulations!” Peter said to his classmate.

A. Peter encouraged his classmate to get an A in Chemistry.

B. Peter persuaded his classmate to get an A in Chemistry.

C. Peter insisted on getting an A in Chemistry for his classmate.

D. Peter congratulated his classmate on getting an A in Chemistry.

1. “No, I won’t go to work at the weekend, “said Sally.

A. Sally refused to go to work at the weekend.

B. Sally promised to go to work at the weekend.

C. Sally apologized for not going to work at the weekend.

D. Sally regretted not going to work at the weekend.

1. “We will not leave until we see the manager, “said the customers.

A. The customers promised to leave before they saw the manager.

B. The customers refused to leave until they saw the manager.

C. The customers agreed to leave before they saw the manager.

D. The customers decided to leave because they did not see the manager.

1. “Why don’t we go camping at the weekend?” he said.

A. He denied going camping at the weekend.

B. He suggested going camping at the weekend.

C. He objected to going camping at the weekend.

D. He apologized for going camping at the weekend.

1. “I didn’t give John the money,” said Mary.

A. Mary denied giving John the money.

B. Mary admitted giving John the money.

C. Mary suggested giving John the money.

D. Mary remembered giving John the money.

1. “Would you like to go to the show with me?” Anna said to Bella.

A. Anna reminded Bella to go to the show with her.

B. Anna persuaded Bella to go to the show with her.

C. Anna encouraged Bella to go to the show with her.

D. Anna invited Bella to go to the show with her.

**Dạng 3 : Viết lại câu dùng động từ khiếm khuyết** (Dịch nghĩa cách sử dụng)

|  |
| --- |
| **MỘT SỐ CÁCH BIẾN ĐỔI TƯƠNG ĐƯƠNG** |
| * **be necessary (for O) + to–V = need / have to** * **be unnecessary (for O) + to– V = don’t need / don’t have to**   Ex: It is **unnecessary** for him to study many subjects.  He **needn’t study** many subjects  He **does not have to study** many subjects.   * **be possible / impossible + to-V = can/ cannot + V hoặc may/might**   Ex: It is **impossible** for me to finish it now.  I **can't** finish it now |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.***

1. Bill paid them a lot of money for that job,but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Bill may not have paid them a lot of money for that job.

B. Bill might not have paid them a lot of money for that job.

C. Bill needn’t have paid them a lot of money for that job.

D. Bill couldn’t have paid them a lot of money for that job.

1. Anna bought two cars a month, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Anna might not have bought two cars a month.

B. Annn couldn’t have bought two cars a month.

C. Anna needn’t have bought two cars a month.

D. Anna couldn’t have bought two cars a month.

1. George invested nearly 5 billions in building that house, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. George may not have invested nearly 5 billions in building that house.

B. George couldn’t have invested nearly 5 billions in building that house.

C. George might not have invested nearly 5 billions in building that house.

D. George needn’t have invested nearly 5 billions in building that house.

1. Nancy managed to finish all her work yesterday, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Nancy might not have managed to finish all her work yesterday.

B. Nancy may not have managed to finish all her work yesterday.

C. Nancy needn’t have managed to finish all her work yesterday.

D. Nancy couldn’t have managed to finish all her work yesterday .

1. Sue left this company to find a new job, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Sue may not have left this company to find a new job.

B. Sue might not have left this company to find a new job.

C. Sue mustn’t have left this company to find a new job.

D. Sue needn’t have left this company to find a new job.

1. Mary invited her ex-husband to her wedding party, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Mary may not have invited her ex-husband to her wedding party.

B. Mary needn’t have invited her ex-husband to her wedding party.

C. Mary might not have invited her ex-husband to her wedding party.

D. Mary couldn’t have invited her ex-husband to her wedding party.

1. The teacher wrote ten examples on the board ,but it wasn’t necessary.

A. The teacher may not have written ten examples on the board .

B. The teacher might not have written ten examples on the board .

C. The teacher couldn’t have written ten examples on the board .

D. The teacher needn’t have written ten examples on the board .

1. There was a lot of fun at yesterday’s party, but you didn’t come.

A. You must have come to the party yesterday.

B. You should have come to the party yesterday.

C. You might have come to the party yesterday.

D. You could have come to the party yesterday.

1. Sally washed the tomatoes again, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Sally needn’t have washed the tomatoes again.

B. Sally mustn’t have washed the tomatoes again.

C. Sally might not have washed the tomatoes again.

D. Sally may not have washed the tomatoes again.

1. I’m sure the exam was difficult.

A. The exam might have been difficult.

B. The exam must have been difficult

C. The exam need have been difficult.

D. The exam should have been difficult much.

1. Perhaps George went shopping.

A. George should have gone shopping.

B. George must have gone shopping.

C. George might have gone shopping.

D. George need have gone shopping.

1. Daisy went on a diet, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Daisy mustn’t have gone on a diet

B. Daisy might not have gone on a diet.

C. Daisy needn’t have gone on a diet.

D. Daisy might not have gone on a diet.

1. Mary took a taxi from home to school, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Mary mustn’t have taken a taxi from home to school

B. Mary needn’t have taken a taxi from home to school

C. Mary shouldn’t have taken a taxi from home to school

D. Mary might not have taken a taxi from home to school

1. It was possible that Peter phoned me at midnight yesterday.

A. Peter must have phoned me at midnight yesterday

B. Peter might have phoned me at midnight yesterday

C. Peter need have phoned me at midnight yesterday

D. Peter should have phoned me at midnight yesterday

1. Tom got up early on Sunday morning, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. Tom mustn’t have got up early on Sunday morning

B. Tom might not have got up early on Sunday morning

C. Tom needn’t have got up early on Sunday morning

D. Tom couldn’t have got up early on Sunday morning

1. Jack made a decision immediately, but it was not necessary.

A. Jack needn’t have made a decision immediately

B. Jack couldn’t have made a decision immediately

C. Jack shouldn’t have made a decision immediately

D. Jack mustn’t have made a decision immediately

1. Passengers walked on the line yesterday, but this was prohibited

A. Passengers shouldn’t have walked on the line yesterday

B. Passengers needn’t have walked on the line yesterday

C. Passengers mustn’t have walked on the line yesterday

D. Passengers couldn’t have walked on the line yesterday

1. Peter fed the animals in the zoo, but this was prohibited

A. Peter shouldn’t have fed the animals in the zoo

B. Peter needn’t have fed the animals in the zoo

C. Peter mustn’t have fed the animals in the zoo

D. Peter couldn’t have fed the animals in the zoo

1. She arrived at the meeting one hour earlier, but it wasn’t necessary.

A. She shouldn’t have arrived at the meeting one hour earlier

B. She needn’t have arrived at the meeting one hour earlier

C. She couldn’t have arrived at the meeting one hour earlier

D. She might not have arrived at the meeting one hour earlier

1. Perhaps Mary left her car unlocked.

A. Mary should have left her car unlocked.

B. Mary might have left her car unlocked.

C. Mary must have left her car unlocked.

D. Mary need have left her car unlocked.

1. It’s impossible that you saw Joe in the town.

A. It couldn't have been Joe you saw in the town  
B. It needn't have been Joe you saw in the town  
C. It shouldn't have been Joe you saw in the town  
D. It mustn’t have been Joe you saw in the town

1. It’s impossible that it rained last night.

A. It needn’t have rained last night

B. It might not have rained last night

C. It mustn’t have rained last night

D. It shouldn’t have rained last night

1. It’s possible that Peter didn’t receive my message.

A. Peter might not have received my message.

B. Peter mustn’t have received my message.

C. Peter shouldn’t have received my message.

D. Peter needn’t have received my message.

1. It’s possible that Mary phoned while we were out.

A. Mary should have phoned while we were out.

B. Mary must have phoned while we were out.

C. Mary might have phoned while we were out.

D. Mary need have phoned while we were out.

1. I regret having behaved so badly during the lesson.

A. I shouldn’t have behaved so badly during the lesson.

B. I needn’t have behaved so badly during the lesson.

C. I might not have behaved so badly during the lesson.

D. I can’t have behaved so badly during the lesson.

1. It is impossible for me to finish reading the book

A. I mustn’t have finished reading the book.

B. I needn’t have finished reading the book.

C. I might not have finished reading the book.

D. I shouldn’t have finished reading the book.

1. It was unnecessary for you to study this subject.

A. You needn’t have studied this subject.

B. You shouldn’t have studied this subject.

C. You mustn’t have studied this subject.

D. You can’t have studied this subject.

1. It’s possible that I left the English book at home.

A. I should have left the English book at home.

B. I must have left the English book at home.

C. I need have left the English book at home.

D. I could have left the English book at home.

1. The man you saw wasn’t Jack. He’s been abroad since the summer.

A. You couldn’t have seen Jack. He’s been abroad since summer.

B. You mustn’t have seen Jack. He’s been abroad since summer.

C. You might not have seen Jack. He’s been abroad since summer.

D. You shouldn’t have seen Jack. He’s been abroad since summer.

1. It was a mistake of you not to bring your umbrella.

A. You should have brought your umbrella.

B. You may have brought your umbrella.

C. You could have brought your umbrella.

D. You might have brought your umbrella.

**CÁC CẤP SO SÁNH**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Các loại so sánh** | **Công thức** | | | | **Ví dụ** |
| **So sánh bằng (as...as)** | Thể khẳng định:  **S1 + V + as + adj/adv + as + S2 + V** | | | | *She is as beautiful as her mother.*  *She learns as well* as *her sister does.* |
| Thể phủ định:  **S1 + V(phủ định) + as/so + adj/adv + as + S2 + V** | | | | *This exercise is not as/ so difficult as I think (it is).*  *He doesn’t study as/so hard as I do/me.* |
| Với danh từ đếm được:  **S1 + V + as many/few + N(sô’ nhiều) + as + S2 + V** | | | | *We have as few problems to solve as yesterday.* |
| Với danh từ không đếm được:  **SI + V + as much/ little + N(không đếm được) + as + S2+ V** | | | | *I don’t have as much money as you do.* |
| So sánh gấp nhiều lần:  **S + V + multiple numbers + as + much/ many/ adj + (N) + as + N/ pronoun**  \* Multiple numbers là những số như half/ twice/ 3,4,5...times; Phân số; Phần trăm. | | | | *In many countries in the world with the same job, women only get 40 - 50% as much as salary as men.* |
| **So sánh hơn (adj-er/ more...than)** | **Thế nào là tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn?**  **Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn** là những tính từ/ trạng từ có 1 âm tiết như: big (to), small (nhỏ), hot (nóng), cold (lạnh), thin (gầy), fat (béo),....và có 2 âm tiết tận cùng là 1 trong 5 đuôi sau:  - y: happy (hạnh phúc), easy (dễ dàng), early (sớm), heavy (nặng), lazy (lười biếng)...  - er: clever (thông minh, lanh lợi).  - le: single (độc thân), simple (đơn giản).  - ow: narrow (hẹp).  - et: quiet (yên tĩnh).  **Lưu ý: những tính từ / trạng từ 2 âm tiết tận cùng là đuôi -y chỉ được coi là tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn khi bản thân nó có đuôi -y.**  Ví dụ:  lovely (đáng yêu) là tính từ dài vì nó được cấu tạo bởi (love + ly => lovely).  quickly (nhanh) là trạng từ dài vì nó được cấu tạo bởi (quick + ly => quickly).  **Thế nào là tính từ/ trạng từ dài?**  **Tính từ/ trạng từ dài** là những tính từ/ trạng từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên nhưng không phải 1 trong 5 đuôi kể trên, như: beautiful (xinh đẹp), handsome (đẹp trai), intelligent (thông minh), hard-working (chăm chỉ) | | | | |
| so sánh hơn với tính từ và trạng từ ngắn:  **S1 + V + adj/adv + er + than + S2 + V** | | | *She looks happier than (she did) yesterday.* | |
| so sánh hơn với tính từ và trạng từ dài:  **S1 + V + more + adj/adv + than + S2 + V** | | | *She is more beautiful than her sister.* | |
| Sosánh hơn với danh từ:  **S1 + V + more + N + than + S2+ V** | | | *She has more money than me.* | |
| **So sánh nhất (the adj- est/most + adj)** | Với tính từ và trạng từ ngắn:  **S + V + the + adj/adv + est + (N) + ....** | | | *He is the tallest (student) in my class.* | |
| Với tính từ và trạng từ dài:  **S + V + the + most + adj/adv + (N) +…** | | | *My mother is the most beautiful (woman) in the world.* | |
| Với danh từ:  **S + V + the + most + N + ....** | | | *He is a billionaire. He has the most money.* | |
| **Ngoại lệ** | **Tính từ/ trạng từ** | **Nghĩa** | **Dạng so sánl hơn** | **Dạng so sánh nhất** | |
| good/well | tốt, giỏi | better | the best | |
| bad | tệ, tồi, dốt | worse | the worst | |
| much/many | nhiều | more | the most | |
| little | ít | less | least | |
| far | xa | farther/further | farthest/furthest | |
| old | già, cũ | older/elder | oldest/eldest | |
| **So sánh lũy tiến**  **(càng...càng)** | Với tính từ ngắn: **Adj + er + and + adj + er** | | | *The summer is coming. It gets hotter and hotter.* | |
| Với tính từ dài: **more/less and more/less + adj** | | | *She is more and more attractive.* | |
| Với danh từ: **more and more + N** | | | *There are more and more people moving to big cities to look for jobs.* | |
| **So sánh đồng tiến** **(càng... thì càng)** | **The + (so sánh hơn) adj/ adv+S + V, the (so sánh hơn) adj/adv + S + V** | | | *The more difficult the exercise is, the more interesting it is.* | |

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

*1. Joe is more hard-working than his brother.*

A. Joe is not as hard-working as his brother.

B. Joe’s brother is not as hard-working as he is.

C. Joe is less hard-working than his brother.

D. Joe’s brother is more hard-working than he is.

*2. Many teenagers like facebooking more than doing sport.*

A. Many teenagers like doing sport as much as Facebooking.

B. Many teenagers don’t like Facebooking as much as doing sport,

C. Many teenagers like doing sport more than Facebooking.

D. Many teenagers don’t like doing sport as much as Facebooking.

*3. Paul likes reading comic books more than watching cartoons.*

A. Paul doesn’t like watching cartoons as much as reading comic books.

B. Paul likes watching cartoons as much as reading comic books.

C. Paul likes watching cartoons more than reading comic books.

D. Paul doesn’t like reading comic books as much as watching cartoons.

*4. I like reading books more than surfing the Internet.*

A. I like surfing the Internet more than reading book.

B. I like reading book less than surfing the Internet.

C. I don’t like reading book as much as surfing the Internet.

D. I don’t like surfing the Internet as much as reading books.

*5. My father likes reading newspaper more than watching TV.*

A. My father doesn’t like reading newspaper as much as watching TV.

B. My father likes watching TV as much as reading newspaper.

C. My father doesn’t like watching TV as much as reading newspaper.

D. My father likes watching TV more than reading newspaper.

*6. In Vietnam, football is more popular than basketball.*

A. In Vietnam, basketball is not as popular as football.

B. In Vietnam, basketball is more popular than football.

C. In Vietnam, football is not as popular as basketball.

D. In Vietnam, football is as popular as basketball.

*7. My boss works better when he’s pressed for time.*

A. The more time my boss has, the better he works.

B. The less time my boss has, he works better.

C. The less time my boss has, the better he works.

D. The less time my boss has, he works the better.

*8. Derek is quite a bit more adventurous than his sister, Annabelle.*

A. Annabelle is considerable more adventurous than her brother, Derek.

B. Annabelle isn’t as nearly adventurous as her brother, Derek.

C. Derek isn’t so nearly adventurous as his sister, Annabelle.

D. Annabelle isn’t nearly as adventurous as her brother, Derek.

*9. The likelihood of suffering a heart attack rises as one becomes increasingly obese.*

A. Anyone who is obese is likely to experience a heart attack at any time.

B. Obesity results in only a slight increase in the probability of having a heart attack.

C. The more obese one is, the higher the chances for a heart attack become.

D. Heart attacks are happening more and more often, and most of the sufferers are obese.

*10. The American are less formal in addressing their bosses than the South Korean.*

A. The South Korean are less formal in addressing their bosses than the American.

B. Both the American and the South Korean have the same formality in addressing their bosses.

C. The South Korean are more informal in addressing their bosses than the American.

D. The South Korean are more formal in addressing their bosses than the American.

*11. Nothing is more precious than happiness and health.*

A. Happiness and health are the most precious things.

B. Happiness is more precious than health.

C. Health is more precious than happiness.

D. Happiness and health are more and more precious.

*12. I’ve never seen such a nice bouquet of wedding flowers.*

A. This bouquet of wedding flowers is the nicest that I’ve ever made.

B. This is the nicest bouquet of wedding flowers that I’ve ever seen.

C. I’ve never seen the nicest bouquet of wedding flowers so far.

D. Nothing I’ve seen is nicer than this bouquet of wedding flowers.

*13. Ice-hockey is one of the most popular sports in Russia.*

A. In Russia, ice-hockey is more popular than any other sports.

B. In Russia, no sport is more popular than ice-hockey.

C. In Russia, no sport is less popular than ice-hockey.

D. In Russia, one of the most popular sports is ice-hockey.

*14. Tet holiday is the most interesting Vietnamese traditional festival that he’s ever attended.*

A. Tet holiday is more interesting than the Vietnamese traditional festival that he’s ever attended.

B. He has never attended a more interesting Vietnamese traditional festival than Tet holiday.

C. He has attended many interesting Vietnamese traditional festival including Tet holiday.

D. Tet holiday is one of the most interesting Vietnamese traditional festival he’s ever attended.

*15. There are more superstitious beliefs in Eastern countries than in Western ones.*

A. Western countries don’t have fewer superstitious beliefs than Eastern ones.

B. Eastern countries have more superstitious beliefs than Western ones.

C. Eastern and Western countries have many more superstitious beliefs.

D. More superstitious beliefs exist in Western countries than in Eastern ones.

*16. Pho (rice noodles) is believed to be the most typical food in Viet Nam.*

A. It is believed that *Pho* (rice noodles] is the most typical food in Viet Nam.

B. A more typical food than *Pho* (rice noodles] is believed in Viet Nam.

C. I believe that Viet Nam has the most typical food like *Pho* (rice noodles].

D. No food in Viet Nam is less typical than *Pho* (rice noodles].

*17. I have never read a better book about cultural diversity than I have ever read.*

A. This book is a good book about cultural diversity I have ever read.

B. This is the best book about cultural diversity I have ever read.

C. This book is as good as the one about cultural diversity I have ever read.

D. The book about cultural diversity I have ever read isn’t better than this one.

*18. Lee talks to people more politely than Ben.*

A. Ben doesn’t talk to people as politely as Lee.

B. Ben doesn’t talk to people politely as Lee.

C. Ben doesn’t talk to people more politely than Lee.

D. Ben doesn’t talk to people less politely than Lee.

*19. No student in my class can run as fast as Jack.*

A. Jack is faster than no student in my class.

B. Jack is the fastest runner in my class.

C. All students in my class don’t run faster than Jack.

D. No student in my class runs fast as Jack.

*20. This question is harder than the last one.*

A. The last question is not difficult.

B. This question is the most difficult one.

C. The last question is difficult but this one is more difficult.

D. This question is hard but the last one is not.

*21.* As *Elton John became more famous, it was more difficult for him to avoid reporters.*

A. The most famous Elton John became, the more difficult for him to avoid reporters.

B. The more famous Elton John became, the more difficult it was for him to avoid reporters.

C. The more famous Elton John had become, the more difficult for him to avoid reporters.

D. The more Elton John became famous, the more difficult for him to avoid reporters.

*22. We cut down many forests. The Earth becomes hot.*

A. The more forests we cut down, the hotter the Earth becomes.

B. The more we cut down forests, the hotter the Earth becomes.

C. The more forests we cut down, the Earth becomes hotter.

D. The more we cut down forests, the Earth becomes hotter.

*23. As he earned more money, Mike bought more clothes.*

A. When Mike earned a lot of money, he bought more and more clothes.

B. The more money Mike earned, the better clothes he bought.

C. The more money Mike earned, the best clothes he bought.

D. The more money Mike earned, the more clothes he bought.

*24. Jupiter is bigger than all the other planets in the solar system.*

A. No other planets in the solar system is as big as Jupiter.

B. Jupiter is the biggest planet in the solar system.

C. All other planets in the solar system are not so big that Jupiter.

D. Among the planets in the solar system, Jupiter is the biggest of all.

*25. No other student in his class is as successful as Pat.*

A. Pat succeeded in beating all other students in his class.

B. Pat is the most successful student in his class.

C. His class is less successful than Pat is.

D. The more successful his class is, the more success Pat gets.

**MODULE 31 : SENTENCE COMBINATION**

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**Dạng 1 : Viết lại câu dùng Subjunctive mood (Wish)**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Loại** | **Công thức và dấu hiệu** | **Ví dụ** |
| **Loại 1:** ước 1 điều không có thật ở hiện tại | CT: S + wish + QKĐ  (**S + wish + S + were/ Ved/ V2)**  DH: in the morning, now, at the monent, at present, … | * He wishes he didn’t work in this company at present. * I wish I were a teacher at the moment. |
| **Loại 2:** ước 1 điều không có thật ở quá khứ | CT: S + wish + QKHT  **(S + wish + S + had + Ved/ V3)**  DH: ago, yesterday, last night, … | Mary wishes she had gone to school yesterday. |
| **Loại 3:** ước 1 điều trong tương lai | **S + wish + S + would/could + V**  DH: next week, tommorrow, … | She wishes she would earn a lot of money next year. |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.***

1. Nam was so rude to them last night. Now he feels regretful.

A. Nam regrets to have been so rude to them last night.

B. Nam regrets having so rude to them last night.

C. Nam wishes he hadn’t been so rude to them last night.

D. Nam wishes he weren’t so rude to them last night.

1. Jenifer rejected the job offer. She now regrets it.

A. Jenifer regrets not having rejected the job offer.

B. If only Jenifer didn’t reject the job offer.

C. Jenifer wishes she hadn’t rejected the job offer.

D. Jenifer regrets to reject the job offer.

1. The children are noisy. She can’t concentrate on working.

A. She wishes the children are not noisy and she can concentrate on working.

B. In case the children are not noisy, she can concentrate on working.

C. If the children were not noisy, she can concentrate on working.

D. If only the children were not noisy and she could concentrate on working

1. Julian dropped out of college after his first year. Now he regrets it.

A. Julian regretted having dropped out of college after his first year.

B. Julian wishes he didn’t drop out of college after his first year.

C. Julian regrets having dropped out of college after his first year.

D. Only if Julian had dropped out of college after his first year.

1. Marie didn’t turn up at John’s birthday party. I feel so sorry for that.

A. If only Marie turn up at John’s birthday party.

B. I wish Marie had turned up at Johns birthday party.

C. I wished Marie wouldn’t turn up at John’s birthday party.

D. It’s a shame Marie had turned up at John’s birthday party.

1. Marie didn’t turn up at John’s birthday party. I feel so sorry for that.

A. If only Marie turn up at John’s birthday party.

B. I wish Marie had turned up at Johns birthday party.

C. I wished Marie wouldn’t turn up at John’s birthday party.

D. It’s a shame Marie had turned up at John’s birthday party.

1. Susan didn’t apply for the summer job in the cafe. She now regrets it.

A. Susan wishes that she applied for the summer job in the cafe.

B. Susan feels regret because she didn’t apply for the summer job in the cafe.

C. If only Susan didn’t apply for the summer job in the cafe.

D. Susan wishes that she had applied for the summer job in the cafe.

1. They didn’t have breakfast this morning.That’s why they are hungry now.

A. They wish they had had breakfast this morning

B. They wish they had breakfast this morning

C. They wish they have breakfast this morning

D. They wish they would have breakfast this morning

1. We couldn't see the mountains because of the rain.

A. If only it didn't rain so we could see the mountains.

B. If it hadn't rained, we could see the mountains.

C. I wish I had been able to see the mountains without rain.

D. But for the rain, I could see the mountains.

1. I did not see Susan off at the airport. I feel bad about it now.

A. I could have seen Susan off at the airport.

B. If only I had seen Susan off at the airport.

C. That I did not see Susan off at the airport escapes me now.

D. It suddenly dawns on me that I should have seen Susan off at the airport.

1. I didn’t know that he was a liar. I now regret it.

A. I wish he wasn’t a liar.

B. I regret that he is a liar.

C. I wish I had known that he was a liar.

D. I regret to beileve him and what he said.

1. My sister can’t speak Vietnamese.

A. I wish my sister to speak Vietnamese

B. I wish my sister could speak Vietnamese

C. Speaking Vietnamese is a wish

D. My sister wishes to be spoken Vietnamese

1. I didn’t know that he was a liar. I now regret it.

A. I wish he wasn’t a liar.

B. I regret that he is a liar.

C. I wish I had known that he was a liar.

D. I regret to beileve him and what he said.

1. The children are noisy. She can’t concentrate on working.

A. She wishes the children are not noisy and she can concentrate on working.

B. In case the children are not noisy, she can concentrate on working.

C. If the children were not noisy, she can concentrate on working.

D. If only the children were not noisy and she could concentrate on working

1. I regret not booking the seats in advance.

A. I wish I book the seats in advance.

C. If only I booked the seats in advance.

B. I wish I have booked the seats in advance.

D. If only I had booked the seats in advance

1. There aren't any rivers and lakes in your hometown.

A. I wish there were some rivers and lakes in my hometown

B. I wish there was some rivers and lakes in my hometown

C. I wish there are some rivers and lakes in my hometown

D. I wish there weren’t some rivers and lakes in my hometown

1. Jack bought that second-hand car and he then recognized that he shouldn't have done that.

A. Jack wished that he has not bought that second-hand car.

B. Jack wished that he did not buy that second-hand car.

C. Jack regretted to buy that second-hand car.

D. Jack regretted buying that second-hand car.

1. If I had known about their wedding plan earlier, I would have been able to make time to attend the reception party.

A. I knew their wedding would be planned earlier so I made some time to attend the reception party.

B. I wish I had known their wedding plan sooner so that I could arrange time to attend the reception party.

C. I don't know their wedding plan earlier so I can't make time to attend the reception party.

D. When I knew their wedding party, it was too late to attend the reception party.

1. I want to help you, but I don’t have money now.

A.I wish I had money to help you now

B. If I have money, I will help you

C. If only I had had money and could have helped you

D. should I have money, I will help you

1. John regrets forgetting to send Mary a Christmas card.

A. John wishes he remembered to send Mary a Christmas card.

B. John wishes he didn’t forget to send Mary a Christmas card.

C. John wishes he sent Mary a Christmas card.

D. John wishes he had remembered to send Mary a Christmas card

1. I wish I didn’t have to get up early tomorrow.

A. I don’t have to get up early tomorrow.

B. I will have to get up early tomorrow.

C. Getting up early tomorrow is not necessary.

D. It is my wish to get up early tomorrow.

1. I regret not telling the truth.

A. If only I could tell the truth. B. Telling the truth means regret,

C. I have never regretted telling the truth. D. I wish I had told the truth

1. They think that they shouldn’t have lent Jack the car.

A. They regret having lent the car to Jack.

B. They should not borrow the car from Jack.

C. Jack is not the person they lend the car.

D. Jack doesn’t return the car to them on time.

1. I’m sorry I can’t go to your birthday party tomorrow.

A. I wish I can go to your birthday party tomorrow.

B. I wish I can’t go to your birthday party tomorrow.

C. I wish I could go to your birthday party tomorrow.

D. I wish I couldn’t go to your birthday party tomorrow.

1. He is sorry he is not able to speak English well.

A. He wishes he can speak English well.

B. He wishes he could speak English well.

C. He wishes he is able to speak English well.

D. He wishes he was able to speak English well.

1. His parents are away on holiday. He really needs their help now.

A. As long as his parents are at home, they will be able to help him.

B. He wishes his parents were at home and could help him now.

C. If his parents are at home, they can help him now.

D. If only his parents had been at home and could have helped him.

1. I really regert that you haven’t told me about her family.

A. If only you would tell me about her family.

B. If only I didn’t regret that you hadn’t told me about her family.

C. If only you had told me about her family.

D. If only you hadn’t told me about her family.

1. Nam was so rude to them last night. Now he feels regretful.

A. Nam regrets to have been so rude to them last night.

B. Nam regrets having so rude to them last night.

C. Nam wishes he hadn’t been so rude to them last night.

D. Nam wishes he weren’t so rude to them last night.

1. Marie didn’t turn up at John’s birthday party. I feel so sorry for that.

A. If only Marie turn up at John’s birthday party.

B. I wish Marie had turned up at John’s birthday party.

C. I wished Marie wouldn’t turn up at John’s birthday party.

D. It’s a shame Marie had turned up at John’s birthday party.

1. They regret ever moving into that house.

A. They hoped they wouldn’t move into that house.

B. They wish they had not moved into that house.

C. If only they didn’t move into that house.

D. They think that they should have moved into that house.

1. The police are supposed to do something about these people.

A. I wish the police would do something about these people.

B. The police should have done something about these people.

C. Supposedly, the police do something about these people.

D. The police suppose that these people do something.

1. I find you smoking in here very annoying.

A. I wish you wouldn’t smoke in here.

B. I’d rather you not smoke in here.

C. If only you hadn’t smoked in here.

D. Your smoking in here makes me annoy.

1. My school has no playground equipment or extra activities.

A. I wish my school had had playground equipment or extra activities.

B. I wish my school had playground equipment or extra activities.

C. I wish my school can have playground equipment or extra activities.

D. I wish my school will have playground equipment or extra activities.

1. It's a pity I can't cook as well as my mom.

A. I wish I could cook as well as my mom.

B. I wish I can cook as well as my mom.

C. I wish I could cook as good as my mom.

D. I wish I can cook as better as my mom.

1. I regret agreeing to do the extra work.

A. I’m sorry to say that I agreed to do the extra work.

B. I wish I didn’t take on the extra work.

C. I feel regret now because I have done the extra work.

D. If only I hadn’t taken on the extra work.

1. I wish I had come to the party earlier.

A. If only I came to the party earlier.

B. I regret having come to the party early.

C. I feel regretted because I didn’t come to the party early enough.

D. I was supposed to come to the party earlier, and I did.

1. I can’t find my shoes.

A. My shoes can’t have been found.

B. I wish I knew where my shoes were.

C. If I could have my shoes found.

D. I hope someone will know the place of my shoes.

1. Susan didn’t apply for the job in the library and regrets it now.

A. Susan wishes that she applied for the job in the library.

B. Susan wishes for applying for the job in the library.

C. Susan wishes she had applied for the job in the library.

D. Susan wishes she wouldn’t apply for the job in the library.

1. I regret giving Dennis my phone number.

A. I should have given Dennis my phone number.

B. If only I had given Dennis my phone number.

C. If only I had not given Dennis my phone number.

D. I wish I could give Dennis my phone number.

1. It is such a pity that your sister can’t come as well.

A. If only your sister could come as well.

B. I wish your sister can come as well.

C. But for your sister can come as well.

D. Your sister not coming as well is such a pity.

**CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN**

***Kết hợp câu dùng câu điều kiện***

Để kết hợp câu bằng câu điều kiện ta thực hiện theo các quy tắc sau:

**Quy tắc 1:**

- Nếu hai mệnh đề được kết nối bằng liên từ “so” thì ta viết mệnh đề điều kiện bằng mệnh đề trước “so”.

- Nếu hai mệnh đề được kết nối bằng liên từ “because” thì ta viết mệnh đề điều kiện bằng mệnh đề sau “because”.

- Nếu giữa hai câu có dấu chấm (.), dấu chấm phẩy (;) hoặc dấu gạch ngang (-) thì ta viết mệnh đề điều kiện bằng câu thứ nhất.

**Quy tắc 2:**

- Nếu động từ ở tương lai ta viết bằng điều kiện loại 1.

- Nếu động từ ở hiện tại ta viết bằng điều kiện loại 2.

- Nếu động từ ở quá khứ ta viết bằng điều kiện loại 3.

**Quy tắc 3:**

- thể của mệnh đề trong câu điều kiện luôn ngược với câu ban đầu.

*Ví dụ:*

The woman didn’t say what she wanted. I put the phone down.

If\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.

Ta có:

+ giữa 2 câu có dấu (.) ta viết câu điều kiện bắt đầu bằng câu thứ nhất.

+ động từ trong câu thứ nhất là “didn’t say” (quá khứ đơn) nên ta sẽ viết mệnh đề if bằng điều kiện loại 3 và ở thể khẳng định (If The woman had said what she wanted) và mệnh đề chính ở thể thể phủ định của điều kiện loại 3 (I wouldn’t have put the phone down). Vì thể của mệnh đề trong câu điều kiện luôn ngược với câu ban đầu.

***=> If the woman had said what she wanted, I wouldn’t have put the phone down.***

**BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG 2**

**1.** *The film is not perfect. Its abrupt ending spoils it.*

A. The film would be perfect if it ended abruptly.

B. Provided the film ended abruptly, it would not be perfect.

C. Unless the film ends abruptly, it won’t be perfect.

D. But for its abrupt ending, the film would be perfect.

**2.** *Mike didn’t follow his parents’ advice on choosing his career. He regrets it now.*

A. If Mike had followed his parents’ advice on choosing his career, he wouldn’t regret it now.

B. Mike regrets having followed his parents’ advice on choosing his career.

C. If only Mike followed his parents’ advice on choosing his career.

D. Mike wishes he hadn’t followed his parents’ advice on choosing his career.

3.*The candidate was offered the job because of his excellent answers.*

A. The job was offered to the candidate although he couldn’t answer the questions.

B. If it hadn’t been for the candidate’s excellent answers, he couldn’t have got the job.

C. The candidate answered the questions so excellently that he might get the job.

D. Because it was such a good job, the candidate tried to answer the questions excellently.

*4. I didn’t pay attention to the teacher. I failed to understand the lesson.*

A. Although I paid attention to the teacher, I failed to understand the lesson.

B. I would have understood the lesson if I had failed to pay attention to the teacher.

C. I would have understood the lesson if I had paid attention to the teacher.

D. Unless I failed to understand the lesson, I would pay attention to the teacher.

*5. Without my tutor’s help, I couldn’t have made such a good speech.*

A. Had my tutor not helped me, I couldn’t make such a good speech.

B. If my tutor didn’t help me, I couldn’t make such a good speech.

C. If it hadn’t been for my tutor’s help, I couldn’t have made such a good speech.

D. If my tutor hadn’t helped me, I could have made such a good speech.

*6. We survived that accident because we were wearing our seat belts.*

A. But for our seat belts, we would have survived that accident.

B. Had we not been wearing our seat belts, we wouldn’t have survived that accident.

C. Without our seat belts, we could have survived that accident.

D. If we weren’t wearing our seat belts, we couldn’t have survived that accident.

*7. They were late for the meeting because of the heavy snow.*

A. If it snowed heavily, they would be late for the meeting.

B. Had it not snowed heavily, they would have been late for the meeting.

C. But for the heavy snow, they wouldn’t have been late for the meeting.

D. If it didn’t snow heavily, they wouldn’t be late for the meeting.

*8. He was successful in his career thanks to his parents’ support.*

A. Had it not been for his parents’ support, he wouldn’t be successful in his career.

B. If his parents hadn’t supported him, he wouldn’t have been successful in his career.

C. But for his parents’ support, he wouldn’t be successful in his career.

D. Without his parents’ support, he would have been successful in his career.

*9. They cancelled all the sporting events because of the heavy rain.*

A. Without the heavy rain, they wouldn’t cancel all the sporting events.

B. If it hadn’t rained heavily, they would have cancelled all the sporting events.

C. If it didn’t rain heavily, they wouldn’t cancel all the sporting events.

D. Had it not rained heavily, they wouldn’t have cancelled all the sporting events.

*10. You are in this mess right now because you didn’t listen to me in the first place.*

A. If you listen to my advice in the first place, you will not be in this mess right now.

B. If you had listened to my advice in the first place, you wouldn’t be in this mess right now.

C. If you listened to my advice in the first place, you wouldn’t be in this mess right now.

D. If you had listened to my advice in the first place, you wouldn’t have been in this mess right now

*11. It was only because I owed Bill a favor that I agree to help him.*

A. I agree to help Bill only as a favor.

B. I agree to do Bill a favor, by helping him.

C. I only agreed to help Bill because I owed him some money.

D. If I hadn’t owed Bill a favor, I wouldn’t have agreed to help him.

*12. John didn’t install an alarm, so the thieves broke into his house last night.*

A. If John installed an alarm, the thieves didn’t break into his house last night.

B. Because John hadn’t installed an alarm, the thieves would break into his house last night.

C. If John had installed an alarm, the thieves wouldn’t break into his house last night.

D. Had John installed an alarm, the thieves wouldn’t have broken into his house last night.

*13. Without transportation, our modern society would not exist.*

A. If there were no transportation, our modern society would not exist.

B. If transportation no longer exists, our modern society will not either.

C. Our modern society will not exist without having traffic.

D. Our modern society does not exist if there is no transportation.

*14. I’ll let you borrow the book but you must promise to return it next week.*

A. If you promise to return the book, I let you borrow it.

B. If you promised to return the book, I’ll let you borrow it.

C. If you promises to return the book next week, I won’t let you borrow it.

D. If you promise to return the book next week, I’ll let you borrow it.

*15. He could have gone by bus and so saved a lot of money.*

A. He wouldn’t have saved much money if he had taken the bus.

B. He would have gone by bus if he had saved money for the fare.

C. He traveled by bus, and it didn’t cost him much.

D. He would have spent less money if he had traveled by bus.

*16. The staff couldn’t have worked any harder, and they could not even finish half of the order all the week.*

1. Had the staff worked a little harder, they might have finished all the order by the end of the week.
2. Throughout the week, the staff could only complete half of the order, which how they did not work as hard as they should have.
3. The staff, who only completed half of the order all week, could not have worked as hard as they claimed they did.
4. Throughout the week, less than half of the order could be produced, although the staff worked as hard as they could.

*17. This conference wouldn’t have been possible without your organization.*

A. If you didn’t organize, this conference wouldn’t have been possible.

B. Your organization made it possible for this conference to take place.

C. If it hadn’t been for your organization, this conference wouldn’t have been possible.

D. If it weren’t for your organization, this conference wouldn’t be possible.

*18. I didn’t have an umbrella with me, so I got wet.*

A. Since I got wet, I didn’t have an umbrella with me.

B. My umbrella helped me to get wet.

C. I wouldn’t have got wet if I had had an umbrella with me.

D. I got wet, so I didn’t have an umbrella.

*19. Unless you leave me alone, I’ll call the police.*

A. I’ll call the police because you leave me alone.

B. I’ll call the police if you don’t leave me alone.

C. If you leave me alone, I’ll call the police.

D. You leave me alone, so I’ll call the police.

*20. If I had known the reason why she was absent from class, I would have told you.*

A. I knew the reason why she was absent from class, but I didn’t tell you.

B. Unless I knew the reason why she was absent from class, I wouldn’t tell you.

C. I didn’t know the reason why she was absent from class, so I didn’t tell.

D. Although I knew the reason why she was absent from class, I didn’t tell you.

*21. But for your carelessness you could have been a partner in the firm.*

A. If it hadn’t been your carelessness, you could have been a partner in the firm.

B. Your carelessness was the only thing to prevent being a partner in the firm.

C. It was your carelessness that made you impossible to be a partner in the firm

D. You could have been a partner in the firm, but you were so careless.

*22. Unless you have tickets you can’t come in.*

A. You can’t come in provided that you have tickets.

B. You can come in provided that you have tickets.

C. If you didn’t have tickets, you couldn’t come in.

D. Unless you don’t have tickets, you can come in.

*23. Unfortunately, I don’t know philosophy, so I can’t answer your question.*

A. If I know Philosophy, I can answer your question.

B. If I know Philosophy, I will be able to answer your question.

C. If I knew Philosophy, I would be able to answer your question.

D. If I had known Philosophy, I would have been able to answer your question.

*24. He didn’t take his father’s advice. That’s why he is out of work now.*

A. If he took his father’s advice, he would not be out of work now.

B. If he had taken his father’s advice, he would not have been out of work now.

C. If he had taken his father’s advice, he would not be out of work now.

D. If he takes his father’s advice, he will not be out of work now.

*25. I didn’t speak to Anita because I didn’t see her.*

A. If I saw Anita, I would speak to her.

B. If I had seen Anita, I would have spoken to her.

C. Although I spoke to Anita, I didn’t see her.

D. I saw Anita so that I could speak to her.

* **LÝ THUYẾT TRỌNG TÂM**

**Dạng 2: Viết lại câu dùng đảo ngữ**

|  |
| --- |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÁC TRẠNG TỪ PHỦ ĐỊNH |
| **Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly, Scarcely, Barely,...+ trợ động từ + S + V**  **Eg : Little** did he know the truth.  **Eg : Never** in my life have I been in such an embarrassing situation. |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI ONLY |
| **1.Only after + S + V** + Trợ động từ + S + V(chỉ sau khi)  **Eg :** Only afterI had left home did I realize how important my family played a role in my life.  **2.Only after** + **N** + Trợ động từ + S + V(chỉ sau khi)  **Eg :** Only after his father's retirement did he take over the company.  **3.Only by** + V-ing + Trợ động từ + S + V(chỉ bằng cách)  **Eg :** Only bystudying hard can you pass the exam  **4.Only if** + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V(chỉ nếu)  **Eg :** Only ifyou promise to keep secret will I tell you about it.  **5.Only when** + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ khi)  **Eg :** Only whenyou grow up can you understand this matter  **6.Only with** + N + trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ với)  **Eg :** Only withyour help can we manage.  **7.Only once/ Only later/ Only in this way/ Only then** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ  **Eg :** Only oncehave I met her.  **Eg :** Only laterdid I realize I was wrong. |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI HARDLY/NO SOONER |
| **1.Hardly/barely/scarcely** + had + S + Vp2 + **when** + S + V (quá khứ đơn)  **Eg :** **Hardly** had I gone to bed when the telephone rang  **2.No sooner** + had + S + Vp2+ than + S + V (quá khứ đơn) (Ngay khi/vừa mới... thì)  **Eg :No sooner** had I gone to bed than the telephone rang. |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOT ONLY……BUT ALSO |
| **Not only** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ + **but also** + Chủ ngữ + Động từ (không những... mà còn)  **Eg :Not only** does she sing beautifully but also she learns well. |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI SO THAT/SUCH THAT |
| **1.So** + Tính từ + V + chủ ngữ + that + clause  **Eg :So** beautiful is she that many boys run after her.  **2.Such** + be + N + that + clause/ N + be + such + that + clause(quá... đến nỗi mà)  **Eg :**Her anger was such that she broke the vase.  = **Such** was her anger that she broke the vase. |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NEITHER |
| **Neither** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ  **Eg : Neither** is there excitement nor entertainment in this small town. |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN |
| **1.Câu điều kiện loại I:** Should + S+V, V + O /S + will, can... + V  **Eg : Should** he come, please tell him to see me.  **2.Câu điêu kiện loại II:**Were + S + (to V) + ..., S + would/could + V  **Eg : Were** I you, I would apply for that job. Were I to have enough money, I would buy that car.  **3.Câu điều kiện loại III:**Had + S + Vp2, S + would/could + have + Vp2  **Eg : Had** the car in the front not stopped so suddenly, the accidents wouldn't have happened. |
| ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOR |
| **Nor** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ  **Eg :** He doesn't smoke, **nor** does he drink |
| ĐẢO NGỮ CÓ SO/NEITHER |
| **So/Neither** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ  **Eg :** I can't sing well, **neither** can my sister. He loves football, **so** do I. |

* **BÀI TẬP ÁP DỤNG**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.***

1. Laura practised playing the instrument a lot. She could hardly improve her performance.

A.Hardly had Laura practised playing the instrument a lot when she could improve her performance.

B.Had Laura practised playing the instrument a lot, she could have performed much better.

C.However much Laura practised playing die instrument, she could hardly perform any better.

D.As soon as Laura practised playing the instrument a lot, she could perform much better.

1. She gave a great performance at the festival. We now know she has artistic talent.

A.Amazing as her artistic talent is, we don’t know about her great performance at the festival.

B.Hardly had we known about her artistic talent when she gave a great performance at the festival.

C.Although she gave a great performance at the festival, now we still don’t know she has artistic talent.

D.But for her great performance at the festival, we wouldn’t know about her artistic talent now.

1. Peter told US about his leaving the school. He did it on his arrival at the meeting.

A.Only after his leaving the school did Peter inform US of his arrival at the meeting.

B.Not until Peter told US that he would leave the school did he arrive at the meeting.

C.Hardly had Peter informed US about his leaving the school when he arrived at the meeting.

D.No sooner had Peter arrived at the meeting than he told US about his leaving the school.

1. Mike became a father. He felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.

A.Were Mike to become a father himself, he would feel a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.

B.Only after Mike had become a father himself did he feel a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.

C.Had Mike become a father himself, he would have felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents.

D.Not until he felt a strong sense of responsibility towards his parents did Mike become a father himself.

1. My sister started computer programming . Then , she left school.

A. No sooner had my sister started computer programming than she left school.

B. Hardly had my sister started computer programming that she left school.

C. No sooner had my sister left school than she started computer programming.

D. After my sister left school,she had started computer programming.

1. I didn’t feel tired . I went to school .

A. Were I to feel tired , I wouldn’t have gone to school .

B Were I not to feel tired , I would have gone to school .

C.Had I felt tired , I wouldn’t have gone to school .

D.Were I to feel tired , I wouldn’t go to school .

1. The boy showed himself a good student. He also proved himself a good athlete.

A. Not only he showed himself a good student but he also proved himself a good athlete.

B. He did not show himself only a good student but he also proved himself a good athlete.

C. A good student not only showed him but he also proved himself a good athlete.

D. Not only did he show himself a good student but he also proved himself a good athlete.

1. She is beautiful. She is also very intelligent.

A. Not only she is beautiful but she is also very intelligent.

B. Not only beautiful she is but she is also very intelligent.

C. Not only is she beautiful but she is also very intelligent.

D. Not only beautiful is she but she is also very intelligent.

1. A small stream ran at the end of the street. There was an overgrown garden across the stream.

A.At the end of the street ran a small stream and across the stream was an overgrown garden.

B. At the end of the street ran a small stream. There was an overgrown garden across the stream.

C. A small stream ran at the end of the street. Across the stream was an overgrown garden.

D. At the end of the street did a small stream run. Across the stream was an overgrown garden.

1. She doesn’t have a college degree. She couldn’t be employed.

A. Unless she had a college degree, she could be employed.

B. If only she had had a college degree, she could be employed.

C. Only when she had a college degree, she could be employed.

D. Were she to have a college degree, she could have been employed.

1. My sister is absent from her class now. She has a terrible headache.

A. Unless my sister doesn’t have a terrible headache, she won’t be absent from her class now.

B. Were my sister not to have a terrible headache, she wouldn’t be absent from her class now.

C. If my sister doesn’t have a terrible headache, she won’t be absent from her class now.

D. Were my sister to have a terrible headache, she wouldn’t be absent from her class now.

1. I didn’t eat lunch, I feel hungry now.

A. Had I eat lunch, I wouldn’t feel hungry now.

B. If only I had eaten lunch, I wouldn’t have felt hungry now.

C. If I ate lunch, I wouldn’t feel hungry now.

D. Had I eaten lunch, I wouldn’t feel hungry now.

1. He didn’t revise all his lessons, he failed the exam.

A. If only had he revised all his lessons, he wouldn’t have failed the exam.

B. No sooner had he revised all his lessons than he failed the exam.

C. Had had he revised all his lessons, he wouldn’t have failed the exam.

D. Were he to revise all his lessons, he wouldn’t fail the exam.

1. The park is over there. It takes you only 5 minutes’ walk.

A. Should you walk to the park, it will take you 5 minutes.

B. If you walk to the park, it will not take you 5 minutes.

C. Unless you walk to the park, it will take you 5 minutes.

D. Were you to walk to the park, it would take you 5 minutes.

1. Her aunt sent her money. Therefore, she continued to study.

A. Without her aunt’s money, she couldn’t have continue to study.

B. If her aunt had sent her money, she couldn’t have continued to study.

C. Had her aunt not sent her money, she couldn’t have continued to study.

D. Had her aunt sent her money, she couldn’t have continued to study.

1. After I had had lunch, I looked for my bag.

A. Only when I had had lunch, did I looked for my bag.

B. Hardly had I had lunch than I looked for my bag.

C. No sooner I had had lunch than I looked for my bag.

D. Only after I had had lunch, did I look for my bag.

1. No matter how hard Fred tried to start the car, he didn’t succeed.

A.Fred tried very hard to start the car, and succeeded.

B.However hard Fred tried, he couldn’t start the car.

C.It’s hard for Fred to start the car because he never succeeded.

D.Fred tried hard to start the car, and with success

1. Although he was very tired, he agreed to help his child with his homework.

A.Despite of his tiredness, he was eager to help his child with his homework.

B.Tired as he was, he agreed to help his child with his homework.

C.Even if feeling very tired, he agreed to help his child with his homework.

D.He would have helped his child with his homework if he hadn’t been tired.

1. The noise next door did not stop until after midnight.

A.It was not until after midnight that the noise next door stopped.

B.It was midnight that the noise next door stopped.

C.Not until after midnight did the noise next door stopped

D.The noise next door stopped at midnight.

1. At last the bus came. We had been waiting for half an hour.

A. Only after we had been waiting for half an hour, did the bus come.

B. Only when we had waited for half an hour, did the bus come.

C. No sooner had we waited for half an hour than the bus come.

D. Hardly had we waited for half an hour than the bus came.

1. The drought lowered the reservoir. The ancient village was discovered.

A. After the drought had lowered the reservoir, then the ancient village was discovered.

B. Had the drought not lowered the reservoir, the ancient village wouldn’t have been discovered.

C. Only when the drought lowered the reservoir, the ancient village was discovered.

D. Hardly the drought had lowered the reservoir when the ancient village was discovered.

1. After the bus had started to leave, Charlie realized that he was on the wrong route.

A. Only after the bus had started to leave, Charlie realized that he was on the wrong route.

B. Not until the bus had started to leave did Charlie realize that he was on the wrong route.

C. No sooner had the bus to leave than Charlie realized that he was on the wrong route.

D. It was not until the bus had started to leave, Charlie realize that he was on the wrong route.

1. The artist paints in oil. He also paints in water color.

A. Not only can the artist paint in oil, but also he paints in water color.

B. Not only the artist paints in oil, but also does he paint in water color.

C. Not only does the artist paint in oil, but he paints in water color as well.

D. Not only does the artist paint in oil, but he paints in water color also.

1. We had only just gone out. It began raining heavily.

A. We hardly had gone out when it began raining heavily.

B. Hardly we had gone out when the began raining heavily.

C. Hardly had we gone out, it began raining heavily.

D. We hadn’t gone out when it began raining heavily.

1. If I had known her phone number, I could have given it to you.

A. Were I to know her phone number, I could have given it to you.

B. Had I know her phone number, I could have given it to you.

C. Had I known her phone number, I could have given it to you.

D. Only after I knew her phone number, I could have given it to you.

1. As soon as I got into the bath, someone phoned me.

A. No sooner had I got into the bath than someone phoned me.

B. Only when I got into the bath, someone phoned me.

C. Not until I got into the bath, someone phoned me.

D. No sooner did I get into the bath, someone phoned me.

1. He had to wait for 3 hours before he received his ticket.

A. Only after 3 hours wait did he received his ticket.

B. Only after 3 hours wait did he receive his ticket.

C. After waited for 3 hours, he received his ticket.

D. Only when 3 hours waited, he received his ticket.

1. We seldom have lunch at home.

A. Seldom do we have lunch at home.

B. Seldom do we had lunch at home.

C. We never have lunch at home.

D. Hardly do we have lunch at home.

1. If I were you, I wouldn’t get married to that man.

A. Were I be you, I wouldn’t get married to that man.

B. Should I be you, I would get married to that man.

C. Had I been you, I wouldn’t get married to that man.

D. Were I to be you, I wouldn’t get married to that man.

1. Mr Brown spent all his money. He even borrowed some from me.

A. As soon as Mr Brown borrowed some money from me, he spent it all.

B. Hardly had Mr Brown borrowed some money from me when he spent it all.

C. Not only did Mr Brown spent all his money but also he borrowed some from me.

D. Not only did Mr Brown spend all his money but he borrowed some from me as well.

1. He had hardly left the office when the phone rang.

A.No sooner had he left the office than the phone rang.

B.No sooner he had left the office than the phone rang.

C.No sooner he had left the office when the phone rang.

D.No sooner he did left the office than the phone rang.

1. Exhaustion prevented any of the runners from finishing the race.

A.The runners can’t finish the race as a result of their exhaustion.

B.The runners are so exhausted that they can’t finish the race,

C.The runners were not exhausted enough to finish the race.

D.So exhausted were the runners that none of them finished the race.

1. I didn’t have enough money. I couldn’t go on a long holiday last year.

A. No sooner had I had enough money than I could go on a long holiday last year.

B. If only I had enough money, I could have gone on a long holiday last year.

C. Had I had enough money, I could have gone on a long holiday last year.

D. Were I to have enough money, I could have gone on a long holiday last year.

1. I'll buy a new hat. I'll give it to you.

A. Unless I buy a new hat, I'll give it to you.

B. Should I buy a new hat, I'll give it to you.

C. If I bought a new hat, I’d give it to you.

D. Were I to buy a new hat, I'd give it to you.

1. Today isn't Sunday. The pupils can't go swimming.

A. Unless today were Sunday, the pupils could go swimming.

B. Should today be Sunday, the pupils can go swimming.

C. Were today Sunday, the pupils could go swimming.

D. If today were Sunday, the pupils couldn’t go swimming.

1. Mark works at the post office. He also works at the grocery store.

A. Not only does Mary work at the post office, but she also works at the grocery store.

B. Only by working at the post office, Mark works at the grocery store.

C. Not only Mary works at the post office, but she also works at the grocery store.

D. Only when Mark works at the post office, he works at the grocery store.

1. My brother didn't have much free time. He didn't read this novel.

A. Had my brother had much free time, he would have read this novel.

B. If only my brother had much free time, he would have read this novel

C. Hardly had my brother have much free time when he would have read this novel.

D. Were my brother to have much free time, he would read this novel.

1. Bob wasn't here. He didn't have a lot of fun.

A. Had Bob been here, he wouldn’t have had a lot of fun.

B. No sooner had Bob been here than he had a lot of fun.

C. Had Bob been here, he would have had a lot of fun.

D. Should Bob be here, he will have a lot of fun.

1. He started computer programming as soon as he left school.

A.No sooner had he started computer programming than he left school.

B.Hardly had he started computer programming when he left school.

C.No sooner had he left school than he started computer programming.

D.After he left school, he had started computer programming.

1. We stayed in that hotel despite the noise.

A.Despite the hotel is noisy, we stayed here.

B.We stayed in the noisy hotel and we liked it.

C.No matter how noisy the hotel was, we stayed there.

D.Because of the noise, we stayed in the hotel.

1. As soon as he approached the house, the policeman stopped him.

A. No sooner had he approached the house than the policeman stopped him.

B. Hardly had he approached the house than the policeman stopped him.

C. No sooner had he approached the house when the policeman stopped him.

D. Hardly he had approached the house when the policeman stopped him.

1. Tom broke his leg, and also injured his shoulder

A.Not only did Tom break his leg but he also injured his shoulder

B. Not only Tom broke his leg but also did he injure his shoulder

C. Tom broke his leg and also did he injure his shoulder

D.Also injured his shoulder did Tom break his leg

1. The train had left. She realized she hadn’t locked the door.

A. Had the train left, she would have realized she hadn’t locked the door.

B. Only after the train had left did she realize she hadn’t locked the door.

C. It was not until the train had left did she realize she hadn’t locked the door.

D. No sooner had the train left when did she realize she hadn’t locked the door.

1. They arrived at the fair early. They had what they wanted.

A. Were they not to arrive at the fair early enough, they would have had what they wanted.

B. Supposing they were arriving at the fair early, they would have had what they wanted.

C. only after they had arrived at the fair early did they have what they wanted.

D. If they arrived at the fair early, they would have had what they wanted.

1. He got down to writing the letter as soon as he returned from his walk.

A. No sooner did he return from his walk than he got down to writing the letter.  
B. He got down to writing the letter before he returned from his walk.

C. He gets down to writing the letter before he returned from his walk.

1. D. He had got down to writing the letter, then he returned from his walk.  
   The goalkeeper didn’t play better, we didn’t win the game.

A. Had the goalkeeper played better, we would have won the game.

B. Were the goalkeeper to play better, we would have won the game.

C. If the goalkeeper played better, we would have won the game.

D. The goalkeeper played better, we would win the game.

1. You can speak English fluently only by practicing it every day.

A. Only by practicing English every day can you speak it fluently.

B. You speaks English fluently only by practicing it every day.

C. You may speak English fluently only by practicing it every day.

D. You must speak English fluently only by practicing it every day.

1. I didn’t know that I had lost my key till I got home.

A. Not until I got home did I know that I had lost my key

B. I didn’t know that I had lost my key after I got home.

C. I knew that I had lost my key till I got home.

1. D. I didn’t know that I hadn’t lost my key till I got home.  
   The rain became down in torrents as soon asshe put up her umbrella.

A. Hardly had she put up her umbrella when the rain became down in torrents.

B. The rain became down in torrents beforeshe put up her umbrella.

C. The rain became down in torrents whileshe put up her umbrella.

D. The rain became down in torrents becauseshe put up her umbrella.

1. Just after solving one problem, I was faced with another.

A. Scarcely had I solved one problem when I was faced with another.

B. Hardly had I solved one problem when I was faced with another.

C. No sooner had I solved one problem than I was faced with another.

D. All are correct.

1. We couldn’t relax until all the guests had left.

A. Not until all the guests had left could we relax.

B. It wasn’t until all the guests had left that we could relax.

C. It wasn’t until all the guests had left could we relax.

D. A and B are correct

1. The phone stopped ringing the moment I got downstairs.

A. No sooner had the phone stopped ringing than I got downstairs.

B. After the phone had stopped ringing, I got downstairs.

C. Hardly had the phone stopped ringing when I got downstairs.

D. No sooner had I got downstairs than the phone stopped ringing.

1. She didn’t shed a tear as the play ended in tragedy.

A. The tragedy play wasn’t good for her to shed tear.

B. Without her tear, the play didn’t end tragically.

C. So tragic was the play that she didn’t shed a tear.

D. Not a tear did she shed when the play ended in tragedy.

1. He spent all his money. He even borrowed some from me.

A. As soon as he borrowed some money from me, he spent it all.

B. Hardly had he borrowed some money from me when he spent it all.

C. Not only did he spent all his money but also he borrowed some from me.

D. Not only did he spend all his money but he borrowed some from me as well.

1. You don’t work for him. You don’t have the opportunity to promote.

A. Had you work for him, you would have had the opportunity to promote.

B. Were you to work for him, you would have the opportunity to promote.

C. Should you work for him, you will have the opportunity to promote.

D. Were you work for him, you would have had the opportunity to promote.

1. He is good at English. He can also draw very well.

A. Not only is he good at English but he can also draw very well.

B. Not only he is good at English but he can also draw very well.

C. Not only he is good at English but can he also draw very well.

D. Not only is he good at English but can he also draw very well.

1. You didn’t listen to my advice. You didn’t succeed in your business.

A. If you listened to my advice, you would have succeeded in your business.

B. Were you to listen to my advice, you would succeed in your business.

C. Had you listened to my advice, you would have succeeded in your business.

D. As long as you listen to my advice, you will succeed in your business.

1. I walked home from the disco. My friend was too drunk to drive.

A. If my friend weren’t too drunk to drive, I wouldn’t walk home from the disco.

B. Had my friend not been too drunk, I wouldn’t have walked home from the disco.

C. If my friend had not been too drunk, wouldn’t I have walked home from the disco.

D. Were my friend not too drunk to drive, I wouldn’t walk home from the disco.

1. She tried very hard to pass the driving test. She could hardly pass it.

A.Although she didn’t try hard to pass the driving test, she could pass it.

B.Despite being able to pass the driving test, she didn’t pass it.

C.No matter how hard she tried, she could hardly pass the driving test.

D.She tried very hard, so she passed the driving test satisfactorily.

1. The only way to eliminate world terrorism is by united opposition.

A.Only with united opposition could we eliminate terrorism.

B.Only by united opposition can we eliminate terrorism.

C.Only in this way can world terrorism be eliminated.

D.Only then can we eliminate terrorism.

**MODULE 32 : PRACTICE TEST**

**TEST 1**

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions*.**

1. A. hatr**ed** B. nak**ed** C. knock**ed** D. sacr**ed**
2. A. br**ought** B. dr**ought**  C. s**ought**  D. th**ought**

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.***

1. A. purposeB. compose C. propose D. suppose
2. A. entertain B. engineer C. committee D. referee

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

1. All my friends have big new cars, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. don't they B. do all C. haven't they D. do they

1. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that day. He had to pay $500 for that faulty part.

A. had his car repaired B. got the car to repair

C. had the mechanic repaired D. had the car repair

1. Fiona is very angry \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_her boss's decision to sack several members of staffs.

A. against B. with C. about D. at

1. The older I am, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I become.

A. more forgetful B. the most increasingly forgetful

C. the more forgetful increasingly D. the more increasingly forgetful

1. My roommate has just bought a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_car.

A. Japanese small old reddish B. small old reddish Japanese

C. small reddish old Japanese D. reddish small old Japanese

1. The passengers were waiting to board the game when it\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. rains B. was raining C. rained D. would rain

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_she worked harder, she couldn't make the deadline.

A. In spite of B. Even though C. Because D. Due to

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, the plans had been made for an intermediate evacuation of the city.

A. As soon as the bombing starts B. When the bombing had started

C. By the time the bombing started D. As long as the bombing started

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_out of emergency headquarters in Mississippi, the Red Cross set up temporary shelters for the homeless.

A. Operated B. Having operated

C. Have operated D. Being operated

1. She's very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ She's never quite sure what she wants to do.

A. decision B. indecisive C. decisive D. decided

1. In my opinion, it's a common sense to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a seat belt in a car.

A. carry on B. put out C. put on D. carry out

1. How do you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_about the pollution problem in this country?

A. react B. feel C. believe D. view

1. Nobody died in the terrorism, but 20 people were \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. damaged B. injured C. spoiled D. wounded

1. My uncle\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of the inheritance.

A. let the cat out of the bag B. got the lion's share

C. rolled up his sleeves D. broke a leg

1. You are under no\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to help as assistance is purely voluntary.

A. control B. obligation C. circumstance D. judgement

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

1. From a financial point of view, it was a very **risky** plan.

A. dangerous B. spoiled C. adventurous D. safe

1. The conference was really messy and a complete **waste of time.**

A. disorganized B. useless C. chaotic D. useful

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

1. She's very **efficient.** She can be relied on to do her job properly.

A. cautious B. haughty C. ineffective D. incompetent

1. She has **taken power** after winning the election.

A. ruled B. resigned C. given in D. lost the way

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the option that best completes each of the following exchanges.***

1. **Jane:** "Could you show me the way to the station?"

**Jack:** "\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_"

A. About ten minutes. B. The show is not interesting.

C. The station is far from here. D. Go ahead, then turn left.

1. **Peter:** "The air quality in Hanoi is getting worse and worse".

**Jenny:"** \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_". I can't see anything in the morning because of too much smog.

A. I don't really think so. B. I don't quite agree.

C. You can say that again. D. That's not a matter.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.***

Psychologists and neuroscientists have divided memory systems into two broad (26) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, declarative and nondeclarative. The declarative memory system is the system of memory (27) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is perhaps the most familiar. It is the memory system that has a conscious component and it includes the memories of facts and events. A fact like 'Paris is the capital of France', or an event like a prior vacation to Paris. Nondeclarative memory, also called implicit memory, includes the types of memory systems that do not have a conscious component but are nevertheless extremely (28)\_\_\_\_\_\_. They include the memories for skills and habits (e.g., riding a bicycle, driving a car, playing golf or tennis or a piano), a phenomenon called priming, simple forms of associative learning and finally (29)\_\_\_\_\_\_ simple forms of nonassociative learning such as habituation and sensitization. Declarative memory is "knowing what"; (30) \_\_\_\_\_\_, nondeclarative memory is "knowing how".

*(Adapted from John H. Byrne, Ph.D., Department of Neurobiology and Anatomy, McGover Medical School)*

1. A. categories B. bonds C. structures D. systems
2. A. when B. which C. who D. where
3. A. unimportant B. trivial C. significant D. nonsense
4. A. another B. the others C. others D. other
5. A. but B. besides C. as long as D. therefore

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.***

Edward Patrick Eagan was born April 26, 1897, in Denver, Colorado, and his father died in a railroad accident when Eagan was only a year old. He and his four brothers were raised by his mother, **who** earned a small income from teaching foreign languages. Inspired by Frank Merriwell, the hero of a series of popular novels for boys, Eagan pursued an education for himself as well as an interest in boxing. He attended the University of Denver for a year before serving in the U.S. Army as an artillery lieutenant during World War I. After the war, he entered Yale University and, while studying there, won the U.S. national amateur heavyweight boxing title. He graduated from Yale in 1921, attended Harvard Law School, and received a Rhodes scholarship to the University of Oxford where he received his A.M. in 1928.

While studying at Oxford, Eagan became the first American to win the British amateur boxing championship. Eagan won his first Olympic gold medal as a light heavyweight boxer at the 1920 Olympic Games in Antwerp, Belgium. Eagan also fought at the 1924 Olympics in Paris as a heavyweight but failed to get a medal. Though he had taken up the sport just three weeks before the competition, he managed to win a second gold medal as a member of the fourman bobsled team at the 1932 Olympics in Lake Placid, New York. Thus, he became the only athlete to win gold medals at both the Summer and Winter Olympics. Eagan was a member of the first group of athletes inducted into the U.S. Olympic Hall of Fame in 1983. Eagan became a respected attorney, serving as an assistant district attorney for southern New York and as chairman of the New York State Athletic Commission (1945 - 51). He married soap heiress Margaret Colgate and attained the rank of lieutenant colonel during World War II. Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

A. Eagan's life shows how a wealthy student can achieve as much as a poor one.

B. Eagan's life shows that military experience makes athletes great.

C. Eagan's life shows that a man can be athlete and a well-educated person.

D. Eagan's life shows how easy it is to win two gold medals in different Olympic sports.

1. The word **"who"** in paragraph 1 refers to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. Eagan's mother B. Frank Merriwell's mother

C. Eagan's brothers D. Eagan's father

1. What is **NOT TRUE** about Eagan?

A. Eagan's mother was a foreign teacher.

B. Eagan's father passed away when he was only one year old.

C. After Eagan's father's death, his family had only 6 members left.

D. Eagan pursued boxing as an interest.

1. Eagan got a scholarship for his\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. amateur heavyweight boxing B. studying at Yale

C.A.M D. Olympic gold medal

1. The word **"attained"** in the last paragraph is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. defeated B. inducted C. achieved D. handed in

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.***

Tomatoes are probably the most popular garden vegetable grown in the United States. This can be **attributed to** their unique flavor, attractiveness, richness as a source of vitamins C and A, and versatility as a food. The popularity of peppers as a garden plant can be attributed to the same factors, although they are usually not consumed in large enough quantities to make them an important nutritional factor in the diet.

The cultivated tomato originated in the Andes mountains of South America. It are usually not consumed in large enough quantities to make them an important nutritional factor in the diet. The cultivated tomato originated in the Andes mountains of South America. It was introduced to other areas of the world by Indians and European travelers. Its seeds were taken to Europe, where a superstition soon arose that the tomato stimulated love. Because of **this**, the tomato was called the "love apple". The first report of the tomato in North America was in 1710, where it was grown primarily as an ornamental plant. Early colonists brought the seeds to Virginia and grew tomatoes in flower gardens.

Tomatoes, actually a fruit that is used as a vegetable, began gaining wide acceptance as a food plant in the United States between 1820 and 1850. Modern plant growers have done much to improve the tomato and to add to its usefulness. Its productivity has been doubled, and varieties with larger, smoother, more even shapes and meatier pulps have been developed. The tomato is the leading crop canned in the Unites States today.

Peppers are also native to America and were grown by American Indian tribes in both North and South America over 2,000 years ago. The small red hot peppers were discovered by Columbus in the West Indies and introduced into Europe, where they became popular before gaining widespread acceptance in the United States. Peppers became one of the first New World foods used commercially in Europe. Botanists class the fruit of the bush-type garden pepper as a berry. Although most varieties of peppers produce red fruits (which are green in their immature stage), there are some yellow-fruited varieties, and peppers are of both mild and pungent types. Peppers enjoy warm climates, and young plants can be injured by frosts. **Seasonings** such as paprika and chili powder and food products such as canned pimentos are commercial uses of garden peppers that are grown in the United States today.

The familiar spice black pepper known in households throughout the world is the product of a trailing or climbing shrub grown in Indonesia and other hot countries. The islands of Java and Madura furnish most of the black pepper used in American homes. The United States buys almost 25,000 tons of this spice annually.

1. What is the topic of the passage?

A. Why tomatoes are more popular than peppers

B. Tomatoes and peppers

C. The nutritional value of garden vegetables

D. food discoveries of early Europeans

1. The phrase "**attributed to**" in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. inducted into B. thanked for C. resulted from D. resulted in

1. The word "**this**" in paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. a superstition B. a tomato C. a love D. love apple

1. According to the passage, different types of tomatoes have been developed\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. with larger, smoother, more even shapes and meatier pulps

B. as the slow crop canned in the Unites States today

C. as quickly as peppers

D. uselessly

1. All of the following can be inferred from the passage about peppers **EXCEPT** \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. peppers became popular in the United States later than in Europe

B. peppers were bought and sold in Europe

C. red peppers are highly spices

D. peppers originated fairly recently, in North and South America

1. The word "s**easonings**" in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .

A. spicy B. flavorings C. peppers D. foods

1. What can be inferred from the passage?

A. The familiar spice black pepper is the product of a trailing or climbing shrub only grown in Indonesia.

B. America is home to both tomatoes and peppers.

C. Tomato is not a kind of fruit.

D. The United States produces a large amount of pepper spice per year.

***Mark letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correction.***

1. Not Scotland again! It rains every day last time. I want to go somewhere sunny this summer.

A. Not B. rains C. somewhere D. sunny

1. Because it does not have a blood supply, the cornea takes their oxygen directly from the air.

A. have B. supply C. their D. directly

1. This is an exhausting list of grammar rules you will need to know for the exam.

A. exhausting B. rules C. to know D. the

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.***

1. I haven't heard from him for ages.

A. I didn't write to him for ages. B. I last wrote to him long time ago.

C. I wrote to him for ages. D. I haven't written to him long time ago.

1. "Can I see your ticket?", the curator said.

A. The curator required to see my ticket. B. The curator promised to see my ticket.

C. The curator offered me a ticket. D. The curator hoped to see my ticket.

1. Jane still wants to go to the supermarket although the fridge is full of fruits.

A. There is no need for Jane to go to the supermarket.

B. Jane should go to the supermarket.

C. Jane hadn't better go to the supermarket.

D. Jane mustn't go to the supermarket.

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.***

1. We couldn't see the mountains because of the rain.

A. If only it didn't rain so we could see the mountains.

B. If it hadn't rained, we could see the mountains.

C. I wish I had been able to see the mountains without rain.

D. But for the rain, I could see the mountains.

1. When we crossed the fields, we saw a tiny house at the foot of the mountain.

A. No sooner had we crossed the fields when we saw a tiny house at the foot of the mountain.

B. Not until we crossed the fields did we see a tiny house at the foot of the mountain.

C. Scarcely had we crossed the fields than we saw a tiny house at the foot of the mountain.

D. It was not until we crossed the fields did we see a tiny house at the foot of the mountain.

**GIẢI THÍCH CHI TIẾT**

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions*.**

**1.** A. hatr**ed** /id/ B. nak**ed /id/** C. knock**ed** /t/ D. sacr**ed** /id/

**Đáp án C /t/ khác /id/**

**2.** A. br**ought** /ɔːt/ B. dr**ought**  /aʊt/ C. s**ought** /ɔːt/ D. th**ought**/ɔːt/

**Đáp án B** /aʊt/ khác /ɔːt/

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.***

**3.** A. purpose/1/B. compose /2/ C. propose /2/ D. suppose /2/

**Đáp án A** /1/ khác /2/

**4.** A. entertain/3/ B. engineer /3/ C. committee /2/ D. referee/3/

**Đáp án C** /2/ khác /3/

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

**5.**All my friends have big new cars, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. don't they B. do all C. haven't they D. do they

**Đáp án A**

**Câu hỏi đuôi**

Thì hiện tại đơn mượn trợ động từ **do thêm not thành don’t** vì phía trước không có Phủ định

All my friends => they

**6.**He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ that day. He had to pay $500 for that faulty part.

A. had his car repaired B. got the car to repair

C. had the mechanic repaired D. had the car repair

**Đáp án A**

**Bị động :** had sb do sth ( nhờ ai làm gì) => Bị động had sth done

**7.**Fiona is very angry \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_her boss's decision to sack several members of staffs.

A. against B. with C. about D. at

**Đáp án C**

**Angry + with sb about sth**

**8.**The older I am, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ I become.

A. more forgetful B. the most increasingly forgetful

C. the more forgetful increasingly D. the more increasingly forgetful

**Đáp án D**

**So sánh càng càng :** The so sánh hơn S V, The so sánh hơn S V

**9.**My roommate has just bought a \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_car.

A. Japanese small old reddish B. small old reddish Japanese

C. small reddish old Japanese D. reddish small old Japanese

**Đáp án B**

**Trật tự tính từ :** ASASCOMP

**10.**The passengers were waiting to board the game when it\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. rains B. was raining C. rained D. would rain

**Đáp án C**

Hành động đang xảy ra có hành động khác xen vào thì hành động xen vào chia ở quá khư đơn nếu hành động đang diễn ra chia ở quá khứ tiếp diễn.

**11.**\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_she worked harder, she couldn't make the deadline.

A. In spite of B. Even though C. Because D. Due to

**Đáp án B**

Mặt dù cô ấy làm việc rất chăm chỉ nhưng cô ấy vẫn không kịp deadline loại C , D

**In spite of + N**

**Even though + S + V**

**12.**\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_, the plans had been made for an intermediate evacuation(sơ tán) of the city.

A. As soon as the bombing starts B. When the bombing had started

C. By the time the bombing started D. As long as the bombing started

**Đáp án C**

*By the time S + V HTĐ/HTHT, S + TLHT*

*By the time S + V QKĐ, S + QKHT*

**13.**\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_out of emergency headquarters in Mississippi, the Red Cross set up temporary shelters for the homeless.

A. Operated B. Having operated

C. Have operated D. Being operated

**Đáp án B**

**Phân từ Nhấn mạnh sự hoàn thành của hành động**

Khi người ta đã xắp xếp xong trụ sở chính cấp cứu hội chữ thập đõ đã dựng nên những nơi ở tạm cho những người vô gia cư.

**Having + V3/ed**

**14.**She's very \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ She's never quite sure what she wants to do.

A. decision (n) B. indecisive (a)( C. decisive (a) D. decided(Vp2)

**Đáp án B**

**Từ loại : Sau be + Ajective loại A,D**

B.indecisive (a)(không quyết đoán) C. decisive (a)(quyết đoán)

*She's never quite sure what she wants to do. (Cô ấy không bao giờ chắc về điều cô ấy muốn => cô ấy là người không quyết đoán.)*

**15.**In my opinion, it's a common sense to\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a seat belt in a car.

A. carry on (tiếp tuc B. put out (dập tắt) C. put on=wear (cài) D. carry out (tiến hành)

**Đáp án C**

**Cụm động từ**

Theo quan điểm tôi thấy nó rất bình thường chúng ta phải cài dây an toàn trong xe ô tô

**16.**How do you\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_about the pollution problem in this country?

A. react + to B. feel + about (cảm tấy thế nào)

C. believe D. view

**Đáp án B**

**Từ vựng**

***feel + about (cảm tấy thế nào)***

**17.**Nobody died in the *terrorism(vụ khủng bố)*, but 20 people were \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. damaged(phá hủy)

B. injured(bị thương trong tai nạn không may xảy ra)

C. spoiled( hư hỏng)

D. wounded (bị thương do boom, khủng bố)

**Đáp án D**

Không ai bị chết trong vụ khủng bố nhưng khoảng 20 người bị thương

**18.**My uncle\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of the **inheritance(thừa kế)**.

A. let the cat out of the bag(tiết lộ)

B. got the lion's share (chiếm phần nhiều)(hậu hĩnh)

C. rolled up his sleeves( chuẩn bị để làm việc chăm chỉ)

D. broke a leg (chúc may mắn)

**Đáp án B**

**Chú của tôi nhận được tài sản hậu hĩnh trong vụ thừa kế**

**19.**You are under no\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to help as assistance is purely voluntary.

A. control B. obligation C. circumstance D. judgement

**Đáp án B**

**Cụm từ cố định**

*under no obligation (không có nghĩa vụ phải làm gì)*

Ngoài ra ta còn có under no control : không bị kiểm soát

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

**20.**From a financial point of view, it was a very **risky** (mạo hiểm) plan.

A. dangerous (nguy hiểm) B. spoiled(hư)

C. adventurous (mạo hiểm) D. safe (an toàn)

**Đáp án C**

**Từ quan điểm tài chính, đó là một kế hoạch rất rủi ro (mạo hiểm).**

**22.**The conference was really messy and a complete **waste of time(lãng phí mất thời gian).**

A. disorganized(vô tổ chức) B. useless (vô ích)

C. chaotic(lung tung) D. useful(có ích)

**Đáp án B**

**Hội nghị thực sự lộn xộn và lãng phí thời gian.**

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

**23.**She's very **efficient(hiệu quả).** She can be relied on to do her job properly.

A. cautious (cẩn thận) B. haughty (kiêu ngao

C. ineffective (không hiệu quả) D. incompetent (không có năng lực)

**Đáp án D**

**Cô ấy rất hiệu quả. Cô ấy có thể được dựa vào để làm công việc của mình một cách đúng đắn.**

**24.**She has **taken power(nắm quyền)** after winning the election.

A. ruled (nắm quyền) B. resigned(từ chức) C. given in(nhượng bộ) D. lost the way(mất phương hướng)

**Đáp án B**

**Cô ấy đã nắm quyền sau khi thắng cử.**

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the option that best completes each of the following exchanges.***

**25.Jane:** "Could you show me the way to the station?"

**Jack:** "\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_"

A. About ten minutes. B. The show is not interesting.

C. The station is far from here. D. Go ahead, then turn left.

**Đáp án D**

**Giao tiêp**

Bạn có thể chỉ cho tôi đường đến nhà ga được không

A.Khoảng mười phút. B. Chương trình không thú vị.

C.Nhà ga là xa đây. D. Đi tiếp, sau đó rẽ trái.

**26.Peter:** "The air quality in Hanoi is getting worse and worse".

**Jenny:"** \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_". I can't see anything in the morning because of too much smog.

A. I don't really think so. B. I don't quite agree.

C. You can say that again.= I agree D. That's not a matter.

**Đáp án C**

**Giao tiếp**

**Peter:** Chất lượng không khí ở Hà Nội ngày càng trở nên tồi tệ

**Jenny:**"\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_” Tôi không thể nhìn thấy gì vào buổi sáng vì quá nhiều sương mù.

A.Tôi không thực sự nghĩ như vậy. B.Tôi không hoàn toàn đồng ý.

C.Đồng ý D.Đó không phải là một vấn đề

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks.***

**26.** **Đáp án A**

A. categories (loại) B. bonds C. structures(cấu trúc) D. systems(hệ thống)

*Các nhà tâm lý học và nhà khoa học thần kinh đã chia hệ thống trí nhớ thành hai loại lớn, có tính khai báo và không so sánh được.*

**27.** **Đáp án B**

**+ the system of memory (hệ thống của bộ nhớ) + which + V**

**28.** **Đáp án C**

A. unimportant (không quan trọng) B. trivial (không đáng kể)

C. significant (cực kỳ quan trọng) D. nonsense (vô lý)

*Trí nhớ không xác định, còn được gọi là trí nhớ ngầm, bao gồm các loại hệ thống trí nhớ không có thành phần ý thức nhưng vẫn cực kỳ quan trọng.*

**29.** **Đáp án D**

**Forms (N + số nhiều) do đó chọn other**

**30.** **Đáp án B**

**Bổ sung ý cho nhau chọn B**

**Dịch bài đọc**

Các nhà tâm lý học và nhà khoa học thần kinh đã chia hệ thống trí nhớ thành hai loại lớn, có tính khai báo và không so sánh được. Hệ thống bộ nhớ khai báo là hệ thống bộ nhớ có lẽ là quen thuộc nhất. Đó là hệ thống trí nhớ có một thành phần ý thức và nó bao gồm những ký ức về các sự kiện và sự kiện. Một sự kiện như 'Paris là thủ đô của Pháp', hoặc một sự kiện như một kỳ nghỉ trước khi đến Paris. Trí nhớ không xác định, còn được gọi là trí nhớ ngầm, bao gồm các loại hệ thống trí nhớ không có thành phần ý thức nhưng vẫn cực kỳ quan trọng. Chúng bao gồm ký ức về các kỹ năng và thói quen (ví dụ: đi xe đạp, lái xe ô tô, chơi gôn hoặc quần vợt hoặc đàn piano), một hiện tượng gọi là mồi, các hình thức học tập kết hợp đơn giản và cuối cùng là các hình thức học tập không liên kết đơn giản khác như thói quen và sự nhạy cảm. Bộ nhớ khai báo là "biết những gì"; ngoài ra, trí nhớ không phân biệt là "biết như thế nào". Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.***

**31.** **Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Ý chính của đoạn văn là gì?**  Cuộc đời của Eagan cho thấy một người đàn ông có thể là vận động viên và là một người được giáo dục tốt. |

**32. Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Từ "who" trong đoạn 1 thay thế cho mẹ của Eagan**  **Thông tin :** Edward Patrick Eagan was born April 26, 1897, in Denver, Colorado, and his father died in a railroad accident when Eagan was only a year old. He and his four brothers were raised by his mother, **who** earned a small income from teaching foreign languages.  (Edward Patrick Eagan sinh ngày 26 tháng 4 năm 1897 tại Denver, Colorado, và cha ông qua đời trong một vụ tai nạn đường sắt khi Eagan mới một tuổi. Anh và bốn anh em của mình được nuôi dưỡng bởi mẹ anh, người kiếm được một khoản thu nhập nhỏ từ việc dạy ngoại ngữ.) |

**33. Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Điều gì KHÔNG ĐÚNG về Eagan?**  **Thông tin :** He and his four brothers were raised by his mother, **who** earned a small income from teaching foreign languages.  (Anh và bốn anh em của mình được nuôi dưỡng bởi mẹ anh, người kiếm được một khoản thu nhập nhỏ từ việc dạy ngoại ngữ.)  Mẹ anh ta kiếm tiền từ việc dạy ngoại ngữ chứ không phải là giáo viên người nước ngoài vì thế ta chọn A |

**34. Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Eagan đã nhận được học bổng vì\_\_\_\_\_\_\_**  **Thông tin :** He graduated from Yale in 1921, attended Harvard Law School, and received a Rhodes scholarship to the University of Oxford where he received his A.M. in 1928. (Ông tốt nghiệp Yale năm 1921, theo học Trường Luật Harvard, và nhận học bổng Rhodes tại Đại học Oxford, nơi ông nhận bằng A.M. vào năm 1928.)  **Vì vậy ta chọn đáp án C** |

**35. Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| Từ " **attained** " trong đoạn cuối cùng gần nghĩa nhất với  **Thông tin :** He married soap heiress Margaret Colgate and **attained** the rank of lieutenant colonel during World War II.  A. defeated(đánh bại) B. inducted(giới thiệu trang trọng)  C. achieved(đạt được) D. handed in(giao nộp) |

**Dịch bài đọc**

Edward Patrick Eagan sinh ngày 26 tháng 4 năm 1897 tại Denver, Colorado, và cha ông qua đời trong một vụ tai nạn đường sắt khi Eagan mới một tuổi. Anh và bốn anh em của mình được nuôi dưỡng bởi mẹ anh, người kiếm được một khoản thu nhập nhỏ từ việc dạy ngoại ngữ. Lấy cảm hứng từ Frank Merriwell, anh hùng của loạt tiểu thuyết nổi tiếng dành cho thiếu niên, Eagan theo đuổi con đường học vấn cũng như đam mê quyền anh. Anh theo học Đại học Denver một năm trước khi phục vụ trong Quân đội Hoa Kỳ với tư cách là trung úy pháo binh trong Chiến tranh thế giới thứ nhất. Ông tốt nghiệp Yale năm 1921, theo học Trường Luật Harvard, và nhận học bổng Rhodes tại Đại học Oxford, nơi ông nhận bằng A.M. vào năm 1928.

Trong thời gian học tại Oxford, Eagan trở thành người Mỹ đầu tiên giành chức vô địch quyền anh nghiệp dư của Anh. Eagan đã giành được huy chương vàng Olympic đầu tiên của mình với tư cách là một võ sĩ quyền anh hạng nặng nhẹ tại Thế vận hội Olympic 1920 ở Antwerp, Bỉ. Eagan cũng từng tham chiến tại Thế vận hội 1924 ở Paris với tư cách là một võ sĩ hạng nặng nhưng không giành được huy chương. Mặc dù mới tham gia môn thể thao này chỉ ba tuần trước cuộc thi, nhưng ông đã giành được huy chương vàng thứ hai với tư cách là thành viên của đội đua xe trượt tuyết bốn người tại Thế vận hội 1932 ở Lake Placid, New York. Như vậy, anh trở thành vận động viên duy nhất giành huy chương vàng ở cả Thế vận hội mùa hè và mùa đông. Eagan là thành viên của nhóm vận động viên đầu tiên được giới thiệu vào Đại sảnh Danh vọng Olympic Hoa Kỳ vào năm 1983. Eagan trở thành một luật sư được kính trọng, từng là trợ lý luật sư quận phía nam New York và là chủ tịch của Ủy ban thể thao bang New York (1945 - 51). Ông kết hôn với nữ thừa kế Margaret Colgate và đạt cấp bậc trung tá trong Thế chiến thứ hai.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions.***

**36. Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Chủ đề của đoạn văn là gì?**  Viết về Tomatoes and peppers ( Cà chua và ớt ) |

**37. Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| Cụm từ " **attributed to** " trong đoạn 4 có nghĩa gần nhất với (**attributed to :nhờ vào)**  A. inducted into (giới thiệu trang trọng) B. thanked for(cảm ơn)  C. resulted from (nhờ vào) D. resulted in (đem lại kết quả)  **Thông tin :** This can be **attributed to** their unique flavor, attractiveness, richness as a source of vitamins C and A, and versatility as a food. The popularity of peppers as a garden plant can be attributed to the same factors, although they are usually not consumed in large enough quantities to make them an important nutritional factor in the diet. (Điều này có thể là nhờ vào hương vị độc đáo của chúng, sự hấp dẫn, phong phú như một nguồn cung cấp vitamin C và A, và tính linh hoạt như một loại thực phẩm. Sự phổ biến của ớt như một loại cây trồng trong vườn có thể là do các yếu tố tương tự, mặc dù chúng thường không được tiêu thụ với số lượng đủ lớn để biến chúng thành một yếu tố dinh dưỡng quan trọng trong chế độ ăn uống.) |

**38. Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Từ "this" trong đoạn 2 đề cập đến**  **Thông tin :**It was introduced to other areas of the world by Indians and European travelers. Its seeds were taken to Europe, where **a superstition** soon arose that the tomato stimulated love. Because of **this**, the tomato was called the "love apple". The first report of the tomato in North America was in 1710, where it was grown primarily as an ornamental plant. Early colonists brought the seeds to Virginia and grew tomatoes in flower gardens. **(**Nó đã được giới thiệu đến các khu vực khác trên thế giới bởi người Ấn Độ và du khách châu Âu. Hạt giống của nó đã được đưa đến châu Âu, nơi một sự mê tín đã sớm nảy sinh rằng cà chua kích thích tình yêu. Chính vì vậy mà cà chua được mệnh danh là "quả táo tình yêu". Báo cáo đầu tiên về cà chua ở Bắc Mỹ là vào năm 1710, nơi nó được trồng chủ yếu như một loại cây cảnh. Những người thực dân ban đầu đã mang hạt giống đến Virginia và trồng cà chua trong các vườn hoa.) |

**39. Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Theo đoạn văn, các loại cà chua khác nhau đã được phát triển \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ .**  **Thông tin :** Its productivity has been doubled, and varieties with larger, smoother, more even shapes and meatier pulps have been developed.( Năng suất của nó đã được tăng gấp đôi và các giống có hình dạng lớn hơn, mịn hơn, đồng đều hơn và bột thịt nhiều hơn đã được phát triển)  **Chọn A.** with larger, smoother, more even shapes and meatier pulps(với hình dạng lớn hơn, mịn hơn, đồng đều hơn và bột thịt nhiều hơn) |

**40. Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Tất cả những điều sau đây có thể được suy ra từ đoạn văn về ớt NGOẠI TRỪ**  A. peppers became popular in the United States later than in Europe (Đúng)  B. peppers were bought and sold in Europe (Đúng)  C. red peppers are highly spices (Đúng)  D. peppers originated fairly recently, in North and South America(ớt có nguồn gốc khá gần đây, ở Bắc và Nam Mỹ) (Sai) |

**41. Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| Từ "s**easonings** " trong đoạn 4 gần nghĩa nhất với (s**easonings** : gia vị)  A. spicy(gia vị nhưng là tính từ không đồng dạng với s**easonings)**  B. flavorings (gia vị hương liệu)  C. peppers(ớt)  D. foods (thực phẩm) |

**42. Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Điều gì có thể được suy ra từ đoạn văn?**  A. Hạt tiêu đen làm gia vị quen thuộc là sản phẩm của một loại cây bụi hay leo chỉ được trồng ở Indonesia(Sai)  B. Mỹ là quê hương của cả cà chua và ớt.(Đúng)  C. Cà chua không phải là một loại trái cây.(Sai)  D. Hoa Kỳ sản xuất một lượng lớn hạt tiêu gia vị mỗi năm( Sai )  **Thông tin :** Peppers are also native to America and were grown by American Indian tribes in both North and South America over 2,000 years ago. (Ớt cũng có nguồn gốc từ Châu Mỹ và được trồng bởi các bộ lạc da đỏ Châu Mỹ ở cả Bắc và Nam Mỹ hơn 2.000 năm trước.) |

**Dịch bài đọc**

Cà chua có lẽ là loại rau vườn phổ biến nhất được trồng ở Hoa Kỳ. Điều này có thể là do hương vị độc đáo của chúng, sự hấp dẫn, phong phú như một nguồn cung cấp vitamin C và A, và tính linh hoạt như một loại thực phẩm. Sự phổ biến của ớt như một loại cây trồng trong vườn có thể là do các yếu tố tương tự, mặc dù chúng thường không được tiêu thụ với số lượng đủ lớn để biến chúng thành một yếu tố dinh dưỡng quan trọng trong chế độ ăn uống.

Cà chua được trồng có nguồn gốc từ vùng núi Andes của Nam Mỹ. Nó thường không được tiêu thụ với số lượng đủ lớn để biến chúng thành một yếu tố dinh dưỡng quan trọng trong chế độ ăn uống. Cà chua được trồng có nguồn gốc từ vùng núi Andes của Nam Mỹ. Nó đã được giới thiệu đến các khu vực khác trên thế giới bởi người Ấn Độ và du khách châu Âu. Hạt giống của nó đã được đưa đến châu Âu, nơi một sự mê tín đã sớm nảy sinh rằng cà chua kích thích tình yêu. Chính vì vậy mà cà chua được mệnh danh là "quả táo tình yêu". Báo cáo đầu tiên về cà chua ở Bắc Mỹ là vào năm 1710, nơi nó được trồng chủ yếu như một loại cây cảnh. Những người thực dân ban đầu đã mang hạt giống đến Virginia và trồng cà chua trong các vườn hoa.

Cà chua, thực sự là một loại trái cây được sử dụng như một loại rau, bắt đầu được chấp nhận rộng rãi như một cây thực phẩm ở Hoa Kỳ từ năm 1820 đến năm 1850. Những người trồng cây hiện đại đã làm nhiều điều để cải thiện cà chua và tăng thêm tính hữu dụng của nó. Năng suất của nó đã được tăng gấp đôi và các giống có hình dạng lớn hơn, mịn hơn, đồng đều hơn và bột thịt nhiều hơn đã được phát triển. Cà chua là cây trồng hàng đầu được đóng hộp ở Hoa Kỳ ngày nay.

Ớt cũng có nguồn gốc từ Châu Mỹ và được trồng bởi các bộ lạc da đỏ Châu Mỹ ở cả Bắc và Nam Mỹ hơn 2.000 năm trước. Ớt cay đỏ nhỏ được Columbus phát hiện ở Tây Ấn và được đưa vào châu Âu, nơi chúng trở nên phổ biến trước khi được chấp nhận rộng rãi ở Hoa Kỳ. Ớt đã trở thành một trong những loại thực phẩm Thế giới Mới đầu tiên được sử dụng thương mại ở Châu Âu. Các nhà thực vật học xếp loại quả của tiêu vườn dạng bụi là quả mọng. Mặc dù hầu hết các giống ớt đều cho quả màu đỏ (có màu xanh ở giai đoạn chưa trưởng thành), nhưng vẫn có một số giống quả màu vàng, và ớt thuộc cả loại nhẹ và cay. Ớt thích khí hậu ấm áp và cây non có thể bị thương do sương giá. Gia vị như ớt bột và ớt bột và các sản phẩm thực phẩm như pimentos đóng hộp là những công dụng thương mại của ớt vườn được trồng ở Hoa Kỳ ngày nay.

Hạt tiêu đen gia vị quen thuộc được biết đến trong các hộ gia đình trên khắp thế giới là sản phẩm của một loại cây bụi hay cây leo được trồng ở Indonesia và các nước nóng khác. Các đảo Java và Madura cung cấp hầu hết tiêu đen được sử dụng trong các ngôi nhà của người Mỹ. Hoa Kỳ mua gần 25.000 tấn gia vị này hàng năm.

***Mark letter A, B, C or D to indicate the underlined part that needs correction.***

**43. Đáp án B**

Ta thấy có ***Last time*** chứng tỏ đã xa ở quá khứ vì thế rains sai

***Sửa lại rains => rained***

**44. Đáp án C**

Ta thấy it thay thế cho the cornea mà the cornea là N số ít không thể dùng their vì vậy their sai

***Sửa lại their => its***

**45. Đáp án A**

**Từ gây nhầm lẫn**

Exhaustive : hoàn thành, đầy đủ

Exhausting : kiệt sức

***Sửa lại exhausting => exhaustive***

**Dịch :** Đây là danh sách đầy đủ các quy tắc ngữ pháp bạn sẽ cần biết cho kỳ thi.

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.***

**46. Đáp án B**

**Chuyển đổi từ quá khứ đơn sang hiện tại hoàn thành và ngược lại**

**S +have/has + not + V3/ed + for + khoảng thời gian.**

**+ since + mốc thời gian**

**=>S + Last +V2/ed + time +ago/in+ mốc thời gian./when + clause**

**Dựa vào công thức ta chọn được B**

**47. Đáp án A**

**"Tôi có thể xem vé của bạn không?", Người phụ trách nói.**

**Câu tường thuật : S +** required + to V

**48. Đáp án A**

**Jane vẫn muốn đi siêu thị mặc dù tủ lạnh đầy hoa quả. => Không cần thiết để đi chợ nửa dễ dàng chọn A**

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.***

**49. Đáp án C**

**Câu điều ước : Chúng tôi không thể nhìn thấy những ngọn núi vì mưa.**

We couldn't see the mountains because of the rain. (đã xảy ra)

A. If only it didn't rain so we could see the mountains. (ước hiện tại sai)

B. If it hadn't rained, we could see the mountains. (sai ngữ pháp)

C. I wish I had been able to see the mountains without rain. (ước muốn đã xảy ra trong quá khứ đúng)

D. But for the rain, I could see the mountains. (sai ngữ pháp)

**50. Đáp án B**

**Đảo ngữ : Khi băng qua cánh đồng, chúng tôi nhìn thấy một ngôi nhà nhỏ xíu dưới chân núi.**

A. No sooner had we crossed the fields when we saw a tiny house at the foot of the mountain. (sai)

B. Not until we crossed the fields did we see a tiny house at the foot of the mountain. (Đúng)

C. Scarcely had we crossed the fields than we saw a tiny house at the foot of the mountain. (sai)

D. It was not until we crossed the fields did we see a tiny house at the foot of the mountain.(sai)

**TEST 2**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from***

1. A. k**ite** B. b**ite** C. favor**ite** D. qu**ite**
2. A. coach**ed** B. need**ed** C. want**ed** D. belov**ed**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.***

1. A. lemon B. physics C. decay D. decade
2. A. satisfactory B. alternative C. evaluate D. continue

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

1. “Never say that again,\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_?”

A. don’t you B. will you C. do you D. won’t you

1. Gold\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_in California in the 19th century

A. was discovered B. has been discovered C. was discover D. they discover

1. Vietnam is\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_the top exporters of rice.

A. in B. of C. between D. among

1. It gets \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_when the winter is coming.

A. more and more cold B. colder and colder

C. cold and colder D. cold and less cold

1. Charles was wearing \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_at the party.

A. a tie yellow silk funny B. very funny wide yellow silk tie

C. a yellow silk funny tie D. a funny wide yellow silk tie

1. She was cooking while I\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_my homework.

A.was done B.was doing C. am doing D.have done

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_I heard the phone ring, I didn’t answer it.

A. Because B. Only if C. Even though D. Provided that

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_she often wears in red.

A. After I met her B. Whenever I meet her C. By the time I met her D. Until I will meet her

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ high school, Nam attended a university in the city centre.

A. Having finished B. To have finished C. Having been finished D. To finish

1. Judo players are\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_to their opponents and bow to each other before and after a contest.

A. respectfully B.respectful C. respectable D. respect

1. I \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ love with him because of his kind nature.

A. Fell down B. fell to C. fell about D. fell in

1. They have been\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_some measures to control traffic jam at rush hours.

A. imagined B. taken C. done D. carried

1. After a momentary \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_of concentration, Simon managed to regain his focus and completed the test.

A. failure. B. lapse. C. fault. D. error

1. Mr Nam knows Hanoi City like the back of his\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_.He used to be a taxi driver there

for 10 years.

A. head B. mind C. hand D. life

1. Some people have the opinion that more developing countries should be given the\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ light to become hosts of such international sporting events as Olympics and World Cup.

A. red B. blue C. green D. yellow

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the un­derlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

1. Around 150 B.C. the Greek astronomer Hipparchus developed a system to **classify** stars according to brightness.

A. record B. shine C. categorize D. diversify

1. Before the **advent** of the railways, communications were slow and difficult.

A. import B. disappearance C. introduction D. arrival

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

1. Unless the two signatures are **identical**, the bank won’t honour the check.

A. genuine B. different C. fake D. similar

1. She’s a bit **down in the dumps** because she’s got to take her exam again.

A. sad B. embarrassed C. confident D. happy

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the option that best completes each of the fol­lowing exchanges.***

1. A: “Would you like me to send this package for you?” - B: “\_\_\_\_\_\_”

A. That would be nice. Any problems? B. Yes, please, if you don’t mind.

C. I’m sorry, but here you are. D. No, thanks. I’m really busy.

1. Roger: “Wow! You look terrific in that new dress!” - Tina: “\_\_\_\_\_\_”

A. Oh, what a pity! B. I’m afraid so!

C. Thank you. I’m glad you think so. D. Why dare you say so?

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 26 to 30.***

Christ the Redeemer is an Art Deco statue of Jesus Christ in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, created by Polish-French sculptor Paul Landowski and built by the Brazilian engineer Heitor da Silva Costa, in collaboration with the French engineer Albert Caquot. The face was created by the Romanian (26) \_\_\_\_\_\_ Gheorghe Leonida. The statue is 30 metres tall, not including its 8-metre pedestal, and its arms stretch 28 metres wide. By (27) \_\_\_\_\_\_ , it is approximately two-thirds the height of the Statue of Liberty’s height from base to torch.

The statue weighs 635 metric tons (625 long, 700 short tons), and is (28) \_\_\_\_\_\_ at the peak of the 700-metre Corcovado mountain in the Tijuca Forest National Park overlooking the city of Rio. A symbol of Christianity across the world, the statue has also become a cultural icon of both Rio de Janeiro and Brazil, and is listed as (29) \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the New Seven Wonders of the World. The statue, (30) \_\_\_\_\_\_ was constructed between 1922 and 1931, is made of reinforced concrete and soapstone.

*(Adapted from* [*https://world.new7wonders.com/*](https://world.new7wonders.com/)*)*

1. A. artist B. guitarist C. stylist D. scientist
2. A. package B. comparison C. pleasure D. occasion
3. A. connected B. scratched C. located D. pointed
4. A. other B. each C. another D. one
5. A. why B. which C. who D. that

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 31 to 35.***

Culture is the lens with which we evaluate everything around us; we evaluate what is proper or improper, normal or abnormal, through our culture. If we are immersed in a culture that is unlike our own, we may experience culture shock and become disoriented when we come into contact with a fundamentally different culture. People naturally use their own culture as the standard to judge other cultures; however, passing judgment could reach a level where people begin to discriminate against others whose “ways of being” are different than **their** own—essentially, we tend to fear that which we do not understand.

Cultural diversity is important because our country, workplaces, and schools increasingly consist of various cultural, racial, and ethnic groups. We can learn from one another, but first we must have a level of understanding about each other in order to facilitate collaboration and cooperation. Learning about other cultures helps us understand different perspectives within the world in which we live and helps **dispel** negative stereotypes and personal biases about different groups. Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

In addition, cultural diversity helps us recognize and respect “ways of being” that are not necessarily our own, so that as we interact with others, we can build bridges to trust, respect, and understanding across cultures. Furthermore, this diversity makes our country a more interesting place to live, as people from diverse cultures contribute language skills, new ways of thinking, new knowledge, and different experiences.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.purdueglobal.edu/*](https://www.purdueglobal.edu/)*)*

1. Which best serves as the title for the passage?

A. What is the function of culture?

B.How do people use own culture?

C.Why is cultural diversity a “good thing”?

D.How can we learn from one another?

1. The word “**their**” in paragraph 2 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. evels B. people C. others D. ways of being

1. What is mentioned in paragraph 1 as the main reason for discrimination?

A. valuating everything B. immersing in a culture

C. ontacting with a different culture D. making judgment

1. The word “**dispel**” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. liminate B. contain C. realize D. discuss

1. Before we can learn from people from other cultures, we need to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. understand one another B. facilitate collaboration

C. have different perspectives D. form personal biases

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 36 to 42.***

There are several ways to measure how often men and women appear in news photos. One way is to think about all the photos together as making up one big crowd of people and estimating what share are women versus men. Women made up 33% of all the 53,067 individuals identified in news post images, while men made up the other 67%.

Another way to look at the data is to examine the mix of people who appear in each image. Across the 22,342 posts with photos containing identifiable human faces, more than half of them **exclusively** showed men, while less than a quarter showed exclusively women. The remaining images show at least one man and one woman.

All 17 news outlets included in the study showed more men than women in news images on Facebook during the study period. The share of individuals who were identified as women by the model ranges from 25% to 46%, by outlet.

While these findings are **striking**, there is no perfect benchmark or “true ratio” for how often men and women should be portrayed in news images on social media. Yes, the U.S. population is divided nearly in half, male versus female. But, for example, all the representational coverage of professional football teams would return results overwhelmingly dominated by male faces. Coverage of the U.S. Senate – currently 25% female – might do the same. In addition, the analysis did not address whether the content of the news stories **that** accompanied the images was more focused on men or women.

The analysis also reveals other ways that men are more prominent in news images on Facebook. In photos that showed two or more people, men tend to outnumber women. And men’s faces take up more space when shown, with the average male face being 10% larger than the average female face across all photos with people.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.pewresearch.org/*](https://www.pewresearch.org/)*)*

1. Which of the following best serves as the title for the article?

A. Big Crowd of People and the Share of Women and Men

B. Men and Women in News Images by Outlet

C. Men Appear Twice as Often as Women in News Photos on Facebook

D. The analysis of news images on Facebook

1. How many of the 22,342 posts with photos containing identifiable human faces showed only women?

A. 25% B. 33% C. 75% D. 46%

1. The word “**exclusively**” in paragraph 2 most probably means \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. perfectly B. uniquely C. honestly D. naturally

1. The word “**striking**” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. impressive B. impartial C. creative D. inactive

1. Which of the following is TRUE, according to the article?

A. Women accounted for 67% of all the 53,067 individuals identified in news post images.

B. More than half of the 22,342 posts with photos show at least one man and one woman.

C. Currently 25% of the U.S. Senate are female.

D. Women’s faces take up more space when shown.

1. The word “**that**” in paragraph 4 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the analysis B. the content C. the images D. the news stories

1. What may be the reason why men are more prominent in news images?

A. Women are whiter than men. B. Men’s face was bigger than women’s.

C. Women didn’t like taking photos. D. Men didn’t make up.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.***

1. My mother and her friends always went out together every weekend

A B C D

1. He is a handsome, intelligent and friendly student in her school.

A B C D

1. They have carried exhausting research into the effects of smartphone on schoolchildren’s

A B

behaviour and their academic performce

C D

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions***

1. I have never listened to jazz music before.

A. This is the first jazz music I listen to.

B. This is the first time I listen to jazz music.

C. This is the first time I have listened to jazz music.

D. This is the first time I listened to jazz music.

1. “Please, let my child go!” she begged the kidnapper.

A. She begged the kidnapper to let her child to go.

B. She pleaded with the kidnapper to release her child.

C. She solemnly ordered the kidnapper to set her child free.

D. She pleaded the kidnapper to let her child go.

1. It is necessary to do your homework everyday.

A.You needn’t do your homework everyday.

B. You must do your homework everyday.

C. You shouldn’t do your homework everyday.

D. You are able to do your homework everyday.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions***

1. Marie didn’t turn up at John’s birthday party. I feel so sorry for that.

A. If only Marie turn up at John’s birthday party.

B. I wish Marie had turned up at Johns birthday party.

C. I wished Marie wouldn’t turn up at John’s birthday party.

D. It’s a shame Marie had turned up at John’s birthday party.

1. John didn’t understand what the story was about until he saw the ﬁlm based on it.

A. He doesn't understand what the story is about.

B. Not until Jonh saw the ﬁlm based on the story did he understand what it was about.

C. It was until he saw the film based on it that John understood what the story was about.

D. John went to see the film before she read the story.

**GIẢI CHI TIẾT**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from***

# Question 1. C

A.kite /kaɪt/ B.bite /baɪt/ C.favorite /ˈfeɪvərɪt/ D.quite /kwaɪt/

Từ gạch chân trong câu C phát âm / aɪ/là còn lại đọc là /ɪ/

**Question 2. A**

**A** coached /kəʊtʃt/ B.needed /niːdɪd/ C.wanted /ˈwɒntɪd/ D.beloved /bɪˈlʌvɪd/

Từ gạch chân trong câu A phát âm là /ɪd/còn lại đọc là /t/ ChọnA

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the other three in the position of primary stress in each of the following questions.***

# Question 3. C

A.lemon /ˈlem.ən/ B.physics /ˈfɪz.ɪks/ C.decay /dɪˈkeɪ/ D.decade /ˈdek.eɪd/

Câu C trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2, còn lại rơi vào âm tiết thứ 1.

**Chọn C**

# Question 4. A

A.satisfactory /ˌsætɪsˈfæktəri/ B.alternative /ɔːlˈtɜːnətɪv/

C.evaluate /ɪˈvæljueɪt/ D.continue /kənˈtɪnjuː/

Câu A trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 3, còn lại là âm tiết thứ 2.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.***

# Question 5. B

**Kiến thức:** Câu hỏi đuôi

Câu hỏi đuôi của Câu mệnh lệnh dùng để yêu cầu người khác một cách lịch sự.

***Công thức: V/ Don’t + V, will you?***

**Tạm dịch :** Đừng bao giờ nói như vậy nữa, được chứ?

**Question 6. A**

**Kiến thức:** Câu bị động:

**Giải chi tiết:** Câu bị động thì Quá khứ đơn. Hành động được nhấn mạnh việc tìm thấy vàng

***S + động từ tobe + V-ed/V3***

**Tạm dịch** : Vàng được tìm thấy ở California vào thế kỷ 19

# Question 7. D

Between : giữa (2 người, 2 vật)

Among : giữa ( 3 người/ vật trở lên)

**Tạm dịch:** Việt Nam là một trong những nước đứng đầu về xuất khẩu gạo

# Question 8. B

Cấu trúc so sánh kép cùng một tính từ:

* Tính từ/Trạng từ ngắn:

***S + V + adj/ adv + er + and + adj/ adv + er***

* Tính từ/Trạng từ dài:

***S + V + more and more + adj/ adv***

**Tạm dịch :** Trời càng ngày càng lạnh khi mùa đông đến.

**Question 9. D**

Trật tự tính từ: Ghi nhớ cụm **OpSASCOMP**

***Funny (ngộ nghĩnh) - opinion Wide (rộng) - size***

***Yellow (vàng) - color Silk (lụa) - material***

**Dịch nghĩa :** Charles đeo một chiếc cà vạt rất ngộ nghĩnh, to, màu vàng bằng lụa đến bữa tiệc.

**Question 10. B**

**Kiến thức**: Sự phối hợp về thì của động từ

Thì qúa tiếp diễn, trong câu diến tã các hành động đang xáy ra song song tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

***S+ was/ were+ V-ing while +S+ was/were+ V-ing***

**Question 11. C**

**Kiến thức:** Liên từ

Because : bởi vì

Only if : chỉ nếu

Even though : mặc dù

Provided that : miễn là

**Tạm dịch:** Mặc dù tôi nghe thấy tiếng chuông điện thoại reo nhưng tôi không trảlời.

**Question 12. B**

**Kiến thức mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian**

After (sau khi )+ S+ have + v3/ed

Whenerver: (bất kì khi nào)+ S+ V( s/es)

By the time : vào lúc

Until :S+ V( s/es)

**Tạm dich:** Bất kì khi nào tôi gặp cô ấy, cô ấy cũng mặc đồ màu đỏ

**Question 13. A**

**Kiến thức:** Rút gọn 2 mệnh đềcùng chủngữ

Khi hai mệnh đề có cùng chủ ngữ “Nam”, ta có thể rút gọn một mệnh đề mang nghĩa chủ động về dạng V-ing hoặc Having Ved/ V3 (khi hành động được rút gọn xảy ra trước hành động trong mệnh đề còn lại). to V: để mà (chỉ mục đích)

**Tạm dịch :** Sau khi tốt nghiệp trung học, Nam học một trường đại họcởtrung tâm thành phố.

**Question 14. B**

**Kiến thức :** Từloại

respectfully (adv): [với vẻ] tôn trọng, tôn kính

respectful to sb (a): [tỏ vẻ] tôn trọng, tôn kính

respectable (a): đứng đắn; đàng hoàng

respect (v): tôn trọng, tôn kính

Sau động từ “are” cần dùng tính từ.

**Tạm dịch :** Các cầu thủJudo tôn trọng đối thủcủa họ và cúi chào nhau trước và sau một cuộc thi.

**Question 15. D**

**Kiến thức:** Cụm động từ

***Cụm “fall in love with sb”: yêu ai, sa vào lưới tình của ai***

**Tạm dịch:** Tôi yêu anhấy vì bản chất tốt bụng của anhấy.

# Question 16. B

***to take + measures: áp dụng các biện pháp.***

**Tạm dịch :** Họ đã được thực hiện một số biện pháp để kiểm soát tình trạng kẹt xe vào giờ cao điểm.

**Question 17. B**

**Ta xét nghĩa các phương án:**

A.failure (n): sự thất bại, sự hỏng hóc, sự không làm được việc gì

B.lapse (n): sự mất tập trung (trong khoảng thời gian ngắn), sự đãng trí; sự suy đồi; quãng thời gian

nghỉ

C.fault (n): khuyết điểm; lỗi lầm, tội lỗi, sự sai lầm

D.error (n): sự sai lầm, sai sót, lỗi

**Dựa vào nghĩa của các phương án trên đây ta thấy phương án hợp nghĩa nhất là B.**

**Question 18. C**

**Kiến thức thành ngữ/ cụm từ cố định**

* head (n): đầu
* mind (n): trí óc, tâm trí
* hand (n): tay
* life (n): cuộc sống

***+ know sb/ sth like the back of one’s hand ~ to be very familiar with somebody/something: hiểu biết rất rõ, biết rõ như lòng bàn tay***

**Dịch :** Ông Nam biết thành phổ Hà Nội rõ như lòng bàn tay. Ông ấy từng lái xe taxi ở đó 10 năm

**Question 19. C**

**Kiến thức từ vựng/ cụm từ**

***Cụm từ : be given the green light to do st: được phép làm gì***

**Tạm dịch** : Một vài người có ý kiến rằng những nước đang phát triển nên được cho phép trở thành những nước chủ nhà của những sự kiện thể thao tầm cỡ quốc tế như Olympics và World Cup.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) CLOSEST in meaning to the un­derlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 20. C** | **Giải thích:** Around 150 B.C. the Greek astronomer Hipparchus developed a system to **classify** stars according to brightness. *(Khoảng năm 150 trước Công nguyên, nhà thiên văn học Hy Lạp Hipparchus đã phát triển một hệ thống để phân loại các ngôi sao theo độ sáng.)*  **A.** record *(v.): ghi chép* **B.** shine *(v.): tỏa sáng*  **C.** categorize *(v.): phân loại* **D.** diversify *(v.): đa dạng hóa*  Vậy **classify**  có nghĩa tương đồng với phương án C. |
| **Question 21. D** | **Giải thích:** Before the **advent** of the railways, communications were slow and difficult. *(Trước khi có sự ra đời của đường sắt, thông tin liên lạc rất chậm và khó khăn.)*  **A.** import *(n.): sự nhập khẩu* **B.** disappearance *(n.): sự biến mất*  **C.** introduction *(n.): sự giới thiệu* **D.** arrival *(n.): sự xuất hiện*  Vậy **advent** có nghĩa tương đồng với phương án D. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 22. B** | **Giải thích:** Unless the two signatures are **identical**, the bank won’t honor the check. *(Trừ khi hai chữ ký giống hệt nhau, ngân hàng sẽ không chi trả séc.)*  **A.** genuine *(adj.): chính hiệu* **B.** different *(adj.): khác nhau*  **C.** fake *(adj.): giả* **D.** similar *(adj.): tương tự*  Vậy **identical** có nghĩa tương phản với phương án B. |
| **Question 23. D** | **Giải thích:** She’s a bit **down in the dumps** because she’s got to take her exam again. *(Cô ấy cảm thấy không vui một chút vì cô ấy phải làm bài thi một lần nữa.)*  **A.** sad *(adj.): buồn bã* **B.** embarrassed *(adj.): bối rối*  **C.** confident *(adj.): tự tin* **D.** happy *(adj.): hạnh phúc*  Vậy **down in the dumps** có nghĩa tương phản với phương án D. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the option that best completes each of the fol­lowing exchanges.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 24. B** | **Giải thích:** Lời đáp cần đồng ý một cách lịch sự đối với lời đề nghị giúp đỡ.  **A.** *Điều đó thật tuyệt. Có vấn đề gì không?*  **B.** *Có, làm ơn, nếu bạn không phiền.*  **C.** *Tôi xin lỗi, nhưng bạn đây rồi.* Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)  **D.** *Không, cảm ơn. Tôi thực sự bận rộn.*  **Dịch nghĩa:**  *- A: “Bạn có muốn tôi gửi gói quà này cho bạn không?” - B: “Có, làm ơn, nếu bạn không phiền.”* |
| **Question 25. C** | **Giải thích:** Lời đáp cần đưa ra phản hồi lịch sự với lời khen từ Roger.  **A.** *Ôi, thật đáng tiếc!* **B.** *Tôi e là như vậy!*  **C.** *Cảm ơn bạn. Tôi rất vui vì bạn nghĩ vậy.* **D.** *Tại sao bạn dám nói như vậy?*  **Dịch nghĩa:** *- Roger: “Ôi! Bạn trông thật tuyệt vời trong chiếc váy mới đó!” - Tina: “Cảm ơn bạn. Tôi rất vui vì bạn nghĩ vậy.”* |

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 26 to 30.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 26. A** | **Giải thích:** Phương án A phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** artist *(n.): nghệ sĩ* **B.** guitarist *(n.): người chơi ghi-ta*  **C.** stylist *(n.): nhà tạo mốt* **D.** scientist *(n.): nhà khoa học* |
| **Question 27. B** | **Giải thích:** By comparison: *khi so sánh* |
| **Question 28. C** | **Giải thích:** Phương án C phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** connected *(v.): kết nối* **B.** scratched *(v.): cào, gãi*  **C.** located *(v.): nằm ở* **D.** pointed *(v.): chỉ* |
| **Question 29. D** | **Giải thích:** one of + N (pl.): *một trong những…* |
| **Question 30. B** | **Giải thích:** Đại từ quan hệ “which” thay cho sự vật “The statue” trước đó, các phương án khác không có chức năng này. |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Christ the Redeemer là một bức tượng nghệ thuật Chúa Jesus Christ ở Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, được tạo ra bởi nhà điêu khắc người Pháp gốc Ba Lan Paul Landowski và được xây dựng bởi kỹ sư người Brazil Heitor da Silva Costa, hợp tác với kỹ sư người Pháp Albert Caquot. Khuôn mặt được tạo ra bởi nghệ sĩ Rumani Gheorghe Leonida. Bức tượng cao 30 mét, không bao gồm bệ 8 mét và cánh tay của nó rộng 28 mét. Để so sánh, nó cao khoảng hai phần ba chiều cao của tượng Nữ thần Tự do từ chân đế đến ngọn đuốc.

Bức tượng nặng 635 tấn và nằm trên đỉnh núi Corcovado dài 700 mét trong Công viên Quốc gia Rừng Tijuca nhìn ra thành phố Rio. Là biểu tượng của Kitô giáo trên toàn thế giới, bức tượng cũng đã trở thành một biểu tượng văn hóa của cả Rio de Janeiro và Brazil, và được liệt kê là một trong Bảy kỳ quan thế giới mới. Bức tượng được xây dựng từ năm 1922 đến 1931 được làm bằng bê tông cốt thép và đá xte-atit.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 31 to 35.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 31. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Lựa chọn nào làm tiêu đề tốt nhất cho đoạn văn?*  **A.** *Chức năng của văn hóa là gì?*  **B.** *Làm thế nào để mọi người sử dụng văn hóa riêng?*  **C.** *Tại sao sự đa dạng về văn hóa là một điều tốt?*  **D.** *Làm thế nào chúng ta có thể học hỏi lẫn nhau?*  **Giải thích:** Đoạn văn chủ yếu nói về mặt tích cực của sự đa dạng văn hóa nên phương án C phù hợp. |
| **Question 32. B** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Từ “****their****” trong đoạn 2 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.*  **A.** *cấp độ* **B.** *người ta*  **C.** *người khác* **D.** *cách sống*  **Giải thích:** “…, passing judgment could reach a level where people **begin** to discriminate against others whose “ways of being” are different than **their** own” |
| **Question 33. D** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Điều gì được đề cập trong đoạn 1 là lý do chính cho sự phân biệt đối xử?*  **A.** *đánh giá mọi thứ* **B.** *đắm chìm trong một nền văn hóa*  **C.** *tiếp xúc với một nền văn hóa khác* **D.** *đưa ra phán xét*  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “…, passing judgment could reach a level where people begin to discriminate against others whose “ways of being” are different than their own” |
| **Question 34. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Từ “****dispel****” trong đoạn 3 có nghĩa gần nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.*  **A.** *loại bỏ* **B.** *chứa đựng*  **C.** *nhận ra* **D.** *thảo luận*  **Giải thích:** “dispel” có nghĩa là “loại bỏ”, gần nghĩa với phương án A. |
| **Question 35. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Trước khi chúng ta có thể học hỏi từ những người từ các nền văn hóa khác, chúng ta cần phải \_\_\_\_\_\_.*  **A.** *hiểu nhau* **B.** *tạo điều kiện hợp tác*  **C.** *có quan điểm khác nhau* **D.** *hình thành thành kiến cá nhân*  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “We can learn from one another, but first we must have a level of understanding about each other in order to facilitate collaboration and cooperation.” |

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 36 to 42.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Question 36. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Lựa chọn nào sau đây làm tiêu đề tốt nhất cho bài viết?*  **A.** *Đám đông người dân và tỷ trọng của phụ nữ và nam giới*  **B.** *Đàn ông và phụ nữ trong in tức hình ảnh của nơi đưa tin*  **C.** *Đàn ông xuất hiện thường xuyên hơn hai lần so với phụ nữ trong tin tức ảnh trên Facebook*  **D.** *Phân tích hình ảnh tin tức trên Facebook*  **Giải thích:** Bài đọc chủ yếu nói về việc đàn ông xuất hiện thường xuyên hơn so với phụ nữ trong tin tức ảnh trên Facebook nên phương án C phù hợp. |
| **Question 37. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Có bao nhiêu trong số 22.342 bài đăng có ảnh chứa khuôn mặt người có thể nhận dạng chỉ có phụ nữ?*  **A.** *25%* **B.** *33%*  **C.** *75%* **D.** *46%*  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Across the 22,342 posts with photos containing identifiable human faces, more than half of them exclusively showed men, while less than a quarter showed exclusively women.” |
| **Question 38. B** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Từ “****exclusively****” trong đoạn 2 nhiều khả năng có nghĩa là \_\_\_\_\_\_.*  **A.** *hoàn hảo* **B.** *duy nhất*  **C.** *trung thực* **D.** *tự nhiên*  **Giải thích:** “exclusively” có nghĩa là “chỉ riêng”, gần nghĩa với phương án B. |
| **Question 39. A** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Từ “****striking****” trong đoạn 4 có nghĩa gần nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.*  **A.** *ấn tượng* **B.** *vô tư*  **C.** *sáng tạo* **D.** *không hoạt động*  **Giải thích:** “striking” có nghĩa là “ấn tượng”, gần nghĩa với phương án A. |
| **Question 40. C** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Điều nào sau đây là ĐÚNG, theo bài báo?*  **A.** *Phụ nữ chiếm 67% trong tổng số 53.067 cá nhân được xác định trong hình ảnh bài đăng tin tức.*  **B.** *Hơn một nửa trong số 22.342 bài đăng có ảnh cho thấy ít nhất một nam và một nữ.*  **C.** *Hiện tại 25% trong Thượng viện Hoa Kỳ là nữ.*  **D.** *Khuôn mặt phụ nữ chiếm nhiều không gian hơn khi hiển thị.*  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Coverage of the U.S. Senate – currently 25% female – might do the same.” |
| **Question 41. D** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Từ “****that****” trong đoạn 4 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.*  **A.** *phân tích* **B.** *nội dung*  **C.** *hình ảnh* **D.** *những câu chuyện tin tức*  **Giải thích:** “In addition, the analysis did not address whether the content of **the news storiesthat** accompanied the images was more focused on men or women.” |
| **Question 42. B** | **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:***Điều gì có thể là lý do tại sao đàn ông nổi bật hơn trong hình ảnh tin tức?*  **A.** *Phụ nữ trắng hơn nam giới.*  **B.** *Đàn ông mặt có khuôn mặt to hơn phụ nữ.*  **C.** *Phụ nữ không thích chụp ảnh.*  **D.** *Đàn ông đã không trang điểm.*  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “…,with the average male face being 10% larger than the average female face across all photos with people.” |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Có một số cách để đo tần suất đàn ông và phụ nữ xuất hiện trong ảnh tin tức. Một cách là suy nghĩ về tất cả các bức ảnh cùng nhau khi tạo thành một đám đông lớn và ước tính tỷ trọng phụ nữ so với nam giới. Phụ nữ chiếm 33% trong tổng số 53.067 cá nhân được xác định trong các hình ảnh đăng tin tức, trong khi đàn ông chiếm 67% còn lại.

Một cách khác để xem dữ liệu là kiểm tra sự pha trộn của những người xuất hiện trong mỗi hình ảnh. Trên 22.342 bài đăng có ảnh chứa khuôn mặt người có thể nhận dạng, hơn một nửa trong số đó chỉ dành riêng cho nam giới, trong khi chưa đến một phần tư cho thấy phụ nữ. Những hình ảnh còn lại cho thấy ít nhất một nam và một nữ.

Tất cả 17 nơi phân phối tin tức trong nghiên cứu cho thấy nhiều đàn ông hơn phụ nữ trong các hình ảnh tin tức trên Facebook trong thời gian nghiên cứu. Tỷ lệ của các cá nhân được xác định là phụ nữ theo mô hình dao động từ 25% đến 46%, theo từng nơi phân phối.

Mặc dù những phát hiện này rất đáng chú ý, nhưng không có điểm chuẩn hoàn hảo hay tỷ lệ đúng sự thật về mức độ thường xuyên của đàn ông và phụ nữ trong các hình ảnh tin tức trên phương tiện truyền thông xã hội. Vâng, dân số Hoa Kỳ được chia gần một nửa nam so với nữ. Nhưng, ví dụ, tất cả các phạm vi bao phủ đại diện của các đội bóng đá chuyên nghiệp sẽ trả lại kết quả áp đảo bởi các khuôn mặt nam. Mức độ bao phủ của Thượng viện Hoa Kỳ - hiện là nữ 25% - có thể cũng giống như vậy. Ngoài ra, phân tích không đề cập đến việc nội dung của những câu chuyện tin tức đi kèm với hình ảnh được tập trung nhiều hơn vào đàn ông hay phụ nữ.

Phân tích cũng tiết lộ những cách khác mà đàn ông nổi bật hơn trong hình ảnh tin tức trên Facebook. Trong những bức ảnh cho thấy hai người trở lên, đàn ông có xu hướng đông hơn phụ nữ. Và khuôn mặt đàn ông chiếm nhiều không gian hơn khi hiển thị, với khuôn mặt nam trung bình lớn hơn 10% so với khuôn mặt nữ trung bình trên tất cả các bức ảnh với mọi người.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.***

**Question 43. C**

**Kiến thức:** về sự phù hợp trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian với động từ

***went – go***

**Question 44. D**

***her 🡪 his***

**Kiến thức :** Sự hoà hợp giữa chủ ngữ và tính từ sở hữu cách

**Question 45. A**

***exhausting – exhaustive***

**Kiến thức về t**ừ dễ nhầm

Exhausting (adj) gây kiệt sức

Exhaustive ( adj): chi tiết cụ thể

**Dịch :** Họ đã tiến hành nghiên cứu chi tiết về ảnh hưởng của điện thoại thông minh đến cách cư sử của học sinh và cách thể hiện học tập của họ

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions***

**Question 46. C**

**Kiến thức:** cấu trúc sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành

***Cấu trúc: This is the first/ second/ third... time + S + have/ has + (ever) + Vp2***

**Tạm dịch :** Đây là lần đầu tiên tôi nghe nhạc jazz.

**Question 47. B**

**Dịch câu đề :** “Làm ơn hãy để cho con tôi đi!” cô gái cầu xin kẻ bắt cóc.

A. Không dịch vì sai ngữ pháp chỗ “to go” vì let + O + V bare.inf

B. Cô gái cầu xin kẻ bắt cóc thả con của cô ấy ra.

→ đúng nghĩa, đúng ngữ pháp.

***Ta có cấu trúc plead with sb to V- cầu xin ai đó làm gì***

C. Cô gái trang nghiêm ra lệnh cho kẻ bắt cóc giải thoát cho con mình.

→ sai nghĩa so với câu gốc.

D. Không dịch vì sai ngữ pháp ở chỗ thiếu giới từ *with* trước *the kidnapper*

*(theo cấu trúc được đề cập ý B)*

**Question 48. B**

**Kiến thức về modal verb**

***Cần làm bài tập về nhà hàng ngày.***

A.Bạn cần làm bài tập về nhà hàng ngày.

B. Bạn phải làm bài tập về nhà hàng ngày.

C. Bạn không nên làm bài tập về nhà hàng ngày.

D. Bạn có thể làm bài tập về nhà hàng ngày.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions***

**Question 49. B**

**Dịch câu gốc :** Marie đã không đến bữa tiệc sinh nhật của John. Tôi cảm thấy rất tiếc vì điều đó.

Tình huống xảy ra trong quá khứ vì vậy chúng ta sẽ sử dụng câu ước không có thật trong quá khứ.

***S + wish(es/ed) + S + had (not) + P2.***

**Dịch các phương án.**

**A**. Sai ngữ pháp: turn up, lẽ ra phải là had turned up → loại A

**B**. Tôi ước Marie đã đến bữa tiệc sinh nhật của John.

**C**. Tôi đã ước rằng Marie sẽ không đến bữa tiệc của John (Câu này đang viết theo câu ước mong muốn có một sự thay đổi trong tương lai, vừa không đúng với tình huống ở quá khứ vừa không hợp ngữ nghĩa với câu gốc) → loại C

**D**. Thật là đáng tiếc khi Marie xuất hiện tại bữa tiệc sinh nhật của John. → sai về nghĩa, loại D.

**Question 50. B**

**Kiến thức câu đảo ngữ**

***Not until + Clause of time/ N( time) TDT + S + V + St***

**John didn Nhận hiểu câu chuyện kể về điều gì cho đến khi anh ta nhìn thấy bộ phim dựa trên nó.**

A. Anh ấy không hiểu câu chuyện nói về cái gì.

B. Mãi đến khi Jonh nhìn thấy bộ phim dựa trên nó, anh ta mới hiểu câu chuyện nói về cái gì.

C. Cho đến khi anh ấy xem bộ phim dựa trên nó, John mới hiểu câu chuyện nói về cái gì.

D. John đã đi xem phim trước khi cô ấy đọc truyện

**TEST 3**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word having the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.***

1. A. graduate B. maximum C. vacancy D. applicant
2. A. employed B. provided C. challenged D. Explained

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word having the different stress pattern from the rest.***

1. A. experience B. congratulate C. particular D. engineering
2. A. terrorist B. expected C. contribute D. exciting

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to the following question.***

1. Your father is going to work tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_\_?

A. isn’t he B. was he C. doesn’t he D. did he

1. The students \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ to be at school by the teacher at 8:00 am.

A. tell B. told C. have told D. were told

1. It is of great importance to create a good impression \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ your interviewer.

A. on B. about C. for D. at

1. The faster Thanh walks, \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. more tired B. the more tired he gets

C. he gets tired D. he gets more tired

1. They take their \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ children to the park every day.

A. lovely African small young B. African small young lovely

C. small young lovely African D. young lovely African small

1. I saw a terrible accident while I \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the beach.

A. am walking B. walked C. was walking D. were walking

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_ his father’s being there, I said nothing about his bad mark of the test.

A. Because of B. although C.because D.despite

1. Mary will have finished all her work \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

A. as soon as her boss returned B. until her boss will return

C. by the time her boss returns D. when her boss will return

1. \_\_\_\_\_\_\_cigarettes for years, he was diagnosed with lung cancer.

A. Smoking B. Having smoked

C. Having been smoked D. being smoked

1. Thirty-one people have been injured in\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_incidents throughout the day.

A. violent B. violence C. violently D. violate

1. What chemical is this? It's\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_a horrible smell.

A. giving over B. giving off C. giving down D. giving up

1. After congratulating his team, the coach left, allowing the players to let their \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ down for a while.

A. hearts B. hair C. souls D. heads

1. The arrested man is suspected of\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_government funds for himself.

A.robbing B. appropriating C. appreciating D. confiscating

1. The company managed to beat the \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_on delivering its new system.

A. team B. other C. time D. clock

1. It is parents' duty and responsibility to \_\_\_\_\_\_ hands to take care of their children and give them a happy home.

A. give B. hold C. join D. shake

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word in each of the following questions.***

1. People have used coal and oil to **generate** electricity for a long time.

A. make B. prevent C. create D. invent

1. School uniform is **compulsory** in most of Vietnamese schools.

A. paid B. divided C. depended D. required

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

1. She decided to remain **celibate** and devote her life to helping the homeless and orphans.

A. married B. separated C. single D. divorced

1. Both universities **speak highly of** the programme of student exchange and hope to cooperate more in the future.

A. voice opinions on B. find favor with

C. express disapproval of D. resolve a conflict over

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the option that best completes each of the following exchanges.***

1. Alice meets Mary at their class after Mary has had her hair cut.

Alice: "What an attractive hair style you have got, Mary!"

Mary: “ \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ”.

A. Thank you very much. I am afraid B. Thank you for your compliment

C. I don't like your sayings. D. You are telling a lie

1. Tom and Tony are talking about a tennis game.

Tom: "I thought your tennis game was a lot better today, Tony".

Tony:" \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ ! I thought it was terrible."

A. You can say that again B. Thanks! Same to you

C. No, I think so D. You've got to be kidding

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 26 to 30.***

The United States of America, due to its immense size and diverse heritage, has one of the most complex cultural identities in the world. Millions of immigrants from all over the globe have journeyed to America (26) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Europeans discovered and colonised the land back in the 17th and 18th centuries. The blending of cultural (27) \_\_\_\_\_\_ and ethnicities in America led to the country becoming known as a “melting pot.” As the third largest country in both area and population, America’s size has enabled the formation of subcultures within the country. These subcultures are often geographical as a result of settlement (28) \_\_\_\_\_\_ by non-natives as well as regional weather and landscape differences. While there are countless ways to divide the U.S. into regions, here we have referenced the four regions that are West, Midwest, North East and South. People from (29) \_\_\_\_\_\_ region may have different lifestyles, cultural values, business practices and dialects. While there are qualities and values (30) \_\_\_\_\_\_ most Americans commonly share, it is important not to generalise or assume that all Americans think or act the same way.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.londonschool.com/*](https://www.londonschool.com/)*)*

1. A. because B. as C. for D. since
2. A. backgrounds B. reference C. expression D. importance
3. A. chapter B. revenue C. patterns D. unions
4. A. each B. other C. all D. another
5. A. when B. that C. why D. who

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 31 to 35.***

Most Americans have at least some daily interaction with people who do not share their race or ethnicity, but relatively small shares say they have a lot of interaction. This is particularly the case for whites interacting with racial or ethnic minorities and nonwhites interacting with minority groups other than **their** own. Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)

About a quarter of white adults say they interact with blacks and Hispanics a lot in their day-to-day life. Among blacks, 26% say they have a lot of interaction with people who are Hispanic, while one-in-five Hispanics say they have **frequent** interaction with people who are black. About one in-ten whites, blacks and Hispanics say they interact with Asians a lot in their daily life.

A majority of Asians say they have frequent daily interaction with whites, more than the share of blacks and Hispanics who say the same. About one-in-four Asians say they have a lot of interaction with people who are Hispanic and 15% say the same about people who are black.

Asians are less likely than whites, blacks and Hispanics to say they have a lot of interaction with people in their own group. The extent to which Americans interact with various racial or ethnic groups reflects, at least in part, the shares of each group in the population.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.pewsocialtrends.org/*](https://www.pewsocialtrends.org/)*)*

1. Which best serves as the title for the passage?

A. Americans’ everyday interaction

B. Interaction between people from other racial and ethnic groups

C. Hispanics’ frequent interaction

D. What does Asians’ interaction reflect?

1. The word “**their**” in paragraph 1 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. whites B. ethnic minorities C. nonwhites D. minority groups

1. How many white adults say they interact with blacks and Hispanics a lot in their everyday life?

A. 50% B. 26% C. 20% D. 25%

1. The word “**frequent**” in paragraph 2 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. regular B. reliable C. angry D. sincere

1. According to paragraph 3, it is Hispanics’ idea that \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. they have the same daily interaction with Asians and blacks.

B. they have no interaction with blacks

C. they have the same daily interaction with whites and blacks.

D. they have no interaction with Asians

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 36 to 42.***

There are several ways to measure how often men and women appear in news photos. One way is to think about all the photos together as making up one big crowd of people and estimating what share are women versus men. Women made up 33% of all the 53,067 individuals identified in news post images, while men made up the other 67%.

Another way to look at the data is to examine the mix of people who appear in each image. Across the 22,342 posts with photos containing identifiable human faces, more than half of them **exclusively** showed men, while less than a quarter showed exclusively women. The remaining images show at least one man and one woman.

All 17 news outlets included in the study showed more men than women in news images on Facebook during the study period. The share of individuals who were identified as women by the model ranges from 25% to 46%, by outlet.

While these findings are **striking**, there is no perfect benchmark or “true ratio” for how often men and women should be portrayed in news images on social media. Yes, the U.S. population is divided nearly in half, male versus female. But, for example, all the representational coverage of professional football teams would return results overwhelmingly dominated by male faces. Coverage of the U.S. Senate – currently 25% female – might do the same. In addition, the analysis did not address whether the content of the news stories **that** accompanied the images was more focused on men or women.

The analysis also reveals other ways that men are more prominent in news images on Facebook. In photos that showed two or more people, men tend to outnumber women. And men’s faces take up more space when shown, with the average male face being 10% larger than the average female face across all photos with people.

*(Adapted from* [*https://www.pewresearch.org/*](https://www.pewresearch.org/)*)*

1. Which of the following best serves as the title for the article?

A. Big Crowd of People and the Share of Women and Men

B. Men and Women in News Images by Outlet

C. Men Appear Twice as Often as Women in News Photos on Facebook

D. The analysis of news images on Facebook

1. How many of the 22,342 posts with photos containing identifiable human faces showed only women?

A. 25% B. 33% C. 75% D. 46%

1. The word “**exclusively**” in paragraph 2 most probably means \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. perfectly B. uniquely C. honestly D. naturally

1. The model ranges from 25% to 46% was the number of women identified by \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. Facebook B. the study C. news images D. outlet

1. The word “**striking**” in paragraph 4 is closest in meaning to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. impressive B. impartial C. creative D. inactive

1. Which of the following is TRUE, according to the article?

A. Women accounted for 67% of all the 53,067 individuals identified in news post images.

B. More than half of the 22,342 posts with photos show at least one man and one woman.

C. Currently 25% of the U.S. Senate are female.

D. Women’s faces take up more space when shown.

1. The word “**that**” in paragraph 4 refers to \_\_\_\_\_\_.

A. the analysis B. the content C. the images D. the news stories

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.***

1. Tom has burnt his hand when he was cooking dinner.

A B C D

1. The children bring its own food at school.

A B C D

1. Chocolate is prepared by a complexity process of cleaning, blending and roasting cocoa

A B

beans, which must be ground and mixed with sugar.

C D

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.***

1. The last time I went to the museum was a year ago.

A.I have not been to the museum for a year.

B. A year ago, I often went to the museum.

C. My going to the museum lasted a year.

D. At last I went to the museum after a year

1. "If I were you, I would never turn the television up late at night" the man told his daughter

A. The man wished his daughter didn't turn the television up late at night

B. The man ordered his daughter not to turn the television up when it's late at night

C. The father said if he was his daughter, he would turn the television down at night.

D. The father advised his daughter not to turn the television up late at night.

1. If I were you, I would invest more on this project.

A. You mustn’tinvest more on this project.

B. You should invest more on this project.

C. You cannotinvest more on this project.

D. You may invest more on this project.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.***

1. I really regert that you haven’t told me about her family.

A. If only you would tell me about her family.

B. If only I didn’t regret that you hadn’t told me about her family.

C. If only you had told me about her family.

D. If only you hadn’t told me about her family.

1. I didn’t recognize my uncle. I did after he raised hisvoice only.

A.Not until I recognized my uncle did he raise hisvoice.

B. My uncle raised his voice as soon as I recognizedhim.

C. Only after my uncle raised his voice did I recognizehim.

D.No sooner had I recognized my uncle than he raised hisvoice.

**ĐÁP ÁN**

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **1-C** | **2-B** | **3-D** | **4-A** | **5-A** | **6-D** | **7-A** | **8-B** | **9-C** | **10-C** |
| **11-A** | **12-C** | **13-B** | **14-A** | **15-B** | **16-B** | **17-B** | **18-D** | **19-C** | **20-A** |
| **21-D** | **22-A** | **23-C** | **24-B** | **25-D** | **26-D** | **27-A** | **28-C** | **29-A** | **30-B** |
| **31-B** | **32-C** | **33-D** | **34-A** | **35-C** | **36-C** | **37-A** | **38-B** | **39-D** | **40-A** |
| **41-C** | **42-D** | **43-A** | **44-B** | **45-A** | **46-A** | **47-D** | **48-B** | **49-C** | **50-C** |

**GIẢI THÍCH CHI TIẾT**

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word having the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.***

**Câu 1 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức:** Phát âm nguyên âm  **Giải thích:**  A. graduate /ˈɡrædʒuət/ B. maximum /ˈmæksɪməm/  C. vacancy /ˈveɪkənsi/ D. applicant /ˈæplɪkənt/  => Phần gạch chân phương án C được phát âm là /eɪ/, còn lại là /æ/. |

**Câu 2 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức:** Phát âm -ed  **Giải thích:**  A. employed /ɪmˈplɔɪ.d/ B. provided /prəˈvaɪd.ɪd/  C. challenged /ˈtʃælɪndʒ.d/ D. explained /ɪkˈspleɪn.d/  **Quy tắc phát âm đuôi –ed dựa vào chữ cái kết thúc của động từ:**  Những động từ có chữ cái kết thúc tận cùng là:  TH 1: t, d => đuôi –ed được phát âm là /id/  TH 2: p, pe; k, ke; ff, ph, gh; ss, ce, se, x; ch; sh => đuôi –ed được phát âm là /t/.  TH 3: còn lại => đuôi –ed được phát âm là /d/.  => Phần gạch chân phương án B được phát âm là /ɪd/, còn lại là /d/. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word having the different stress pattern from the rest.***

**Câu 3 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức:** Trọng âm từ có > 2 âm tiết  **Giải thích:**  A. experience /ɪkˈspɪəriəns/ B. congratulate /kənˈɡrætʃəleɪt/  C. particular /pəˈtɪkjələ(r)/ D. engineering /ˌendʒɪˈnɪərɪŋ/  Trọng âm phương án D rơi vào âm tiết 3, còn lại là âm tiết 2. |

**Câu 4 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức:** Trọng âm từ có > 2 âm tiết  **Giải thích:**  A. terrorist /ˈterərɪst/ B. expected /ɪkˈspektɪd/  C. contribute /kənˈtrɪbjuːt/ D. exciting /ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/  Trọng âm phương án A rơi vào âm tiết 1, còn lại là âm tiết 2. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to the following question.***

**Câu 5 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:** Phần đuôi trong câu hỏi đuôi dùng chính động từ “to be”, cùng thì với động từ ở vế trước, danh từ đứng làm chủ ngữ được thay bằng đại từ nhân xưng phù hợp.  **Dịch nghĩa:**Bố bạn sẽ đi làm vào ngày mai phải không? |

**Câu 6 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức:** Câu bị động  **Giải thích:**  Dấu hiệu: by the teacher (bởi giáo viên) là dấu hiệu đặc trưng của câu bị động.  Cấu trúc với “tell”:  - Câu chủ động: tell sb to do sth: bảo ai làm gì  - Câu bị động: be + told + to do sth: được bảo làm gì  **Tạm dịch:** Học sinh được giáo viên bảo là phải có mặt ở trường lúc 8 giờ sáng. |

**Câu 7 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức:** Giới từ  **Giải thích:** impression on somebody: ấn tượng với ai đó  **Tạm dịch:** Việc tạo ấn tượng tốt với người phỏng vấn là vô cùng quan trọng. |

**Câu 8 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:** Trong câu sử dụng so sánh kép. Chúng ta áp dụng công thức: The + comparative + S + V, the + comparative + S + V. (Thanh đi bộ càng nhanh, anh ấy càng mệt). |

**Câu 9 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Ta có trật tự tính từ OSASCOMP**, ở đây theo trật tự: O - quan điểm (beautiful - đẹp), S - kích thước (big- to), S - hình dáng (round - tròn), C - màu sắc (black - đen). |

**Câu 10 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:**  Diễn tả hành động xen vào khi đang có hành động khác xảy ra.  Vế hành động xen vào chia ở thì quá khứ đơn , vế hành động đang diễn ra chia ở thì quá khứ tiếp diễn.  **Tạm dịch:**  Tôi thấy một tai nạn kinh khủng trong khi tôi đang đi bộ trên bãi biển |

**Câu 11 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:** Sau chỗ trống là danh động từ được dùng như danh từ nên cần điền một giới từ, chỉ có phương án A phù hợp về nghĩa.  **Dịch nghĩa:**Vì sự có mặt của bố anh ấy ở đó nên tôi không nói gì về điểm kém của anh ấy trong bài kiểm tra. |

**Câu 12 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Câu hỏi mệnh đề trạng ngữ**  Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian thường được bắt đầu bằng các liên từ: when/ while/ before/ after/ as soon as/ by the time/ until... Đối với các câu ở thì tương lai, mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian đi kèm chỉ được phép chia ở các thì hiện tại.  Vậy nên, chỉ còn đáp án C - by the time her boss returns (chia ở thì hiện tại) là phù hợp.  Tạm dịch: Mary sẽ hoàn thành xong toàn bộ công việc không trễ hơn lúc sếp cô ấy quay về.  \* **Mở rộng:** “By + Mốc thời gian” hoặc “By the time + mệnh đề” là dấu hiệu nhận biết các thì hoàn thành hoặc hoàn thành tiếp diễn.  Căn cứ vào “mốc thời gian” hoặc “mệnh đề” ở hiện tại, quá khứ, hoặc tương lai để chia thành các thì hiện tại, quá khứ, hoặc tương lai hoàn thành/ hoàn thành tiếp diễn.  Ví dụ: By yesterday - chia ở quá khứ hoàn thành/ hoàn thành tiếp diễn |

**Câu 13 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| Khi hai vế của câu đồng chủ ngữ nhấn mạnh 1 hành động xảy ra rồi đến hành động khác ta bỏ chủ ngữ của vế đầu thay bằng Having + V3/ed  **Dịch :** Vì đã hút thuốt trong nhiều năm nên anh ấy được chuẩn đoán bị ung thư phổi. |

**Câu 14 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Câu hỏi từ loại**  “In” là giới từ. Sau giới từ, thường là danh từ hoặc danh động từ.  Sau chỗ trống đã là danh từ “incidents” (tai nạn), cho nên chỗ trống cần điền chỉ có thể là một tính từ để bổ sung thông tin cho danh từ “incidents”.  **Xét 4 đáp án, đáp án A - violent (a) là phù hợp.**  **A**. violent (a): bạo lực/ thô bạo/ mãnh liệt  **B**. violence (n): sự bạo lực/ thô bạo  **C**. violently (adv): một cách thô bạo/ bạo lực  **D**. violate (v): vi phạm |

**Câu 15 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Câu hỏi phrasal verb**  Câu hỏi này cần chọn một đáp án có cụm động từ (phrasal verb) phù hợp nghĩa nhất .Chọn B - giving off vì:  **A**. giving over: ngưng làm việc phiền toán  **B**. giving off: thải ra/ tỏa ra mùi, nhiệt độ, khói, ánh sáng...  **C**. giving down - không tồn tại  **D**. giving up: từ bỏ/ bỏ cuộc/ ngưng lại  **Tạm dịch:** Đây là chất hóa học gì? Nó đang tỏa ra một mùi kinh khủng. |

**Câu 16 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Cụm từ cố định**  Cụm **let one's hair down**: thư giãn, xả hơi  **Tạm dịch:** Sau khi chúc mừng đội bóng, huấn luyện viên rời đi, cho phép các cầu thủ thư giãn một lúc. |

**Câu 17 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Câu hỏi từ vựng**  Câu này chọn đáp án đúng phù hợp với nghĩa và kết hợp từ. Đáp án B - appropriating (biển thủ/ lấy trộm) là đáp án phù hợp.  **A**. rob (v): ăn trộm - đi với cấu trúc: Rob sb of sth  **B**. appropriate (v): biển thủ/ lấy trộm (có một appropriate là tính từ mang nghĩa: phù hợp)  **C**. apprecitate (v): cảm kích/ đánh giá cao  **D**. confiscate (v): tịch thu/ thu vào công quỹ  **Tạm dịch:** Người đàn ông bị bắt bị tình nghi biển thủ công quỹ cho riêng mình. |

**Câu 18 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Câu hỏi thành ngữ**  **Thành ngữ “beat the clock” - hoàn thành trước thời hạn/ làm xong trước hạn.**  Xét 4 đáp án, chỉ có thể chọn được đáp án D - clock.  **A**. team (n): đội  **B**. other (n)/ (a): khác/ cái khác/ người khác  **C**. time (n): thời gian  **D**. clock (n): đồng hồ treo tường  **Tạm dịch:** Công ty này đã cố gắng hoàn thành trước thời hạn việc đưa ra hệ thống mới của mình. |

**Câu 19 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức về cụm từ cố định**  A.give/ lend sb a hand = do sb a favor = help sb: giúp ai  B.hold hands: nắm tay  C.join hands = work together: chung tay, cùng nhau  D.shake hands: bắt tay  **Tạm dịch:** Bổn phận và trách nhiệm của cha mẹ là cùng nhau chăm sóc con cái và cho chúng một gia  đình hạnh phúc. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined word in each of the following questions.***

**Câu 20 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức: Từ đồng nghĩa**  \* Make: Tạo ra hoặc chuẩn bị thứ gì đó bằng cách kết hợp các vật liệu hoặc các bộ phận vào với nhau  \* Create: Tạo một điều gì đó mới, chưa từng có trước đó  \* Prevent: Ngăn ngừa điều gì xảy ra  \* Invent: Phát minh, sáng chế  \* Generate: Tạo ra, phát ra từ các vật liệu  **Tạm dịch:** Con người đã sử dụng than và dầu để tạo ra điện từ lâu. |

**Câu 21 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức: Từ đồng nghĩa**  \* Paid: Được trả  \* Divided: Được chia ra  \* Depended: Bị phụ thuộc  \* Required: Bị yêu cầu, đòi hỏi  **Tạm dịch:** Đồng phục học sinh là bắt buộc ở hầu hết các trường học Việt Nam. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word(s) OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined word(s) in each of the following questions.***

**Câu 22 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức: Từ trái nghĩa**  **A.** Đã kết hôn **B**. Ly thân **C.** Độc than **D.** Đã ly dị  **Tạm dịch:** Cô quyết định sống độc thân và cống hiến cuộc đời mình để giúp đỡ những người vô gia cư và trẻ mồ côi.  => celibate >< married => **Chọn đáp án A** |

**Câu 23 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức: Từ trái nghĩa**  **A.** Nêu ý kiến **B.** Nhận được sự tán dương, công nhận  **C.** Thể hiện sự phản đối **D.** Giải quyết xung đột  \* Speak highly of: Đánh giá cao >< Express disapproval of  **Tạm dịch:** Cả 2 trường đại học đều đánh giá cao chương trình sinh viên trao đổi và hy vọng có thể hợp tác thêm trong tương lai. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the option that best completes each of the following exchanges.***

**Câu 24 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức: Hội thoại giao tiếp**  **A.** Cảm ơn bạn. Tôi lo sợ điều đó  **B.** Cảm ơn lời khen của bạn  **C.** Tôi không thích câu nói của bạn  **D.** Bạn đang nói dối |

**Câu 25 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Kiến thức: Hội thoại giao tiếp**  Tom và Tony đang nói về một trận đấu tennis.  Tom: "Tôi nghĩ rằng trận đấu tennis của bạn ngày hôm nay tốt hơn rất nhiều, Tony"  Tony: “ Tôi nghĩ rằng nó rất tệ.”  **A.** Tớ hoàn toàn đồng ý  **B.** Cảm ơn, bạn cũng thế  **C.** Không, tôi nghĩ thế  **D.** Bạn đùa à |

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct word or phrase that best fits each of the numbered blanks from 26 to 30.***

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **Câu 26 : Đáp án D** | **Giải thích:** Trong câu thì hiện tại hoàn thành, since + mốc thời gian trong quá khứ |
| **Câu 27 : Đáp án A** | **Giải thích:** Phương án A phù hợp về nghĩa.  **A.** backgrounds (n.): nền tảng **B.** reference (n.): sự tham khảo  **C.** expression (n.): sự diễn đạt **D.** importance (n.): tầm quan trọng |
| **Câu 28 : Đáp án C** | **Giải thích:** Phương án C phù hợp về nghĩa  **A.** chapter (n.): chương **B.** revenue (n.): doanh số  **C.** patterns (n.): kiểu, mô hình **D.** unions (n.): hiệp hội |
| **Câu 29 : Đáp án A** | **Giải thích:** Each + Danh từ: mỗi… |
| **Câu 30 : Đáp án B** | **Giải thích:** Đại từ quan hệ “that” thay cho sự vật “qualities and values”, các đại từ khác không có chức năng này. |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Do diện tích lớn và di sản đa dạng của nó, Hợp chủng quốc Hoa Kỳ có một trong những bản sắc văn hóa phức tạp nhất trên thế giới. Hàng triệu người nhập cư từ khắp nơi trên thế giới đã hành trình đến Mỹ kể từ khi người châu Âu phát hiện và xâm chiếm vùng đất này vào thế kỷ 17 và 18. Sự pha trộn giữa nền tảng văn hóa và sắc tộc ở Mỹ đã khiến đất nước này được biết đến như một nơi tụ cư. Là quốc gia lớn thứ ba về cả diện tích và dân số, sự rộng lớn của nước Mỹ đã cho phép hình thành các tiểu văn hóa trong nước. Những tiểu văn hóa này thường là do địa lý là kết quả của mô hình định cư bởi những người không phải người bản địa cũng như sự khác biệt về thời tiết và cảnh quan khu vực. Mặc dù có vô số cách thức để chia Hoa Kỳ thành các khu vực, nhưng ở đây chúng tôi đã đề cập đến bốn khu vực đó là Tây, Trung Tây, Đông Bắc và Nam. Mọi người từ mỗi khu vực có thể có lối sống, giá trị văn hóa, tập quán kinh doanh và phương ngữ khác nhau. Mặc dù có những phẩm chất và giá trị mà hầu hết người Mỹ đều có, điều quan trọng là không nên khái quát hóa lên hoặc cho rằng tất cả người Mỹ nghĩ hoặc hành động theo cùng một cách giống nhau.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 31 to 35.***

**Câu 31 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Lựa chọn nào làm tiêu đề tốt nhất cho đoạn văn?  **A.** Tương tác hàng ngày của Người Mỹ  **B.** Tương tác giữa những người từ các nhóm chủng tộc và sắc tộc khác nhau  **C.** Tương tác thường xuyên của người Tây Ban Nha  **D.** Tương tác của người châu Á phản ánh điều gì? Tran Truong Thanh (Zalo 00369904425)  **Giải thích:** Đoạn văn chủ yếu nói về tương tác hàng ngày giữa những nhóm người không cùng chủng tộc nên phương án B phù hợp nhất. |

**Câu 32 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**their**” trong đoạn 1 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** người da trắng **B.** dân tộc thiểu số  **C.** người không da trắng **D.** nhóm dân tộc thiểu số  **Giải thích:**“This is particularly the case for whites interacting with racial or ethnic minorities and **nonwhites** interacting with minority groups other than **their** own.” |

**Câu 33 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Có bao nhiêu người trưởng thành da trắng nói rằng họ tương tác với người da đen và Tây Ban Nha rất nhiều trong cuộc sống hàng ngày của họ?  **A.** 50% **B.** 26% **C.** 20% **D.** 25%  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “About a quarter of white adults say they interact with blacks and Hispanics a lot in their day-to-day life.” |

**Câu 34 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**frequent**” trong đoạn 2 có nghĩa gần nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** thường xuyên **B.** đáng tin cậy **C.** tức giận **D.** chân thành  **Giải thích:** “frequent” có nghĩa là “thường xuyên”, gần nghĩa với phương án A. |

**Câu 35 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Theo đoạn 3, người Tây Ban Nha có ý kiến rằng \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** họ có cùng tương tác hàng ngày với người châu Á và người da đen.  **B.** họ không có tương tác với người da đen  **C.** họ có cùng tương tác hàng ngày với người da trắng và người da đen.  **D.** họ không có tương tác với người châu Á  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “A majority of Asians say they have frequent daily interaction with whites, more than the share of blacks and Hispanics who say the same.” |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Hầu hết người Mỹ có ít nhất một số tương tác hàng ngày với những người không cùng chủng tộc hoặc sắc tộc của họ, nhưng một số đối nhỏ nói rằng họ có rất nhiều tương tác. Đây là trường hợp đặc biệt khi người da trắng tương tác với các nhóm dân tộc hoặc chủng tộc thiểu số và đối tượng không phải là người da trắng tương tác với các nhóm thiểu số khác ngoài nhóm của họ.

Khoảng một phần tư người da trắng nói rằng họ tương tác với người da đen và Tây Ban Nha rất nhiều trong cuộc sống hàng ngày của họ. Trong số những người da đen, 26% nói rằng họ có nhiều tương tác với những người gốc Tây Ban Nha, trong khi một phần năm người gốc Tây Ban Nha nói rằng họ có sự tương tác thường xuyên với những người da đen. Khoảng một trong mười người da trắng, người da đen và Tây Ban Nha nói rằng họ tương tác với người châu Á rất nhiều trong cuộc sống hàng ngày.

Đa số người châu Á nói rằng họ có sự tương tác thường xuyên hàng ngày với người da trắng, nhiều hơn cả những người da đen và Tây Ban Nha, người da đen và Tây Ban Nha cho là như nhau. Khoảng một phần tư người châu Á nói rằng họ có nhiều tương tác với những người gốc Tây Ban Nha và 15% nói như vậy về những người da đen.

Người châu Á ít có khả năng hơn người da trắng, người da đen và gốc Tây Ban Nha nói rằng họ có nhiều tương tác với những người trong nhóm của họ. Mức độ mà người Mỹ tương tác với các nhóm chủng tộc hoặc sắc tộc khác nhau phản ánh, ít nhất là một phần, sự đóng góp của mỗi nhóm trong dân số.

***Read the following passage and mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the correct answer to each of the questions from 36 to 42.***

**Câu 36 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Lựa chọn nào sau đây làm tiêu đề tốt nhất cho bài viết?  **A.** Đám đông người dân và tỷ trọng của phụ nữ và nam giới  **B.** Đàn ông và phụ nữ trong in tức hình ảnh của nơi đưa tin  **C.** Đàn ông xuất hiện thường xuyên hơn hai lần so với phụ nữ trong tin tức ảnh trên Facebook  **D.** Phân tích hình ảnh tin tức trên Facebook  **Giải thích:** Bài đọc chủ yếu nói về việc đàn ông xuất hiện thường xuyên hơn so với phụ nữ trong tin tức ảnh trên Facebook nên phương án C phù hợp. |

**Câu 37 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Có bao nhiêu trong số 22.342 bài đăng có ảnh chứa khuôn mặt người có thể nhận dạng chỉ có phụ nữ?  **A.** 25% **B.** 33% **C.** 75% **D.** 46%  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Across the 22,342 posts with photos containing identifiable human faces, more than half of them exclusively showed men, while less than a quarter showed exclusively women.” |

**Câu 38 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**exclusively**” trong đoạn 2 nhiều khả năng có nghĩa là \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** hoàn hảo **B.** duy nhất **C.** trung thực **D.** tự nhiên  **Giải thích:** “exclusively” có nghĩa là “chỉ riêng”, gần nghĩa với phương án B. |

**Câu 39 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Mô hình dao động từ 25% đến 46% là số phụ nữ được xác định theo \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** Facebook **B.** nghiên cứu **C.** hình ảnh tin tức **D.** nơi đưa tin  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “The share of individuals who were identified as women by the model ranges from 25% to 46%, by outlet.” |

**Câu 40 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**striking**” trong đoạn 4 có nghĩa gần nhất với \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** ấn tượng **B.** vô tư **C.** sáng tạo **D.** không hoạt động  **Giải thích:** “striking” có nghĩa là “ấn tượng”, gần nghĩa với phương án A. |

**Câu 41 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Điều nào sau đây là ĐÚNG, theo bài báo?  **A.** Phụ nữ chiếm 67% trong tổng số 53.067 cá nhân được xác định trong hình ảnh bài đăng tin tức.  **B.** Hơn một nửa trong số 22.342 bài đăng có ảnh cho thấy ít nhất một nam và một nữ.  **C.** Hiện tại 25% trong Thượng viện Hoa Kỳ là nữ.  **D.** Khuôn mặt phụ nữ chiếm nhiều không gian hơn khi hiển thị.  **Giải thích:** Thông tin có ở câu: “Coverage of the U.S. Senate – currently 25% female – might do the same.” |

**Câu 42 : Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Dịch nghĩa câu hỏi:**Từ “**that**” trong đoạn 4 đề cập đến \_\_\_\_\_\_.  **A.** phân tích **B.** nội dung  **C.** hình ảnh **D.** những câu chuyện tin tức  **Giải thích:** “In addition, the analysis did not address whether the content of **the news storiesthat** accompanied the images was more focused on men or women.” |

**Dịch nghĩa toàn bài**

Có một số cách để đo tần suất đàn ông và phụ nữ xuất hiện trong ảnh tin tức. Một cách là suy nghĩ về tất cả các bức ảnh cùng nhau khi tạo thành một đám đông lớn và ước tính tỷ trọng phụ nữ so với nam giới. Phụ nữ chiếm 33% trong tổng số 53.067 cá nhân được xác định trong các hình ảnh đăng tin tức, trong khi đàn ông chiếm 67% còn lại.

Một cách khác để xem dữ liệu là kiểm tra sự pha trộn của những người xuất hiện trong mỗi hình ảnh. Trên 22.342 bài đăng có ảnh chứa khuôn mặt người có thể nhận dạng, hơn một nửa trong số đó chỉ dành riêng cho nam giới, trong khi chưa đến một phần tư cho thấy phụ nữ. Những hình ảnh còn lại cho thấy ít nhất một nam và một nữ.

Tất cả 17 nơi phân phối tin tức trong nghiên cứu cho thấy nhiều đàn ông hơn phụ nữ trong các hình ảnh tin tức trên Facebook trong thời gian nghiên cứu. Tỷ lệ của các cá nhân được xác định là phụ nữ theo mô hình dao động từ 25% đến 46%, theo từng nơi phân phối.

Mặc dù những phát hiện này rất đáng chú ý, nhưng không có điểm chuẩn hoàn hảo hay tỷ lệ đúng sự thật về mức độ thường xuyên của đàn ông và phụ nữ trong các hình ảnh tin tức trên phương tiện truyền thông xã hội. Vâng, dân số Hoa Kỳ được chia gần một nửa nam so với nữ. Nhưng, ví dụ, tất cả các phạm vi bao phủ đại diện của các đội bóng đá chuyên nghiệp sẽ trả lại kết quả áp đảo bởi các khuôn mặt nam. Mức độ bao phủ của Thượng viện Hoa Kỳ - hiện là nữ 25% - có thể cũng giống như vậy. Ngoài ra, phân tích không đề cập đến việc nội dung của những câu chuyện tin tức đi kèm với hình ảnh được tập trung nhiều hơn vào đàn ông hay phụ nữ.

Phân tích cũng tiết lộ những cách khác mà đàn ông nổi bật hơn trong hình ảnh tin tức trên Facebook. Trong những bức ảnh cho thấy hai người trở lên, đàn ông có xu hướng đông hơn phụ nữ. Và khuôn mặt đàn ông chiếm nhiều không gian hơn khi hiển thị, với khuôn mặt nam trung bình lớn hơn 10% so với khuôn mặt nữ trung bình trên tất cả các bức ảnh với mọi người.

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions.***

**Câu 43 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Căn cứ vào nghĩa của câu**  (Tom bị bỏng tay trong khi anh ấy đang nấu bữa tối.)  **Ta thấy:**  Hành động "nấu bữa tối" là hành động xảy ra trước và vẫn còn đang xảy ra thì hành động "bỏng tay" là hành động xảy ra sau và xen vào.  Do đó, hành động bỏng tay sẽ chia thì quá khứ đơn.  ***has burnt => burnt*** |

**Câu 44 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Nhận biết lỗi sai : Kiến thức về sự hoà hợp giữa chủ ngữ và tính từ sở hữu .**  **Phải sửa :** its 🡪 their  **Dịch :** Bọn trẻ tự mang đồ ăn của mình tới trường |

**Câu 45 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| ***complexity → complex***  **Giải thích:**Trước danh từ “process” cần tính từ bổ nghĩa.  **Dịch nghĩa:**Sô cô la được điều chế bằng một quy trình làm sạch phức tạp, trộn và rang hạt ca cao, phải được nghiền và trộn với đường. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that is closest in meaning to each of the following questions.***

**Câu 46 : Đáp án A**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:**  **Tạm dịch :** Lần cuối cùng tôi đến bảo tàng là cách đây một năm.  A. Tôi đã không đến bảo tàng trong một năm.  B. Một năm trước, tôi thường đi đến viện bảo tàng.  C. Chuyến đi đến bảo tàng của tôi kéo dài một năm.  D. Cuối cùng tôi đã đến bảo tàng sau một năm. |

**Câu 47: Đáp án D**

|  |
| --- |
| **Tạm dịch:**  “Nếu bố là con, tôi sẽ không bao giờ mở TV lớn giữa đêm.” Người đàn ông nói với cô con gái.  D. Người bố khuyên con gái mình không nên mở TV to tiếng giữa đêm. |

**Câu 48 : Đáp án B**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:**If I were you, I would invest more on this project. (Nếu tôi là bạn, tôi sẽ đầu tư nhiều hơn vào dự án này.)  **A.** Bạn không được đầu tư nhiều hơn vào dự án này.  **B.** Bạn nên đầu tư nhiều hơn vào dự án này.  **C.** Bạn không thể đầu tư nhiều hơn vào dự án này.  **D.** Bạn có thể đầu tư nhiều hơn vào dự án này. |

***Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the sentence that best combines each pair of sentences in the following questions.***

**Câu 49 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:**  If only + S+ Ved (giá mà): ước cho hiện tại  If only S+ had +P2 (giá mà): ước cho quá khứ  **Tạm dịch :** Tôi thực sự tiếc vì bạn chưa kể cho tôi về gia đình cô ấy  A. “would tell” ước cho tương lai => sai  B. Giá mà tôi đã không hối tiếc rằng bạn đã không kể cho tôi nghe về gia đình của cô ấy. => sai nghĩa  C. Giá mà bạn kể cho tôi về gia đình cô ấy. => đúng  D. Giá mà bạn đã không kể cho tôi về gia đình cô ấy. => sai nghĩa |

**Câu 50 : Đáp án C**

|  |
| --- |
| **Giải thích:** I didn’t recognize my uncle. I did after he raised hisvoice only.(Tôi đã không nhận ra chú tôi. Tôi chỉ nhận ra sau khi chúấy lên tiếng.)  Cặp câu đã cho diễn tả sự việc sau chỉ diễn ra sau khi có sự việc trước nên dùng “only after” với đảo ngữ ở vế sau để kết hợp câu. Trần Trường Thành(zalo 0369904425)  **Dịch nghĩa:**Chỉ sau khi chú tôi lên tiếng, tôi mới nhận ra ông. |